

# 英语语法 红宝书

胡敏 主编

语言启迪心智 语法百读不厌

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR

目录

## 图书在版编目（CIP）数据

## 新航道图书编委会

## 序言

## 第1章 绪论

1.1 单词的分类

1.2 词类的相互转换

1.3 句子的成分

1.4 句子的类型

1.5 简单句的基本结构

1.6 从句

## 第2章 名词

2.1 名词的种类

2.2 名词的语法功能

2.3 名词的性

2.4 名词的复数

2.5 不可数名词

2.6 名词的所有格

2.7 作定语的名词

2.8 合成名词

实践演练

## 第3章 冠词

3.1 不定冠词

3.2 定冠词

3.3 零冠词

实践演练

## 第4章 代词

4.1 人称代词

4.2 物主代词

4.3 反身代词

4.4 指示代词

4.5 疑问代词

4.6 相互代词

4.7 关系代词

4.8 连接代词

4.9 不定代词

4.10 it的用法

实践演练

## 第5章 形容词和副词

5.1 形容词的语法功能

5.2 形容词转化为名词

5.3 形容词的比较级和最高级

5.4 本身带有比较含义的形容词

5.5 形容词的比较句型

5.6 形容词的位置

5.7 副词的种类

[5.8 副词的语法功能](#)

[5.9 副词的比较级和最高级](#)

[5.10 副词的比较句型](#)

[5.11 小品副词与动词构成的短语动词](#)

[实践演练](#)

## [第6章 数词](#)

[6.1 基数词](#)

[6.2 序数词](#)

[6.3 分数](#)

[6.4 百分数](#)

[6.5 小数](#)

[6.6 倍数](#)

[6.7 数字公式](#)

[6.8 日期和时刻](#)

[6.9 年龄](#)

[6.10 带序号的表达](#)

## [第7章 介词](#)

[7.1 介词的分类](#)

[7.2 介词的宾语](#)

[7.3 介词短语的语法功能](#)

[7.4 介词的后置](#)

[7.5 单一介词的用法](#)

[7.6 短语介词](#)

[7.7 由介词+名词构成的短语](#)

[7.8 后跟介词的名词](#)

[7.9 后跟介词的动词](#)

[7.10 后跟介词的形容词](#)

[7.11 由动词+副词+介词构成的短语](#)

[实践演练](#)

## [第8章 连词](#)

[8.1 并列连词](#)

[8.2 从属连词](#)

## [第9章 动词概论](#)

[9.1 动词的种类](#)

[9.2 动词的时态](#)

[9.3 动词的语态](#)

[9.4 动词的语气](#)

[9.5 动词的基本形式](#)

## [第10章 系动词和情态动词](#)

[10.1 表示状态保持的系动词](#)

[10.2 表示状态转变的系动词](#)

[10.3 表示感官的系动词](#)

[10.4 情态动词的意义](#)

[10.5 情态动词+现在完成时的用法](#)

[实践演练](#)

## [第11章 动词时态](#)

[11.1 一般现在时](#)

[11.2 现在进行时](#)  
[11.3 现在完成时](#)  
[11.4 现在完成进行时](#)  
[11.5 一般过去时](#)  
[11.6 过去进行时](#)  
[11.7 过去完成时](#)  
[11.8 过去完成进行时](#)  
[11.9 一般将来时](#)  
[11.10 将来进行时](#)  
[11.11 将来完成时](#)  
[11.12 过去将来时](#)  
[实践演练](#)

## [第12章 被动语态](#)

[12.1 被动语态的一般用法](#)  
[12.2 用于各种时态的被动语态](#)  
[12.3 被动语态的特殊用法](#)  
[12.4 It is done that...句型](#)  
[12.5 Sth. \(Sb.\) is done to...句型](#)  
[实践演练](#)

## [第13章 动名词和不定式](#)

[13.1 动名词的语法功能](#)  
[13.2 只能接动名词作宾语的动词](#)  
[13.3 既可接动名词，又可接不定式作宾语的动词](#)  
[13.4 动名词的复合结构](#)

[13.5 动名词的被动式和完成式](#)  
[13.6 动名词的习惯表达](#)  
[13.7 不定式的语法功能](#)  
[13.8 后接不定式的形容词](#)  
[13.9 可接名词或代词再加不定式的动词](#)  
[13.10 for+名词\(或代词\)+不定式的复合结构](#)  
[13.11 代词、副词和不定式的搭配使用](#)  
[13.12 不定式中的被动语态和完成式](#)  
[13.13 不定式习语](#)  
[13.14 不带to的不定式](#)  
[实践演练](#)

## [第14章 动词分词](#)

[14.1 现在分词的语法功能](#)  
[14.2 现在分词的完成式和被动式](#)  
[14.3 现在分词的独立结构](#)  
[14.4 转化为形容词的现在分词](#)  
[14.5 现在分词构成的合形成形容词](#)  
[14.6 过去分词的语法功能](#)  
[14.7 现在分词和过去分词的区别](#)  
[14.8 过去分词的独立结构](#)  
[14.9 转化为形容词的过去分词](#)  
[14.10 过去分词构成的合形成形容词](#)  
[14.11 起转移修饰作用的过去分词](#)  
[14.12 由不及物动词构成的过去分词](#)  
[实践演练](#)

## 第15章 主谓一致

15.1 and连接的并列成分作主语时

15.2 名词+介词短语作主语时

15.3 集体名词作主语时

15.4 不定代词作主语时

15.5 数量词作主语时

15.6 表示度量衡的词作主语时

15.7 定冠词+形容词作主语时

15.8 动名词、不定式、介词短语或从句作主语时

15.9 or, either...or, neither...nor或not only...but also连接主语时

实践演练

## 第16章 祈使句和疑问句

16.1 祈使句的肯定表达

16.2 祈使句的否定表达

16.3 使用Let's的祈使句

16.4 祈使句的特殊表达

16.5 祈使句+and的句型

16.6 一般疑问句

16.7 特殊疑问句

16.8 选择疑问句

16.9 附加疑问句

实践演练

## 第17章 定语从句



- [17.1 限制性定语从句](#)
  - [17.2 非限制性定语从句](#)
  - [17.3 由关系代词引导的定语从句](#)
  - [17.4 由关系副词引导的定语从句](#)
  - [17.5 用特殊引导词引导的定语从句](#)
  - [17.6 省略引导词的定语从句](#)
  - [17.7 引导词之前带介词的定语从句](#)
  - [17.8 常用that引导的定语从句](#)
  - [17.9 必须用which，而不能用that引导的定语从句](#)
  - [17.10 定语从句与先行词的分隔](#)
  - [17.11 两个或多个定语从句同时修饰一个先行词](#)
  - [17.12 引导词which既带介词，又修饰名词的定语从句](#)
  - [17.13 定语从句与同位语从句的差异](#)
- [实践演练](#)

## [第18章 状语从句](#)

- [18.1 时间状语从句](#)
- [18.2 条件状语从句](#)
- [18.3 地点状语从句](#)
- [18.4 原因状语从句](#)
- [18.5 目的状语从句](#)
- [18.6 结果状语从句](#)
- [18.7 方式状语从句](#)
- [18.8 让步状语从句](#)
- [18.9 比较状语从句](#)

## 实践演练

# 第19章 名词从句

19.1 主语从句

19.2 宾语从句

19.3 表语从句

19.4 同位语从句

19.5 补语从句

## 实践演练

# 第20章 虚拟语气

20.1 针对当前状态的虚拟

20.2 针对过去事实的虚拟

20.3 针对将来情况的虚拟

20.4 省略条件从句的虚拟

20.5 错综时间虚拟

20.6 礼貌虚拟

20.7 条件、让步状语从句中的虚拟

20.8 虚拟语气中的倒装

20.9 句式What if... 的虚拟

20.10 句式It is time... 的虚拟

20.11 wish的虚拟

20.12 if only的虚拟

20.13 as if, as though的虚拟

20.14 would rather, would sooner的虚拟

20.15 lest, in case, for fear that的虚拟

[20.16 主观意愿动词的虚拟](#)  
[20.17 主观意愿名词的虚拟](#)  
[20.18 主观意愿形容词的虚拟](#)  
[20.19 固定虚拟表达](#)  
[实践演练](#)

## [第21章 直接引语和间接引语](#)

[21.1 陈述句的间接引语](#)  
[21.2 疑问句的间接引语](#)  
[21.3 祈使句的间接引语](#)  
[21.4 感叹句的间接引语](#)  
[实践演练](#)

## [第22章 强调](#)

[22.1 do表示强调](#)  
[22.2 副词表示强调](#)  
[22.3 双重否定表示强调](#)  
[22.4 强调句型](#)  
[22.5 what表示强调](#)  
[22.6 倒装表示强调](#)  
[22.7 前移表示强调](#)  
[22.8 比较句型表示强调](#)  
[实践演练](#)

## [第23章 倒装](#)

[23.1 部分倒装](#)  
[23.2 完全倒装](#)

## 实践演练

### 第24章 标点符号

24.1 逗号

24.2 冒号

24.3 分号

24.4 句号

24.5 破折号

24.6 引号

24.7 问号

24.8 感叹号

24.9 连字符

24.10 撇号

24.11 省略号

### 参考答案

# 图书在版编目（CIP）数据

英语语法红宝书 / 胡敏主编. — 北京：中国对外翻译出版有限公司，2011.4

ISBN 978-7-5001-3002-4

I. ①英... II. ①胡... III. ①英语—语法—自学参考资料 IV. ①H314

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字（2011）第062566号

出版发行 / 中国对外翻译出版有限公司

地 址 / 北京市西城区车公庄大街甲4号物华大厦六层

电 话 / （010）68338545 68353673 68359101

邮 编 / 100044

传 真 / （010）68357870

电子邮箱 / book@ctpc.com.cn

网 址 / <http://www.ctpc.com.cn>

策划编辑 / 吴良柱 顾 强


责任编辑 / 吴良柱 康辉言

字 数 / 380千字

版 次 / 2011年4月第1版

印 次 / 2013年6月第5次印刷

ISBN 978-7-5001-3002-4

 版权所有 侵权必究

中国对外翻译出版有限公司

# 新航道图书编委会

主 胡 敏

任

副 主 [ 美 ] John Gordon

任

委 (按姓氏笔画为序)

员

王 毅 李传伟

李 鑫 陈采霞

张建宇 张 登

张 皓 吴 蓉

虎劲钻 郑俊斌

胡 敏 陶 春

顾 强 徐卡嘉

辜 驰 蔡 政

[ 美 ] 彭铁城

[ 美 ] John Gordon

# 序言

## 语法，英语中的“规”与“矩”

英语语法，一个说来熟悉而又“古老”的话题，从我们第一天接触英语开始，就与它发生着千丝万缕、不可分割的关系，或许正是因为“古老”方显它的重要，只要我们跟英语打交道，不论听说还是读写，都离不开它。

### 英语学习：两个基础，四项技能

从事英语教学工作逾28载，接触过形形色色的英语学习者，不论是哪个阶段的英语学习，学习者要做的几项基本工作无外乎词汇、语法、语音语调以及听、说、读、写四项技能。其中词汇与语法为根本基础，而英语学习就像一个宏伟的建筑，词汇是砖，语法则保证这些砖有棱有角层层而上的规与矩！

正是因为有了英语语法，英语学习这幢高楼大厦才能平地而起，英语语法作为英语语言使用规律，是英语区别于另一种语言的关键所在，因此语法也是英语学习者学好英语的前提和基础。没有语法，再丰富的词汇积累也无用武之地，没有相应的语法，知识就难以进行输入。比如，阅读中常遇到长难句，要想准确理解长难句，除了词汇外，最重要的就是语法知识，通过语法分析句子，不同的语法结构可能有不同的理解。同样，如果没有具备相应的语法知识就无法进行准确的英语书面表达和口语表达。

### 语法学习：一种疑惑，两种困境

长期以来，因英语与汉语在表达上的显著差异导致“中国式英语”的几近“泛滥”，中国学生普遍反映的问题是语法知识琐碎、面广、难以系统掌握，似乎在潜意识里就树立了一道无形的坎。事实上，作为世界通用语言，英语源自印欧语系，经过了历时长久的演变和传播，其语法也相应地经历了从“多曲



折”到“少曲折”的演变，相对世界其他语言，其语法构成并没有想象中那么难，并且随着英语的普及，其语法也将趋于简洁，以便于人们更好地学习和使用这一交际工具。

在语法学习中，多数中国学生面临两种困境：一方面，不具备充分的语法知识，无法随心所欲、熟练自如地运用这门工具；另一方面，深入学习了语法、牢记种种规则后，为语法所累，被规则束缚，无法学以致用。与此同时，中国传统的语法教学，将语法作为单独教学单位，课堂上习惯灌输语法知识，机械地操练句型结构，学生死记硬背语法规则，教学过程枯燥乏味，不注重语法在实践表达中的应用，结果语法理论一大堆，却只能纸上谈兵，学生不知道如何辨别、运用语法规则进行遣词造句，无法达到预期的教学效果。

### 驾驭语法：一个关键，两个阶段

正如著名语言学家吕叔湘先生所说：“传统语法条分缕析，讲得挺多，可都讲的是这种工具的部件和结构，没有讲人们怎么使唤这种工具。”学习语法的关键绝不是枯燥的死记硬背，绝非语法规则的堆砌，而是消化和吸收语法知识并最终能正确使用语法知识帮助我们进行有效的听说读写。

英语既然是用于日常交流的语言工具，那语法学习必不可忽视与真实语言素材的紧密相连，只有基于真实语言素材的语法学习才更有效。将语法融于优美的、富有人生哲理的句子或名人名言，既是真实语言素材的体现，也是寓教于乐的反映，做到：融语法于句。同时，要想熟能生巧，则需通过真枪实弹的练习，做到：从练中贯通。经典的语言环境利于学习者消化、吸收，在语法讲解和优美句子的领会后，辅以相应的配套练习，以帮助学习者在练习中融会贯通语法规则，真正做到学以致用。

简单、实用，融语法于美句，从练习中贯通。相信学习者将从书中体会到英语语法学习的快乐之道，进而领悟英语的力量，获取语言学习的成功之道！

另外，郝福合副教授参与了本书部分内容的编写工作，衷心感谢他为本书作出的贡献！

新航道国际教育集团总裁兼校长  
2011年4月

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to be 'Hao Fuhé', written in a cursive style.

# 第1章 绪论

语法由词法和句法两大部分组成。词法是指词汇的各种构成和变化形式以及用法规则。句法则指句子的组成方法以及结构规则。

## 1.1 单词的分类

按照意义和功能，单词可以分为以下类别：名词、代词、冠词、动词、形容词、副词、介词、连词、数词和感叹词。

### 1.1.1 名词

表示人或者事物的名称。

*Success is the result of good judgment.*

成功是正确判断的结果。

*A person's destiny is closely tied up with that of the whole nation.*

一个人的命运与整个国家的命运紧密相联。

### 1.1.2 代词

为了指代或避免重复而用来代替名词。

*I am nothing without my work.*

假如没有工作，我就没有价值。

*There is no such thing as genius; it is nothing but labor and diligence.*

世上无所谓天才，它仅仅是刻苦加勤奋。

*Diseases of the soul are more dangerous than those of the body.*

心灵的疾病比身体的疾病更危险。

### 1.1.3 冠词

用在名词前，表示名词所指的事物是否确定。

*A hero is nothing but a product of his time.*

英雄不过是时代的产物。

*The shortest answer is doing the thing.*

最简短的回答就是付诸行动。

### 1.1.4 动词

表示动作或状态。动词包括实义动词、系动词、助动词和情态动词，详见《动词概论》一章。

*Reading enriches the mind.*

阅读丰富思想。（实义动词）

Wonders will never *cease*.

奇迹无穷尽。（实义动词）

Life *is* the enjoyment of emotion.

生活是情感的享受。（系动词）

Do not live on the borrowed opinions of others.

不要靠别人的意见过日子。（助动词）

No one *can* challenge a kind man.

仁者无敌。（情态动词）

### 1.1.5 形容词

描述或修饰名词、代词。

A warm smile is the *universal* language of kindness.

热情的微笑是友好的通用语言。

A mother's love is an *enormous* flame.

母爱是熊熊的火焰。

Nothing *great* comes into being all at once.

伟业非一蹴而就。

### 1.1.6 副词

修饰动词、形容词、其他副词，或者对句子起描述作用。

If you want to live *happily*, you must love life.

如果你希望生活得幸福，就必须热爱生活。

If you work hard and listen to good advice, I'm sure you will have a *really* successful career.

如果你勤奋工作，听取好的建议，我可以肯定你会拥有真正成功的事业。

Excellence is doing ordinary things *extraordinarily well*.

卓越即把普通的事情做得非常出色。

*Generally*, it's better to focus on one thing and to do it *well*.

一般而言，最好专注于一件事并把它做好。

### 1.1.7 介词

用在名词、代词前，表明该词与其他词的关系。

Knowledge comes *from* experience alone.

知识只能来自经验。

Only the person who has faith *in* himself is able to be faithful *to* others.

只有对自己有信心的人才会对别人守信用。

### 1.1.8 连词

用来连接单词、短语或句子。

Success is not only based on power, money *or* fame.

成功不仅仅取决于权势、金钱或者声望。

From the people in your life, you can gain support *and* learn valuable lessons.

从自己生活中的人那里可以获得支持，汲取宝贵的教益。

Nothing is ordinary *if* you know how to use it.

如果你懂得如何利用，就没有普通的东西。

### 1.1.9 数词

表示数量或顺序。

*One* enemy is too many, and *a hundred* friends too few.

一个敌人太多，一百个朋友太少。

The *first* step is as good as half over.

迈出第一步相当于完成了一半。

### 1.1.10 感叹词

表示情绪或态度。

*Oh*, the things that I should see if I had the power of sight for just three days!

哦，如果我仅有三天视力，我能看到多少东西啊！

Fame is a bee. It has a song. It has a sting. *Ah*, too, it has a wing.

名气是一只蜜蜂。它能歌唱。它能蜇人。啊，它也能飞走。

## 1.2 词类的相互转换

英语中有大量的单词，在不同情况下，可以用作不同的词类。

### 1.2.1 名词和动词的转换

*Work* has a bitter root but sweet fruit.

工作的根苦，但果甜。（名词）

Time *works* wonders.

时间能创造奇迹。（动词）

If you are not the *master* of money, you will be its slave.

如果你不是金钱的主人，就会沦为金钱的奴隶。（名词）

Those who have courage to *master* their lives are heroes.  
有勇气掌握自己生活的人就是英雄。（动词）

### 1.2.2 名词和形容词的转换

*Chances* favor the prepared mind.  
机会垂青于有准备的头脑。（名词）  
A *chance* remark may change one's whole life.  
不经意的一句话可能改变一个人的整个一生。（形容词）

### 1.2.3 连词和副词的转换

You cannot change the past, *but* you can learn from it.  
你不能改变过去，但你可以从过去中学到东西。（连词）  
Life is given to man *but* once.  
生命被赋予人只有一次。（副词）

## 1.3 句子的成分

笼统地讲，一个句子主要包括两大部分，即主语部分和谓语部分。

Books 【主语部分】 are the ever-burning lamps of wisdom 【谓语部分】.

书籍是智慧的长明灯。

I 【主语部分】 value the rights, freedoms, and responsibilities of our society 【谓语部分】.

我尊重社会的权力、自由和责任。

具体而言，句子成分主要有八种，分别为主语、谓语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、补语和同位语。

### 1.3.1 主语

是句子的核心主体，多为名词、代词等，或相当于名词的短语、从句，通常位于句首。

*Life* lights the candle of hope.

生命点燃希望的烛光。

*The future* doesn't belong to the fainthearted.

未来不属于弱者。

### 1.3.2 谓语

描述或阐明主语的情况，为动词，在正常语序中位于主语之后。

The dream shall never *die*.

梦想绝不会灭亡。

Power *brings* responsibility.

权力带来的是责任。

### 1.3.3 宾语

动词的动作对象或介词的接触对象，可以是名词、代词，或相当于名词的动名词、不定式、从句，位于动词或介词之后。

Haste makes *waste*.

欲速则不达。

To love *oneself* is the beginning of a life-long romance.

爱自己是终生浪漫史的开端。

Our greatest glory consists not in never *falling*, but in *rising* every time we fall.

我们最大的荣耀并不在于永不跌倒，而在于每次跌倒都能站起来。

Winners expect *to win* in advance.

胜者事先预料到成功。

Temptation discovers *what we are*.

诱惑见本性。

### 1.3.4 表语

位于系动词之后的成分，可以是名词、形容词或从句。

Life is not *a bed of roses*.

人生不是安乐窝。

Our knowledge is *limited*.

我们的知识是有限的。

The reality is *that difficulties seldom defeat people*.

事实是，困难不会把人击垮。

### 1.3.5 定语

修饰或限定名词、代词等，可以是形容词或相当于形容词的短语、从句。

*Little* drops of water make the *mighty* ocean.

涓涓细流汇成浩瀚海洋。

The time *to act* is now.

现在就该行动。

There are many reasons *why honesty is important*.

诚实很重要，其原因有许多。

### 1.3.6 状语

修饰动词、形容词、副词或句子等，可以是副词，或相当于副词的短语、从句。

Those who dare to fail *miserably* can achieve *greatly*.

敢于一败涂地的人能够成就伟业。

*To leap better*, you can draw back.

为了跳得更好，可以先后退。

You must overcome fear *before it overcomes you*.

在被恐惧征服之前，必须征服恐惧。

I always get where I want to go *because I plan my life beforehand*.

因为我事先对人生有所筹划，所以我总能如愿地达到目标。

### 1.3.7 补语

补充主语或宾语的意义，可以是名词、动词或形容词等。

One day the rough places will be made *plain*.

终有一天，崎岖不平的地方将变得平坦。

I wish you *greatness*.

祝你成就伟大。

Storms make trees *take deeper roots*.

风暴使树木扎的根更深。

### 1.3.8 同位语

表示前面人或事物的所指，可以是名词或从句。

We should make the best use of today, *the hope of tomorrow*.

我们应充分利用今天，这是明天的希望。

The fact *that you have tried your best* is in itself a huge victory.

你已经尽了全力，这本身就是巨大胜利。

The word “*mother*” generally connotes love, care, tenderness, etc.

“母亲”这个字眼通常意味着爱、关心和体贴，等等。

此外，句子中还可能出现独立成分，包括插入语、称呼语和感叹语，与全句不存在语法关系。

### 1.3.9 插入语

嵌在句中或句末，表示补充说明。

Management, *remember*, is clearly different from leadership.

记住，管理明显不同于领导。

True science teaches, *above all*, to doubt and be ignorant.



首要的一点，真正的科学教人怀疑和知道自己无知。

### 1.3.10 称呼语

对受话人的称呼。

*My friends*, love is a fruit of love.

朋友，爱是爱的结果。

*Dear*, you can't talk your way out of problems.

亲爱的，说话解决不了问题。

### 1.3.11 感叹语

表示情绪或态度，由感叹词担当。

*Oh*, life itself is a miracle.

啊，生命本身就是一个奇迹。

## 1.4 句子的类型

1.4.1 按照功能，句子可以划分为四种类型：陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句

#### a 陈述句

用于陈述事实或说明看法。

I am nature's greatest miracle.

我是大自然最伟大的奇迹。

We all have dreams and ambitions.

我们都有梦想和抱负。

#### b 疑问句

用于提出问题。

Is there a secret for succeeding in business?

商业的成功有秘诀吗？

How do you understand misfortune?

你怎样理解不幸呢？

#### c 祈使句

用于请求、劝告、叮嘱、命令等。

Please tell me what it is that helps you to focus on your life priorities.

请告诉我是什么帮你专注于人生的重要目标。

Stop insisting that life has been unfair to you.

不要再坚持认为生活对你不公了。

Insist on yourself. Never imitate.

坚持自己的本色，不要模仿。

Seize this day! Begin now!

把握住今天！从现在做起！

#### d 感叹句

用于传达说话者的强烈情感。

How pleasant it is to find a rich life!

找到充实的生活是多么惬意啊！

How much pain has been caused by evils which have never happened!

有多少痛苦是由一些从未发生过的灾难引起的啊！

### 1.4.2 根据结构，句子可以划分为三种类型：简单句、并列句和复合句

#### a 简单句

只有一个谓语动词的句子。

Virtue is its own reward.

美德本身就是报偿。

Successful habits create positive rewards.

成功的习惯带来积极的回报。

#### b 并列句

由并列连词连接两个或两个以上简单句而成的句子。并列连词如and, but, or, so等。并列句中的每个简单句可称为分句。

In a full heart there is room for everything, *and* in an empty heart there is room for nothing.

充实的心灵包容一切，空虚的心灵排挤一切。

We cannot control the beauty of our face, *but* we can control the expression on it.

我们无法控制自己面容的美丽，但我们能够控制自己面容的表情。

Don't be too academic, *or* you may lose your audience.

学术味不要太浓，否则你可能失去听众。

I thought it looked like fun so I wanted to learn.

我觉得有趣，所以我想学习。

#### c 复合句

除主句外还包含一个或一个以上从句的句子。主句是指表达主要思想，可以独立存在的句子，而从句相对于主句而言，是指表达次要思想，不能独立存在，只能和主句一起使用的句子，每个从句的功能相当于一个句子成分。

Once you understand yourself【从句】, you can start to grow and write your character【主句】.

一旦了解了自己, 你就开始成长并书写自己的性格。

If you want to interact effectively with me【从句】, you first need to understand me【主句】.

如果你希望和我有效地交往, 首先你需要了解我。

There is no happiness except in the realization【主句】 that we have accomplished something【从句】.

如果我们意识不到有所成就, 就没有幸福可言。

## 1.5 简单句的基本结构

### 1.5.1 主语+谓语

The sun does not always shine.

太阳并非永远照耀。

The luster of pure gold will never fade.

纯金的光泽永远不褪。

### 1.5.2 主语+谓语+宾语

Adversity has many benefits.

逆境有诸多好处。

Achievement provides the only real pleasure in life.

有所成就是人生唯一的真正乐趣。

### 1.5.3 主语+谓语+间接宾语+直接宾语

A sense of purpose gives your life meaning.

使命感赋予生命以意义。

Teaching gives me pace, variety and challenge.

教学使我的工作进程有了规律, 使我的生活变得丰富多彩, 向我提出了挑战。

### 1.5.4 主语+谓语+主语补语

Courage is esteemed the first of human qualities.

勇气被看作人的首要品质。

### 1.5.5 主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补语

Love makes the world go around.

爱让世界运行不息。

I will make life more enjoyable for others.

我将让别人的生活变得更加美好。

### 1.5.6 主语+系动词+表语

Life is a series of surprises.

人生是一连串意想不到的事情。

Happiness is a way station between too much and too little.

幸福是太多和太少之间的一站。

## 1.6 从句

按照功能，从句可划分为七种，分别是主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、定语从句、状语从句、同位语从句和补语从句。

### 1.6.1 主语从句

在复合句中行使主语的功能。

*What we do willingly* is easy.

愿者不难。

*Whatever is hidden away* will be brought out in the open.

纸包不住火。

### 1.6.2 宾语从句

在复合句中行使宾语的功能。

Goals determine *what you're going to be*.

目标决定你将成为什么样的人。

We can make *whatever changes are necessary* to improve things.

为了改善情况我们可以做出任何必要的改变。

### 1.6.3 表语从句

在复合句中行使表语的功能。

Love is *what links two souls*.

爱是联结两个心灵的东西。

Self-esteem is *what people think about themselves*.

自尊是人们对自我的看法。

### 1.6.4 定语从句

在复合句中行使定语的功能。

Success is a process *that never ends*.

成功是一个永远没有结束的过程。

Smile is sunshine, *which warms people*.

微笑是阳光，温暖人心。

### 1.6.5 状语从句

在复合句中行使状语的功能。

*As long as we try*, there is always a way out.

只要我们努力，总会有出路。

A real friend never gets in your way, *unless you happen to be on the way down*.

真正的朋友绝不会挡你的路，除非在你走下坡路的时候。

### 1.6.6 同位语从句

在复合句中行使同位语的功能。

I will persist with the knowledge *that each failure will increase my chance for success at the next attempt*.

每一次失败都将增加我下次尝试的成功机率，我会坚持这种认识。

The value of a man's life increases with the fact *that he really knows how to make full use of his time*.

真正懂得充分利用时间的人，他的生命价值会随之增加。

### 1.6.7 补语从句

在复合句中行使补语的功能。

I was ashamed *that I had lied*.

我感到难为情的是自己撒了谎。

She is confident *that she will win*.

她确信自己会赢。

## 第2章 名词

### 2.1 名词的种类

名词是用来表示人或事物名称的词。按照不同的分类标准，名词可以分为多种类别。

#### 2.1.1 按照构成，名词可分为简单名词和合成名词

a 简单名词是由一个词构成的名词，如：

sky 天空 earth 大地 mountain 山  
river 河 individual 个人 society 社会

b 合成名词是由两个或两个以上的词组合而成的名词，如：

workshop 车间 highway 公路 sunrise 日出  
handwriting 笔迹 headache 头痛 know-how 技术

#### 2.1.2 按照意义，名词可分为专有名词和普通名词

a 专有名词特指人或事物的名称，首字母必须大写，包括表示人名、地名、书名、月份、星期、组织机构名称等，如：

Alexander 亚历山大 Europe 欧洲 A Tale of Two Cities 《双城记》  
September 九月 Wednesday 周三 the United Nations 联合国

b 普通名词是泛指某一类人或事物的共同名称。普通名词又可以细分为四种：个体名词、集体名词、物质名词和抽象名词。

个体名词表示单个人或事物，如：

teacher 教师 child 孩子 school 学校  
city 城市 company 公司 street 街道

集体名词表示多个人或事物的总称，如：

crew 全体工作人员 police 警方 people 人们  
youth 青年人 clientele 顾客们 cattle 牛

物质名词表示不能分为个体的事物，包括表示材料、液体、气体、食物、饮料等的名词，如：

gold 金 ink 墨水 wind 风  
sugar 糖 food 食品 sand 沙子

抽象名词表示抽象概念，包括表示性质、状态等的名词，如：

progress 进步 happiness 幸福 kindness 和蔼  
knowledge 知识 anger 愤怒 hatred 仇恨

#### 2.1.3 按照可数性，名词可分为可数名词和不可数名词

- a 可数名词有单数和复数两种形式，如person为可数名词，其单数形式为原形，复数形式为persons。
- b 不可数名词没有复数形式，如information没有informations的形式。物质名词和抽象名词皆属不可数名词。

## 2.2 名词的语法功能

名词在句中可以作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、补语、同位语和称呼语。

### 2.2.1 名词作主语

*Victory* won't come to me unless I go to it.  
胜利不会主动来找我，除非我主动去找它。

*Misfortunes* tell us what fortune is.  
不幸让我们知道什么是幸福。

*Achievement* provides the only real pleasure in life.  
有所作为能带来生活中唯一真正的快乐。

### 2.2.2 名词作宾语

#### a 作动词宾语

Reading makes *a full man*.  
阅读使人知识渊博。

Money brings you *food*, but not *appetite*; *medicine*, but not *health*.  
金钱能给你带来食物，但不会带来胃口；能带来药品，但不会带来健康。

#### b 作介词宾语

Knowledge comes from *diligence*.  
知识来自于勤奋。

A man's fortune is in *his own hands*.  
一个人的命运掌握在自己的手中。

### 2.2.3 名词作表语

Action is *eloquence*.  
行动就是雄辩。

Everyone you meet is *your mirror*.  
你遇见的每个人都是你的镜子。

When work is *a pleasure*, life is *a joy*.  
当工作是乐趣的时候，生活就是享受。

#### 2.2.4 名词作定语

*Life* education is the basis for success in the *knowledge* society.

终生教育是知识社会的成功之本。

Adversity teaches you a great deal about *survival* skills.

逆境教会你许多生存技能。

In *association* circumstances, we should have sharp eyes and keen ears.

在交际场合，我们应目光锐利，听觉灵敏。

#### 2.2.5 名词作状语

One can walk over the highest mountain *one step at a time*.

一个人只能一步步地翻越最高的山峰。

We prefer to die *a hero* rather than live *a slave*.

我们宁作英雄死，不为奴隶生。

Every task, no matter how boring, brings me *steps* closer to fulfilling my dreams.

每一项工作，无论多么乏味，都使我朝着实现梦想跨近了步伐。

#### 2.2.6 名词作补语

##### a 作主语补足语

No one is guaranteed *a job* anywhere.

无论在何处，任何工作都并非高枕无忧。

Gain at the expense of reputation should be called *loss*.

以名誉为代价所获得的东西应被称作损失。

##### b 作宾语补足语

When a man assumes a public trust, he should consider himself *a public property*.

当一个人接受了公众的信任，就应该把自己看作公共财产。

I have always thought the actions of men *the best interpreters of their thoughts*.

我一直认为人的行动是他们思想最好的阐释。

#### 2.2.7 名词作同位语

Man, *the miracle of nature*, can save himself.

人，大自然的奇迹，能够拯救自己。

Don't give up life, *the source of hope*.

不要放弃生命，这是希望之源。



### 2.2.8 名词作称呼语

*My friends*, wealth should never be your only goal.

朋友们，财富绝不应该是唯一的目标。

*My dear*, every human being must be viewed according to what he is good for, for none of us is perfect.

亲爱的，看待每个人的标准一定要依据他的优点，因为我们都不是完美无缺的。

## 2.3 名词的性

在英语中，大部分名词并无阴阳之别，只有为数不多的名词可以区分两性。

### 2.3.1 表示人的名词

#### 阳性

actor 男演员

bachelor 单身汉

boy 男孩

bridegroom 新郎

duke 公爵

emperor 皇帝

father 父亲

fiance 未婚夫

gentleman 先生

hero 英雄;男主角

host 男主人（相对于客人而言）

husband 丈夫

king 国王

landlord 房东

#### 阴性

actress 女演员

spinster 未婚女子

girl 女孩

bride 新娘

duchess 女公爵；伯爵夫人

empress 女皇；皇后

mother 母亲

fiancee 未婚妻

lady 女士

heroine 女英雄; 女主角

hostess 女主人

wife 妻子

queen 女王；王后

landlady 房东太太

通性：在性别不确定的情况下，使用通性。如：

chair 主席 (chairman或chairwoman)

child 孩子 (boy 或girl；son 或daughter)

cousin 堂(表)兄弟姐妹 (male cousin或female cousin)

singer 歌手 (male singer或female singer)

spouse 配偶 (husband或wife)

### 2.3.2 表示动物的名词

阳性	阴性
dog 公狗	bitch 母狗
fox 公狐狸	vixen 母狐狸
lion 公狮	lioness 母狮
rooster 公鸡	hen 母鸡
通性，如：	
pig 猪	deer 鹿
ox 牛	sheep 羊
chicken 鸡	horse 马

## 2.4 名词的复数

### 2.4.1 名词复数的规则变化

a 一般在名词词尾加s。

friend 朋友 → friends failure 失败 → failures  
member 成员 → members book 书 → books  
interest 兴趣 → interests nation 国家 → nations

b 词尾是s, x, ch, sh时加es。

bonus 奖金 → bonuses bus 公交车 → buses  
fox 狐狸 → foxes climax 高潮 → climaxes  
coach 教练 → coaches speech 演讲 → speeches  
ash 灰烬 → ashes bush 灌木 → bushes

但是，epoch (年代)，stomach (胃部)等词的复数形式是在词尾直接加s。

c 词尾是辅音字母+y时，变y为ies。

enemy 敌人 → enemies victory 胜利 → victories  
hobby 业余爱好 → hobbies lady 女士 → ladies  
body 身体 → bodies study 学习 → studies

注意：词尾是元音字母+y时，直接加s，如：

boy 男孩 → boys guy 家伙 → guys  
key 钥匙 → keys day 天 → days

d 词尾是f或fe时，多将f或fe变为ves。

life 生命 → lives wife 妻子 → wives  
shelf 架子 → shelves knife 刀子 → knives  
wolf 狼 → wolves calf 牛犊 → calves

e 词尾是o的词，有些加es。

echo 回音 → echoes hero 英雄 → heroes

tomato 番茄 → tomatoes potato 土豆 → potatoes  
有些直接加s, 如:

piano 钢琴 → pianos photo 相片 → photos  
zoo 动物园 → zoos bamboo 竹子 → bamboos  
solo 独奏; 独唱 → solos kilo 千克; 千米 → kilos

也有一些名词的复数形式既可加s, 也可加es, 如:

cargo 货物 → cargos或cargoes  
ghetto 少数民族聚居区 → ghettos 或ghettoes  
volcano 火山 → volcanos或volcanoes

## 2.4.2 名词复数的不规则变化

### a 单复数同形的名词

sheep 绵羊 deer 鹿 fish 鱼  
aircraft 飞机 offspring 后代 Chinese 中国人  
Japanese 日本人 Portuguese 葡萄牙人 Swiss 瑞士人  
means 手段 works 工厂 series 系列  
species 物种 quarters 住处 headquarters 总部  
corps 队 barracks 营房

### b 自身有特殊变化的名词

下列名词的复数形式自身有特殊的变化, 但是这些词也有一定的规律可循。

man 男人 → men woman 女人 → women  
child 孩子 → children ox 牛 → oxen  
tooth 牙 → teeth foot 脚; 英尺 → feet  
goose 鹅 → geese mouse 老鼠 → mice  
louse 虱子 → lice die 骰子 → dice  
criterion 标准 → criteria phenomenon 现象 → phenomena  
appendix 附录 → appendices index 索引 → indices  
codex 药典 → codices vortex 旋涡 → vortices

有些以eau结尾的名词, 复数形式为: 在eau之后加x。

beau 花花公子 → beaux bureau 局 → bureaux  
chateau 庄园 → chateaux plateau 高原 → plateaux  
tableau 画面 → tableaux

有些以a结尾的名词, 复数形式为: 在a之后加e。

aurora 曙光 → aurorae formula 配方 → formulae  
alga 海藻 → algae alumna 女校友 → alumnae  
antenna 触角; 天线 → antennae larva 幼虫 → larvae

nebula 星云 → nebulae nova 新星 → novae  
retina 视网膜 → retinae supernova 超新星 → supernovae  
vertebra 脊椎 → vertebrae

有些以sis或xis结尾的名词，复数形式为：变sis, xis为ses, xes。

analysis 分析 → analyses axis 轴 → axes  
basis 基础 → bases crisis 危机 → crises  
diagnosis 诊断 → diagnoses ellipsis 省略 → ellipses  
hypothesis 假说 → hypotheses oasis 绿洲 → oases  
parenthesis 圆括号 → parentheses synopsis 提要 → synopses  
thesis 论文 → theses

有些以um结尾的名词，复数形式为：变um为a。

bacterium 细菌 → bacteria curriculum 课程 → curricula  
datum 数据 → data equilibrium 平衡 → equilibria  
erratum 书写或印刷错误 → errata medium 媒体 → media  
memorandum 备忘录 → memoranda millennium 千年 → millennia  
stratum 层 → strata ovum 卵细胞 → ova  
addendum 附加物 → addenda

有些以us结尾的名词，复数形式为：变us为i。

abacus 算盘 → abaci alumnus 男校友 → alumni  
bacillus 杆菌 → bacilli cactus 仙人掌 → cacti  
focus 焦点 → foci fungus 真菌 → fungi  
locus 地点 → loci narcissus 水仙 → narcissi  
nucleus 核心 → nuclei radius 半径 → radii  
stimulus 刺激因素 → stimuli syllabus 教学大纲 → syllabi  
terminus 终点 → termini

### 2.4.3 以复数形式出现，用作单数意义的名词

有些名词虽然形式上为复数，但概念上常为单数，如表示学科、疾病、游戏以及一些专有名词等。

表示学科的名词：

economics 经济学 mathematics 数学 mechanics 力学  
physics 物理学 politics 政治学 statistics 统计学

表示疾病的名词：

arthritis 关节炎 diabetes 糖尿病 measles 麻疹  
mumps 腮腺炎 rabies 狂犬病 rickets 软骨病

专有名词：

the United States 美国 the United Nations 联合国

the Philippines 菲律宾 the Netherlands 荷兰  
Niagara Falls 尼亚加拉瀑布

#### 2.4.4 以复数形式出现，用作复数意义的名词

有些名词，无论在形式和概念上皆为复数，如表示地点、文字、衣着、用具、金钱、财产的名词以及其他一些名词。

表示地点的名词：

circumstances 境况 outskirts 郊区 premises 经营场所  
suburbs 郊区 surroundings 环境

表示文字的名词：

archives 档案 contents 内容 credentials 证件  
directions 用法说明 findings 研究结果 instructions 用法说明  
minutes 会议纪录 particulars 详情 regulations 规章  
specifics 详情 terms 条件

表示衣着的名词：

briefs 三角裤 clothes 衣服 glasses 眼镜  
jeans 牛仔裤 pajamas 睡衣 pants 裤子  
shorts 短裤 slacks 宽松的裤子 socks 短袜  
spectacles 眼镜 stockings 长统袜 tights 紧身衣  
trousers 裤子

表示用具的名词：

bellows 风箱 chopsticks 筷子 compasses 圆规  
gallows 绞刑架 pliers 钳子 scissors 剪子  
tweezers 镊子 facilities 设施

表示金钱财产的名词：

assets 财产 damages 赔偿金 earnings 收入  
goods 货物 proceeds 收益 riches 财产  
savings 存款 wages 工钱

其他名词：

authorities 当局 fireworks 烟火 manners 礼貌  
times 时代 vicissitudes 世事变迁 human rights 人权  
public relations 公共关系  
*Riches do not always bring happiness.*  
财富并非总能带来幸福。  
*Good manners add to your image.*  
彬彬有礼有助于个人形象。  
*Bad times make a good man.*

乱世出英雄。

A book has *contents* of gold.

书中自有黄金屋。

*Particulars* are not to be examined till the whole has been surveyed.

全面考虑整体之后再研究细节。

The man who has no inner life is the slave of his *surroundings*.

没有内心生活的人是环境的奴隶。

*Circumstances* are the rulers of the weak; they are but the instruments of the wise.

弱者受制于环境，智者利用环境。

## 2.4.5 合成名词的复数

一般在词尾加s。

turning point 转折点 → turning points

shopping center 购物中心 → shopping centers

bedroom 卧室 → bedrooms

paperknife 裁纸刀 → paperknives

highway 公路 → highways

income 收入 → incomes

byproduct 副产品 → byproducts

如果合成名词由名词与其他词性构成，复数形式由影响该合成名词主要意义的核心名词部分体现。

attorney general 检察总长 → attorneys general

hanger-on 跟随者 → hangers-on

looker-on 旁观者 → lookers-on

passer-by 过路人 → passers-by

runner-up 亚军 → runners-up

commander-in-general 总指挥 → commanders-in-general

editor-in-chief 主编 → editors-in-chief

grant-in-aid 资助款 → grants-in-aid

son-in-law 女婿 → sons-in-law

如果合成名词由表示性别的man或woman与表示职业的名词构成，复数形式则两部分皆须变化。

man doctor 男医生 → men doctors

woman reporter 女记者 → women reporters

## 2.4.6 单复数意义不同的名词

有些名词的单数形式与复数形式的意义大相径庭。

advice 建议 ↔ advices 报道 air 空气 ↔ airs 做作的姿态  
arm 胳膊 ↔ arms 武器 art 艺术 ↔ arts 文科  
authority 权威 ↔ authorities 当局 brain 大脑 ↔ brains 智慧  
cloth 布料 ↔ clothes 衣服 compass 指南针 ↔ compasses 圆规  
custom 习俗 ↔ customs 海关 damage 损害 ↔ damages 赔偿金  
effect 影响 ↔ effects 财物 glass 玻璃 ↔ glasses 眼镜  
good 好处 ↔ goods 商品 look 看 ↔ looks 容貌  
manner 方式 ↔ manners 礼貌 minute 分钟 ↔ minutes 会议记录  
pain 疼痛 ↔ pains 辛苦 quarter 四分之一 ↔ quarters 住处  
return 回归 ↔ returns 收入 scale 刻度 ↔ scales 天平  
spectacle 景象 ↔ spectacles 眼镜 time 时间 ↔ times 时期；时代  
work 工作 ↔ works 工厂

*Time and tide wait for no man.*

岁月不待人。

*Tough times don't last, but tough people do.*

艰难岁月不会持久，但坚强的人可以耐久。

*Pain past is pleasure.*

过去的痛苦就是快乐。

*No pains, no gains.*

不劳无获。

*Life requires a down-to-earth working manner.*

生活需要脚踏实地的工作作风。

*We can't be truly elegant without good manners.*

没有礼貌我们不可能真正举止优雅。

## 2.5 不可数名词

### 2.5.1 不可数名词多为物质名词和抽象名词

物质名词多表示材料、液体、气体、食物、饮料等。如：

copper 铜 gold 金 iron 铁  
silver 银 coal 煤 paper 纸  
sand 沙 wood 木 blood 血  
ink 墨 oil 油 water 水

air 气 oxygen 氧 smoke 烟  
wind 风 bread 面包 coffee 咖啡  
food 食品 fruit 水果

抽象名词多表示性质、状态、情感或其他概念性的事物等。如：

bravery 勇敢 cruelty 残忍 kindness 和蔼  
politeness 礼貌 fun 乐趣 happiness 幸福  
poverty 贫困 progress 进步 admiration 钦慕  
anger 愤怒 hatred 仇恨 jealousy 妒忌  
advice 建议 evidence 证据 information 信息  
knowledge 知识 news 新闻 wealth 财富  
weather 天气 work 工作 music 音乐  
time 时间

### 2.5.2 不可数名词复数形式的意义

不可数名词一般没有复数形式，但如果不可数名词出现复数，则表示种类或表示数量、程度等极大。

foods 各种食品 fruits 各种水果 waters 大片的水  
Justice rolls down like waters.  
正义如大水滔滔。

### 2.5.3 不可数名词可以在前加特定的量词表示数量

量词piece的表意功能很强，可以和很多不可数名词搭配使用。

a piece of advice 一条建议 a piece of baggage或luggage 一件行李  
a piece of bread 一片面包 a piece of chalk 一根粉笔  
a piece of evidence 一项证据 a piece of furniture 一件家具  
a piece of information 一条信息 a piece of music 一首音乐  
a piece of news 一篇新闻 a piece of paper 一张纸  
a piece of wood 一块木头 a piece of work 一份工作

其他常见的量词与不可数名词的搭配，如：

an article of clothing 一件衣服 a barrel of oil 一桶石油  
a beam of light 一束光线 a cake of soap 一块香皂  
a drop of water 一滴水 a grain of sand 一粒沙子  
a gust of wind 一阵风 an item of news 一条新闻  
a load of nonsense 一派胡言 a loaf of bread 一条面包  
a lump of coal 一块煤 a period of time 一段时间  
a sheet of paper 一张纸 a slice of meat 一片肉  
A drop of ink may make a million think.



一滴墨水写成的文字可以让千万人思考。

*A pound of care will not pay an ounce of debt.*

一镑的忧虑也偿还不了了一盎司的债务。

*Little drops of water and little grains of sand make the mighty ocean and the pleasant land.*

滴滴水珠，颗颗沙粒，汇成浩瀚的海洋，形成宜人的土地。

*A grain of wheat remains no more than a single grain unless it is dropped into the ground.*

一粒麦子不落入土地就只能是一粒麦子。

## 2.6 名词的所有格

### 2.6.1 名词的所有格构成

名词的所有格主要用于表示名词之间的所有关系，包括两种形式：一是在名词词尾加's或加'表示；二是用介词of表示。

a 在名词词尾加's或加'表示。

在词尾不是s的名词之后加's。

today's newspaper 今天的报纸 doctor's degree 博士学位

当名词为复数时，其所有格形式为：在词尾直接加'。

customers' interests 顾客的利益 students' scores 学生的成绩

当单数名词的结尾为s时，其所有格形式既可以在词尾加's，也可以在词尾加'。

Phipps' (s) family 菲普斯的家庭 Paris' (s) traffic 巴黎的交通

the boss' (s) office 老板的办公室

Today is yesterday's pupil.

今天是昨天的学生。

Life is a soldier's battle.

人生就是一名士兵的战斗。

A moment's error can bring a lifelong regret.

一时的错误会带来终生的遗憾。

A positive attitude is a person's passport to a better tomorrow.

积极的态度是一个人通往更美好未来的通行证。

A mother's main wish is to see her children grow up healthy and happy.

母亲的最大心愿就是看着自己的孩子健康、幸福地成长。

A man's character is like a fence—it cannot be strengthened by whitewashing.

一个人的品格就像篱笆，并不能靠粉刷而加强。

b 用介词of表示。

这种所有格表示法多用于没有生命的物体或者较为正式的表达。

Men are masters *of their own fates*.

人是自己命运的主人。

Diligence is a sure warrant *of success*.

勤奋是成功的可靠保证。

Ignorance is the root *of misfortune*.

无知是不幸的根源。

Hopelessness is the cancer *of the soul*.

绝望是灵魂的癌症。

Men are not prisoners *of fate*, but only prisoners *of their own minds*.

人并非命运的囚徒，而不过是自己思想的俘虏。

c 双重所有格。

双重所有格即's与of一起使用，其主要用法在于：of之后所有格名词所表示的数量超过of之前名词的数量。

two relatives of Mr. Stevenson's

史蒂文森先生的两位亲属（表明史蒂文森先生不止这两位亲属）

"The way to develop self-confidence, he said, is to do the thing you fear to do and get a record of successful experiences behind you." wrote Lowell Thomas, *a friend of Carnegie's*.

“培养自信的方法，他说，就是去做你害怕做的事情，从而积累成功的经历。”卡耐基的一位朋友洛威尔·托马斯写道。

## 2.6.2 名词所有格的意义

名词所有格主要表示所有关系，此外，还可以表示主谓关系、动宾关系和修饰关系等。

a 名词所有格表示所有关系。

the worker's income 工人的收入 the writer's library 作家的藏书

b 名词所有格表示主谓关系。

friends' help 朋友的帮助 the committee's approval 委员会的批准

c 名词所有格表示动宾关系。

the patient's treatment 病人的治疗 the enemy's capture 敌人的俘获

Education is *a progressive discovery of our own ignorance*.

教育是不断发现我们无知的过程。

*Consideration of others* is the basis of good manners.

体谅他人是礼貌的根本。

d 名词所有格表示修饰关系。

driver's license 驾驶执照 teacher's certificate 教师证书

*A thing of beauty is a joy forever.*

美的事物永远令人愉悦。

*Try to become a man of value.*

努力做一个有价值的人。

### 2.6.3 名词所有格习语

Abraham's bosom 天国 Achilles' heel 致命的弱点

Adam's ale 水 Adam's apple 喉结

Aladdin's lamp 心想事成的法宝 banker's hours 短工作时

Caesar's wife 不容置疑的人 cat's paw 替人火中取栗的人

child's play 极为容易的事 devil's advocate 故意持不同意见的人

dog's life 悲惨的生活 fool's errand 徒劳无益的差使

hornet's nest 困境 Pandora's box 灾祸之源

at arm's length 保持一定距离 a bird's-eye view 俯瞰的景象

a worm's-eye view 仰视的景象 one's heart's desire 渴望的东西

for God's (或Heaven's) sake 看在上天份上

old wives' tale 无稽之谈 the lion's share 最大的一份

the philosopher's stone 点金石 at a moment's notice 一经通知

at one's wits' end 智穷计尽 at a snail's pace 非常缓慢地

by a hair's breath 险些

*fool's paradise is a wise man's hell.*

虚幻的幸福是智者的地狱。

*Diligence is the philosopher's stone.*

勤奋就是点金之石。

*Failure to hit the bull's-eye is never the fault of the target.*

没有击中要害绝不是目标的错误。

*Daydreaming alone can't turn you into your heart's desire.*

幻想本身并不能使你如愿以偿。

*Hold a picture of yourself in your mind's eye, and you will be drawn toward it.*

在自己的心目中树立一个自我形象，你就会朝这个形象靠拢。

## 2.7 作定语的名词

很多时候，名词可以作定语，修饰另一个名词。总体规律在于，作定语的名词一般表示被修饰名词所涉及的内容或方面，这是和形容词作

定语的一个主要区别，因为形容词多表示被修饰名词的性质。试比较：

beautiful lady 美丽的女士 beauty contest 选美比赛  
historical event 历史事件 history book 历史书  
informative lecture 增长知识的讲座 information age 信息时代  
knowledgeable scholar 知识渊博的学者 knowledge economy 知识经济  
peaceful world 和平的世界 peace talks 和平谈判  
successful businessman 成功的商人 success story 成功的故事

### 2.7.1 单数名词作定语

air conditioner 空调 alarm clock 闹钟  
assembly line 装配线 beauty contest 选美比赛  
body guard 保镖 coffee break 工作间歇  
credit card 信用卡 department store 百货商店  
fire engine 救火车 generation gap 代沟  
heart attack 心脏病 identity card 身份证  
press conference 记者招待会 reception desk 接待台  
riot police 防暴警察 safety standard 安全标准  
science fiction 科幻小说 service industry 服务行业  
stock market 股票市场 summer holiday 暑假

### 2.7.2 复数名词作定语

arms race 军备竞赛 careers guide 就业指导  
commodities fair 商品展销会 customs house 海关  
foreign languages department 外语系 foreign studies university 外国语大学  
public relations manager 公关经理 savings bank 储蓄银行  
sales director 销售经理 the humanities faculty 人文学院

## 2.8 合成名词

合成名词即由两个或两个以上单词相结合而构成的名词。有些合成名词分开写或者用连字符连接。合成名词的构成主要有如下类型：

#### a 名词+名词

bedroom 卧室 cornerstone 基石 groundwork 基础  
housewife 家庭主妇 newspaper 报纸 workshop 工作间

#### b 动名词+名词

building block 基础材料 looking glass 镜子  
racing car 赛车 shopping center 购物中心  
turning point 转折点 washing powder 洗衣粉

c 形容词+名词

background 背景 deadline 最后期限  
greenhouse 温室 highway 公路  
honeymoon 蜜月

d 动词+名词

crybaby 爱哭的人 driveway 车行道  
pickpocket 扒手 scarecrow 稻草人

e 副词+名词

aftereffect 事后影响 by-product 副产品  
onlooker 旁观者

f 名词+动词

earthquake 地震 haircut 理发  
rainfall 降雨 sunrise 日出  
headache 头痛

g 名词+动名词

baby-sitting 代人临时照看孩子 daydreaming 幻想  
mountain climbing 登山 sight-seeing 观光  
stamp collecting 集邮 sun-bathing 日光浴

h 名词+副词

hanger-on 跟随者 passer-by 过路人  
runner-up 亚军

i 副词+动词

downfall 垮台 income 收入  
input 输入 outcome 结果  
outbreak 爆发 outlook 观点

j 动词+副词

breakthrough 突破 check-up 检查  
follow-up 后续 know-how 技术  
make-up 构造 payoff 报偿

k 其他构成

good-for-nothing 无用的人 stick-in-the-mud 墨守成规的人

例句：

The family is the *cornerstone* of our society.  
家庭是我们社会的基石。

The *groundwork* of all happiness is health.

一切幸福的基础都是健康。

In war, there is no second prize for the *runner-up*.

战争中的第二名没有奖项。

*Self-awareness* is a building block of commitment.

自我意识是责任的建筑材料。

## 实践演练

### I. 确定句中空格处的名词应该使用单数还是复数形式。

1. No man is wise at all \_\_\_\_\_. (time, times)
2. Evil company brings a man to the \_\_\_\_\_. (gallow, gallows)
3. Best \_\_\_\_\_ for a happy and prosperous new year. (wish, wishes)
4. Self-confidence is the first requisite of great \_\_\_\_\_. (undertaking, undertakings)
5. He that rises not early never does a good day's \_\_\_\_\_. (work, works)
6. Let's shake \_\_\_\_\_ on parting. Gently withdrawing my hand, I know that longing has taken root. (hand, hands)
7. Everyone has his own way of relaxing. Perhaps the most popular way is to take part in \_\_\_\_\_. (sport, sports)
8. I hate a thing done by \_\_\_\_\_. (half, halves)
9. Money brings you \_\_\_\_\_, but not health. (medicine, medicines)
10. He loses \_\_\_\_\_ who promises and delays. (thank, thanks)
11. It is ill \_\_\_\_\_ to silence a fool, and it is cruelty to let him go on. (manner, manners)
12. God gives every bird their \_\_\_\_\_ but they must fly for it. (food, foods)
13. A hedge between keeps \_\_\_\_\_ green. (friendship, friendships)
14. Wish you success in your \_\_\_\_\_, happiness and health. (study, studies)
15. It is easy to fetch \_\_\_\_\_ when a river is near. (water, waters)

### II. 写出每句括号中名词的复数形式。

1. Age breeds \_\_\_\_\_ (ache).
2. The best throw of the \_\_\_\_\_ (dice) is to throw them away.
3. Never do things by \_\_\_\_\_ (half).
4. All great \_\_\_\_\_ (truth) begin as blasphemies.
5. Have an aim in life or your \_\_\_\_\_ (energy) will all be wasted.

6. \_\_\_\_\_(study) serve for delight, for ornament, and for ability.
7. The fisher who draws in his net too soon won't have any \_\_\_\_\_(fish) to sell.
8. Boredom is the most horrible of \_\_\_\_\_(wolf).
9. \_\_\_\_\_(coach) have an abundance of knowing and possibilities. That is their gift. Abundance is all around you, and all within.
10. Truth has a good face, but ill \_\_\_\_\_(cloth).
11. There are black \_\_\_\_\_(sheep) in every flock.
12. The glutton has two \_\_\_\_\_(stomach) to eat but no stomach for work.
13. Avarice and lust are nothing but \_\_\_\_\_(species) of madness.
14. \_\_\_\_\_(looker-on) see more than players.
15. All human beings are subject to decay, and when fate summons, \_\_\_\_\_(monarch) must obey.

### III. 根据汉语，写出复数名词。

1. You can't walk and look at the \_\_\_\_\_(星星) if you have a stone in your shoe.
2. Absolute liberty makes \_\_\_\_\_(窃贼).
3. Good \_\_\_\_\_(武器) are half the battle.
4. A man becomes learned by asking \_\_\_\_\_(问题).
5. Laughter and strength are \_\_\_\_\_(孪生兄弟).
6. \_\_\_\_\_(女人) can tolerate everything except each other.
7. Only true friends will leave \_\_\_\_\_(足迹) in your heart.
8. Money brings you \_\_\_\_\_(仆人), but not loyalty.
9. The best answer is to roll up your \_\_\_\_\_(袖子) and do the job yourself.
10. The cunning fox has a bag of \_\_\_\_\_(借口).
11. Heaven is at the \_\_\_\_\_(脚) of mothers.
12. Competence, like truth, beauty and contact \_\_\_\_\_(镜片), is in the eye of the beholder.
13. Modesty is to merit what \_\_\_\_\_(阴影) are to a picture, which give it force and relief.
14. You cannot make omelets without breaking \_\_\_\_\_(鸡蛋).
15. Always put yourself in others' \_\_\_\_\_(鞋).

### IV. 为下列句子中的特定名词添加所有格。

1. Addition is the miser sum of happiness.
2. Anger final resting-place is the bosom of fools.

3. Don't trust a horse heel or a dog tooth.
4. One hour cold will spoil seven years warming.
5. He who washes an ass head loses both his soap and labor.
6. As wave follows wave, so new men take old men places.
7. The glad heart is heaven hall; the gloomy heart is earth prison.
8. Happiness grows at our own firesides and is not to be picked in strangers gardens.
9. Just as philosophy is the study of other people misconceptions, so history is the study of other people mistakes.
10. A moment insight is sometimes worth a life experience.
11. The greatest enemy to man is man, who, by the devil instigation, is a wolf, a devil to himself and others.
12. My days are swifter than a weaver shuttle.
13. A friend frown is better than a fool smile.
14. A monkey never watches his own tail; he watches his neighbor.
15. A habit at first may seem to have no more strength than a spider web, but, once formed, it binds as with a chain of iron.

V. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. A good book 【A】 does not turn its back 【B】 upon us in time 【C】 of adversity or distress 【D】.
2. There are only two qualities 【A】 in the world: efficiency and inefficiency; and only two sorts 【B】 of peoples 【C】: the efficient 【D】 and inefficient.
3. There are two tragedies 【A】 in life 【B】. One is not to get your heart desire 【C】. The other is to get it 【D】.
4. If you can save just one hour a day, you'll not only conserve thousands 【A】 of dollars 【B】 worth of time each year but also give yourself opportunities 【C】 to learn and do things 【D】 that make your time even more valuable.
5. Two-thirds 【A】 of the respondent 【B】 say they've had clear goals 【C】 for their lives and careers 【D】.
6. Swelled heads 【A】 are so preoccupied with the few things 【B】 they know that there are no rooms 【C】 left for the innumerable things 【D】.



they don't know.

7. Leave the excess baggages 【A】 of yesterday's mistakes 【B】 and dare to enter tomorrow. Leave yesterday to history 【C】 and resolve to begin fresh each day, daring to make dreams become a reality 【D】.

8. When I was at my wits end 【A】, I thought about the wonderful day with Jenny at the zoo 【B】, I recalled how she laughed at the chimps 【C】. Soon my head was filled with pleasant emotions 【D】, and I fell asleep.

9. Man's 【A】 inhumanity 【B】 to man 【C】 makes countless thousand 【D】 mourn.

#### VI. 使用名词的所有格，将下列句子翻译成英文。

1. 爱就是对爱的回报。
2. 母亲的心是孩子的课堂。
3. 粗鲁是弱者对强势的模仿。
4. 不要让你的昨天阻碍明天的成就。
5. 一个人的智慧是快乐的源泉。
6. 午夜前一小时的睡眠抵得上午夜后三小时的。
7. 勇士的目光比懦夫的剑更锋利。
8. 无知者翘若雄鹰，眼似猫头鹰。
9. 当生活的道路陡峭时，要保持沉着。
10. 不可能与可能之间的区别在于一个人的决心。

#### VII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. Things of \_\_\_\_\_ come together, so do people of \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a kind; the mind    B. the kind; the mind  
C. a kind; a mind    D. the kind; a mind
2. No country can afford to neglect \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. an education    B. educations    C. education    D. the education
3. The study of \_\_\_\_\_ can be very interesting.  
A. history    B. histories    C. a history    D. the history
4. One of the seven deadly sins according to Mahatma Gandhi is \_\_\_\_\_ without principle.  
A. politic    B. politics    C. political    D. politicals
5. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a fresh start    B. having a fresh start  
C. to have a fresh start    D. would have a fresh start
6. A moment's patience is \_\_\_\_\_ comfort.  
A. ten-years    B. ten years    C. ten-year's    D. ten years'
7. \_\_\_\_\_ can get a better view of the game than the participants.  
A. Looker-on    B. Lookers-on    C. Looker-ons    D. Lookers-ons
8. Children should make \_\_\_\_\_ for old people on a bus.  
A. room    B. a room    C. rooms    D. the rooms
9. "No young man believes he shall ever die." It was \_\_\_\_\_, and a fine one.  
A. a saying of my brother    B. my brother's a saying  
C. a saying of my brother's    D. a my brother's saying
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is a well-informed man. He can tell you anything you want to know.  
A. This John's old friend    B. This old friend of John  
C. That's John's old friend    D. This old friend of John's
11. Give a lie \_\_\_\_\_, and you can never overtake it.  
A. twenty-four hour start    B. twenty-four hour's start  
C. twenty-four hours start    D. twenty-four hours' start
12. Nowadays, \_\_\_\_\_ of English is very important to a person.  
A. good knowledge    B. a good knowledge  
C. the good knowledge    D. good knowledge
13. That couple has endured many emotional and financial \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. crisis    B. crises    C. crises    D. criseses
14. After black clouds comes \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. clear weather    B. a clear weather  
C. clear weathers    D. the clear weathers

15. Freedom is only good as a\_\_\_\_\_; it is no end in itself.  
A. mean      B. means   C. meaning      D. meanings

## 第3章 冠词

冠词用在名词之前，表示名词所指的事物是否确定。冠词分为两类：不定冠词(a或an)和定冠词(the)。

### 3.1 不定冠词

#### 3.1.1 不定冠词的用法

a 表示数量“一”的概念，相当于one，但用不定冠词并不强调数量。

A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.

一鸟在手胜过二鸟在林。

A fall in the pit, a gain in the wit.

吃一堑，长一智。

Rome was not built in a day.

罗马不是一天建成的。

b 用于泛指，表示同类事物中的任何一个，相当于any。

A great man is always willing to be little.

伟大的人物总是愿意做小人物。

An optimist sees the rose; a pessimist sees the thorn.

乐观主义者看到的是玫瑰，悲观主义者看到的是荆棘。

A faithful friend is the medicine of life.

忠实的朋友是人生的良药。

c 表示“每一个”，相当于every。

An apple a day keeps the doctor away.

每天一苹果，医生远离我。

d 表示“同一个”，相当于the same。

Heroes are likely to be of a mind.

英雄所见略同。

Birds of a feather flock together.

鸟以群分，物以类聚。

e 用于专有名词前，表示某一个，相当于a certain。

a Mr. Henry

某一位亨利先生

#### 3.1.2 a和an的区别

a后面接以辅音发音开始的词(可以是名词，也可以是其他词性)，而an后面接以元音发音开始的词。

A problem is *a* chance for you to do your best.

问题是竭尽全力的机会。

Sow *a* thought, reap *an* action; sow *an* action, reap *a* habit.

播种一个思想，收获一种行动；播种一个行动，收获一种习惯。

Life without challenges is *an* illusion.

没有挑战的生活是一种幻想。

Life is *an* exciting business.

人生是令人激动的事情。

有些词拼写虽然以元音开头，但发音以辅音开头，仍用a。这类词包括：

Europe 欧洲 European 欧洲人；欧洲的

eulogy 颂扬文章 ewe 母羊 university 大学

unit 单位 union 工会；联盟 universe 宇宙

universal 普遍的 useful 有用的 useless 无用的

usual 通常的 unique 独特的 one 一个

有些词的拼写虽然以辅音开头，但发音以元音开头，仍用an。这类词包括：

hour 小时 honest 诚实的 honor 荣誉

honorable 体面的 heir 继承人 heiress 女继承人

heirloom 传家宝

### 3.1.3 带不定冠词的习语

a certain 某个 a few 几个

a little 一些 a lot 大量

a trifle 稍微 many a 许多

a good (或great) deal 大量(指不可数名词)

a good (或great) many 许多(指可数名词)

a number of 一些 a variety of 各种各样的

a wealth of 大量的 as a whole 总的来说

as a rule 通常 as a result 因此

at a loss 不知所措 at a distance 有相当距离

at a stretch 一口气地 at a time 每次

at a guess 凭猜测 in a sense 在某种意义上

in a way 在某种程度上 in a hurry 匆忙地

in a word 简而言之 in a row 接连不断

make a difference 起重要作用 on an average 平均来说  
on a diet 节食 a great amount of 大量的  
make a point of 重视 once in a while 偶尔  
once upon a time 从前 take a fancy to 喜欢  
turn a blind eye 视而不见 turn a deaf ear 置之不理  
with a view to 为了 as a matter of fact 事实上

## 3.2 定冠词

定冠词的用法较多。

### 3.2.1 用于特指，表示特定的人或事物

Each man is *the* architect of his own fate.

每个人都是自己命运的建筑师。

Variety is *the* spice of life.

丰富多彩是生活的调味品。

*The* one thing that separates winners from losers is that winners take action.

胜者与败者的区别在于胜者付诸行动。

### 3.2.2 指世界上独一无二的事物

the earth 地球 the moon 月亮 the sun 太阳

the world 世界 the universe 宇宙

There are spots in *the* sun.

太阳也有黑子。

*The* world is his who enjoys it.

世界属于欣赏世界的人。

You are not in charge of *the* universe; you are in charge of yourself.

你不掌管宇宙；你掌管你自己。

### 3.2.3 用于江、河、海、洋的名称之前

the Rhine 莱茵河 the Thames 泰晤士河

the Mississippi 密西西比河 the Nile 尼罗河

the Yangtze River 长江 the Baltic Sea 波罗的海

the Atlantic Ocean 大西洋 the Pacific Ocean 太平洋

the Mediterranean Sea 地中海

### 3.2.4 用于山脉、岛屿、海峡、沙漠名称之前

the Alps 阿尔卑斯山脉 the Rockies 落基山脉  
the Himalayas 喜马拉雅山脉 the British Isles 不列颠群岛  
the Hawaiian Islands 夏威夷群岛 the English Channel 英吉利海峡  
the Strait of Gibraltar 直布罗陀海峡 the Sahara 撒哈拉沙漠

### 3.2.5 用于某些地名、国名之前

the Hague 海牙 the equator 赤道  
the Middle East 中东 the Netherlands 荷兰  
the French Republic 法兰西共和国 the United Kingdom 英国  
the United States 美国

### 3.2.6 用于历史时期、历史事件之前

the Iron Age 铁器时代 the Middle Ages 中世纪  
the Civil War 南北战争 the First World War 第一次世界大战

### 3.2.7 用于政党、团体、组织机构名称之前

the Labor Party 工党 the Democratic Party 民主党  
the Senate 参议院 the House of Representatives 众议院

### 3.2.8 用于形容词、副词的最高级之前

Laughter is *the best* medicine.  
笑是最好的药物。  
*The longest* night will have an end.  
最漫长的黑夜终有尽头。  
*The sweetest* grapes hang the highest.  
最甜的葡萄挂得最高。

### 3.2.9 用于单数可数名词之前，表示一类人或事物

*The slave* fought for his freedom at every chance he got.  
奴隶利用一切机会为自由而斗争。  
*The pen* is mightier than *the sword*.  
笔锋强于刀锋。  
Bed is *the lazy man's* prison.  
床是懒人的监狱。

### 3.2.10 用于表示民族或国籍的形容词之前，表示全体

*The Chinese* use two characters to write the word“crisis”. One character stands for danger; the other for opportunity.

中国人写“危机”这个词用两个汉字。一个汉字代表危险，另一个代表机遇。

### 3.2.11 用于某些形容词、分词之前，表示一类人或事物

Fortune favors *the bold*.

命运垂青于勇者。

*The seeing* see little.

视者所见甚少。

By asking for *the impossible* we obtain *the best possible*.

通过追求不可能我们得到最好的可能。

### 3.2.12 用于序数词之前

*The first* victory is to conquer self.

首要的胜利是征服自我。

*The last* straw breaks the camel's back.

最后一根草，压垮骆驼腰。

### 3.2.13 用于乐器名称之前，表示演奏

In playing *the violin*, choose a tune that entertains your audience.

在弹奏小提琴时，选择的曲调要令听众愉悦。

### 3.2.14 用于姓氏复数之前，表示全家人

Don't keep up with *the Joneses*.

不要与左邻右舍攀比。

### 3.2.15 表示动作所触及的部位

Seize opportunity by *the beard*, for it is bald behind.

抓机会要抓胡子，因为它后面没有头发。

An ox is taken by the horns, and a man by the tongue.

牛因犄角被擒，人因口舌遭殃。

### 3.2.16 用于某些头衔、称呼之前

the Prince of Wales 威尔士亲王

the Duke of Westminster 威斯敏斯特公爵

the Reverend John Smith 约翰·史密斯牧师大人

William the Conqueror 征服者威廉

Alexander the Great 亚历山大大帝

the Lionheart 狮心王（指英王理查一世）



We need not weep like Alexander *the Great* that we have no more worlds to conquer. There is clearly much left to be done.

我们不必像亚历山大大帝那样悲叹不再有世界可以征服。显然我们还大有可为。

### 3.2.17 用于被定语修饰的人名或地名之前

*The young* Thomas Edison pictured himself as an inventor.

年轻的托马斯·爱迪生把自己想象成发明家。

*The great* Edison failed thousands of times before he made the electric light work.

伟大的爱迪生失败了数千次才发明了电灯。

### 3.2.18 用于中国的节日名称之前

the Spring Festival 春节 the Lantern Festival 元宵节

the Dragon Boat Festival 端午节 the Mid-autumn Festival 中秋节

### 3.2.19 用于表示商家、店铺

the bank 银行 the post office 邮局

the cinema 电影院 the theater 剧院

the barber's 理发店 the dentist's 牙医诊所

### 3.2.20 用于报纸、杂志名称

有许多报纸、杂志名称使用定冠词，如：

the Times 《泰晤士报》 the Guardian 《卫报》

the Washington Post 《华盛顿邮报》 the Economist 《经济学家》

the Wall Street Journal 《华尔街日报》

### 3.2.21 用于表示阶级、集团等整体的名词之前

the people 人民 the public 公众

the ruling class 统治阶级 the working class 工人阶级

### 3.2.22 可数名词的单数形式，用作抽象意义时，使用定冠词

pleasant to the eye 赏心悦目 go on the stage 登台当演员

fond of the bottle 嗜酒

### 3.2.23 用于the only, the same表达

*The only* way on earth to multiply happiness is to divide it.

世上唯一成倍增加幸福的方式就是与人分享幸福。

*The same knife cuts bread and fingers.*  
同一把刀，能切面包，也能割破手指。

### 3.2.24 用于the more..., the more表达

*The more a man learns, the more he sees his ignorance.*  
一个人越是学习，就越会看到自己的无知。  
*I'm a great believer in luck, and I find the harder I work, the more I have of it.*  
我笃信运气，我发现工作越努力，我得到的运气就越多。

### 3.2.25 用于一些习惯表达

and the like 诸如此类 in the morning 在上午  
in the afternoon 在下午 in the evening 在晚上  
in the country 在乡下 in the dark 在暗处  
in the distance 在远方 in the beginning 在起初  
in the end 在最后 in the open 在露天  
on the contrary 恰恰相反 by the way 顺便说一下  
take the place of 取代

## 3.3 零冠词

有时，名词之前不加冠词，这种情况称为零冠词现象。零冠词的主要情况包括：

### 3.3.1 疾病

cancer 癌症 influenza 流感  
diabetes 糖尿病 pneumonia 肺炎

### 3.3.2 笼统意义上的一日三餐

breakfast 早饭 lunch 午饭  
supper 晚饭 dinner 正餐

### 3.3.3 一年四季的统称，月份，星期

季节：spring (春天)， summer (夏天)， autumn (秋天)， winter (冬天)， 但the fall (秋天) 除外  
月份：January (一月)， February (二月)， March (三月)， April (四月)等

星期：Monday (周一)，Tuesday (周二)，Wednesday (周三)，Thursday (周四)等

If winter comes, can spring be far behind?

冬天来了，春天还会远吗？

### 3.3.4 抽象意义的名词

watch television 看电视

go to bed (church, class, college, court, hospital, prison, school)

去睡觉 (做礼拜，上课，上大学，出庭，看病，进监狱，上学)

Happiness is a direction, not a place.

幸福是一个方向，不是一个地点。

Progress has little to do with speed, but much to do with direction.

进步和速度关系极小，但和方向密切相关。

### 3.3.5 物质名词

oxygen 氧 gold 金 silver 银

tea 茶 coffee 咖啡 space 太空

nature 自然

Gold will not buy anything.

黄金不能买尽一切。

Nature, to be commanded, must be obeyed.

要驾驭自然，必须服从自然。

### 3.3.6 独一无二的职位名称前，可以省略冠词

author 作者 chairman 主席 director 负责人

head 领导 king 国王 queen 女王

president 总统；总裁 prime minister 首相 secretary 秘书

For Ken Melrose, chairman of the company, faith is a source of courage and a moral compass.

对于肯·梅尔罗斯，该公司董事会主席而言，信念是勇气的源泉和道义的罗盘。

Ed Foreman, president of the company, is a man who enjoys taking action.

该公司的总裁埃德·福尔曼是一个乐于行动的人。

### 3.3.7 名词之前有no，或者有所有格名词

Life is no brief candle to me.

生命对我来说不是短暂燃烧的蜡烛。

No man is an island.

谁也不是一座孤岛。

There is no such thing as a free lunch.

天下没有免费的午餐。

There is no such thing in anyone's life as an unimportant day.

任何人的一生没有哪一天不重要。

There is no authority except facts.

除了事实之外不存在权威。

It's the artist's job to create sunshine when there isn't any.

在没有阳光的时候创造出阳光，这就是艺术家的职责。

### 3.3.8 介词by之后的交通或通讯方式

go by train 乘火车 travel by air 坐飞机旅行

call by phone 打电话 contact by e-mail 通过电子邮件联系

### 3.3.9 表示游戏或者球类运动的名词

play bridge (chess, basketball等)打桥牌 (下象棋, 打篮球等)

### 3.3.10 表示“人类”的名词

man, mankind, humanity, 但the human beings 除外。

Man is not made for defeat.

人不是生来就失败的。

### 3.3.11 西方的节日名称

Christmas 圣诞节 Easter 复活节

St. Valentine's Day 情人节 Thanksgiving Day 感恩节

New Year's Day 新年

### 3.3.12 公园名称

Hyde Park 海德公园 (英国伦敦)

Central Park 中央公园 (美国纽约)

### 3.3.13 以地名开头的大学名称 (但如果地名后置, 则必须用定冠词)

New York University 纽约大学

Louisiana State University 路易斯安那州立大学

对比：

the University of Virginia 弗吉尼亚大学

the University of Pennsylvania 宾西法尼亚大学

### 3.3.14 尊称和姓名一起使用时

Professor Robinson 罗宾逊教授 Lord Kelvin 凯尔文勋爵

Dr. Harry Emerson Fosdick believed that the way we picture ourselves is often the way we turn out.

哈里·埃默森·福斯迪克博士认为，我们想象自己成为什么样的人，结果往往就成为什么样的人。

### 3.3.15 两个名词作为一个整体并列使用时，后者不用冠词

Action is the food and drink which will nourish our success.

行动是培养成功的食粮。

### 3.3.16 在下列句型中，名词不用冠词

Child as (或though, that) he is, he is ambitious. (对比：Though he is a child, he is ambitious.)

尽管他是个孩子，但他很有抱负。

He is the happiest, be he king or peasant, who finds peace in his home.

(对比：He is the happiest, whether he is a king or a peasant, who finds peace in his home.)

不管国王还是农夫，只要家庭和睦，就最幸福。

### 3.3.17 零冠词习语

at hand 在手边 at sea 在海上；茫然

in season 正当时令 take place 发生

at first sight 乍一看；立即 at first thought 乍一想

day after day 日复一日 day by day 逐日地

face to face 面对面 hand in hand 手拉手

from door to door 挨门挨户 year in and year out 年复一年

Don't judge men or things *at first sight*.

不要凭最初印象看人论事。

Elegance and good manners always go *hand in hand*.

优雅和礼貌永远密切相关。

Change and growth *take place* when a person has risked himself.

当一个人敢于冒险的时候，就会出现变化和发展。

## 实践演练

### I. 在下列各句的空白处填入适当的冠词。

1. \_\_\_\_\_useless life is \_\_\_\_\_early death.
2. There is nothing sure under \_\_\_\_\_sun.
3. \_\_\_\_\_same opportunity never knocks twice.
4. Life is just \_\_\_\_\_series of trying to make up your mind.
5. Life for us has become \_\_\_\_\_endless succession of contests.
6. There's only one corner of \_\_\_\_\_universe you can be certain of improving, and that's your own self.
7. Solomon made a book of proverbs, but a book of proverbs never made \_\_\_\_\_Solomon.
8. I will take fate by \_\_\_\_\_throat; it shall not wholly overcome me.
9. Accept change and make \_\_\_\_\_most of it.
10. \_\_\_\_\_inappropriate cannot be beautiful.
11. The firefly gives off its light only when it is on \_\_\_\_\_wing.
12. If a beard were a sign of smartness, the goat would be \_\_\_\_\_Socrates.
13. He that climbs \_\_\_\_\_ladder must begin at \_\_\_\_\_first step.
14. Place \_\_\_\_\_high value on \_\_\_\_\_most precious of life's joys.
15. It's \_\_\_\_\_classic story with \_\_\_\_\_twist: \_\_\_\_\_traveling salesman gets \_\_\_\_\_flat tire on \_\_\_\_\_dark, lonely road and then discovers he has no jack. He sees \_\_\_\_\_light in \_\_\_\_\_farmhouse. As he walks toward it, his mind churns: "Suppose no one comes to \_\_\_\_\_door." "Suppose they don't have \_\_\_\_\_jack." "Suppose \_\_\_\_\_guy won't lend me his jack even if he has one." \_\_\_\_\_harder his mind works, \_\_\_\_\_more agitated he becomes, and when \_\_\_\_\_door opens, he punches \_\_\_\_\_farmer and yells, "Keep your lousy jack!"

### II. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. The 【A】 important thing in life 【B】 is to have great aim 【C】, and the determination 【D】 to attain it.
2. An one-eyed man 【A】 is king 【B】 in the land 【C】 of the blind 【D】.

3. Having a 【A】 positive attitude made all the 【B】 difference in a 【C】 way I perceived the 【D】 future.
4. Laughter 【A】 is sun 【B】 that drives winter 【C】 from the human face 【D】.
5. An only use 【A】 of a knowledge 【B】 of the past 【C】 is to equip us for the present 【D】.
6. The mind 【A】 of a bigot 【B】 is like a pupil 【C】 of an eye 【D】: the more light you pour into it, the more it will contract.
7. Perfection 【A】 is not the aim 【B】; rather, strive for the peace of mind 【C】 that comes from being in the charge 【D】 of yourself.
8. We have the power 【A】 to make this the best generation 【B】 of the mankind 【C】 in the history of the world 【D】.
9. The wine 【A】 of life keeps oozing a drop by a drop 【B】. The leaves 【C】 of life keep falling one by one 【D】.
10. If a man 【A】 is gracious, and courteous to strangers 【B】, it shows he is the citizen 【C】 of the world 【D】.

### III. 在句中适当的位置填入合适的冠词。

1. Love is business of idle but idleness of busy.
2. I never consider ease and joyfulness as purpose of life.
3. Prejudice is opinion without judgment.
4. Self-preservation is first law of nature.
5. Great Wellington left behind him enduring reputation.
6. Life is like ocean: only strong-willed can reach other shore.
7. There is no such thing as small or moderate amount of success.
8. Not many people experience life way they want it to be.
9. Foolish and dead alone never change their opinions.
10. World always makes way for dreamer.

### IV. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. Edison gave all his life to bringing out \_\_\_\_\_secret of \_\_\_\_\_nature.  
A. the; the B. the; / C. /; the D. /; /
2. Don't set \_\_\_\_\_to your house to keep yourself warm.

- A. fire B. a fire C. the fire D. fires
3. That's one small step for \_\_\_\_\_ man, one giant leap for \_\_\_\_\_ mankind.  
A. the; the B. a; the C. a; a D. a; /
4. Many people agree that \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge of English is a must in \_\_\_\_\_ international trade today.  
A. a; / B. the; an C. the; the D. /; the
5. He was taken \_\_\_\_\_. But having succeeded in curing one of the enemy's chief officers of a serious wound, he was discharged.  
A. a prisoner B. the prisoner  
C. prisoner D. prisoners
6. Such books poison the minds of \_\_\_\_\_ young.  
A. a B. the C. this D. that
7. It is the trade of lawyers to question everything, yield nothing, and to talk \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. by hour B. by an hour C. by the hour D. by hours
8. In my eyes, dad knows everything, can do everything, and is \_\_\_\_\_ the world.  
A. in charge of B. in a charge of  
C. in the charge of D. in charges of
9. Don't speak to the man at \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. wheel B. a wheel  
C. the wheel D. wheels
10. Endeavor, as much as you can, to keep \_\_\_\_\_ with people above you.  
A. company B. companies  
C. a company D. the company



## 第4章 代词

代词用于代替名词或相当于名词的成分。代词共有九种，分别为：人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、指示代词、疑问代词、相互代词、关系代词、连接代词和不定代词。

### 4.1 人称代词

人称代词包括第一人称、第二人称和第三人称，每种人称又分主格和宾格。

#### 4.1.1 第一人称

##### a 第一人称的主格

包括I（我）和we（我们），在句中作主语。

*I like the dream of the future better than the history of the past.*

我喜爱未来的梦想胜于过去的历史。

*We have nothing to fear but fear itself.*

除了害怕本身，我们没什么可害怕的。

##### b 第一人称的宾格

包括me（我）和us（我们），在句中作表语和动词或介词的宾语。

*The most harmful enemy I have is me.*

危害最大的敌人是我自己。

*Many of us feel that success only means things like power, wealth, and fame. This is not true.*

我们很多人认为，成功仅仅指的是诸如权力、财富、名气这些东西。这种看法是错误的。

#### 4.1.2 第二人称

##### a 第二人称的主格

即you（你或你们），在句中作主语。

*You never know what you can do till you try.*

去尝试才知道你能做什么。

*You can't have everything in this life.*

你一生中不可能拥有一切。

##### b 第二人称的宾格

和主格的形式一样，也是you，在句中作表语和宾语。

The person with the most influence on your child's development is *you*.  
对你的孩子影响最大的人就是你。

When things worry *you*, analyze the problem and list possible solutions.  
Problems are natural, but don't let them paralyze *you*.

当事情让你担心的时候，要分析问题并且列出可能的解决方法。问题是自然会有，但不要让问题使你束手无策。

### 4.1.3 第三人称

#### a 第三人称的主格

包括he (他), she (她), it (它)和they (他们或它们)，在句中作主语。

*He* that travels far knows much.

广游者，见识多。

*She* that will not venture eggs shall never have chickens.

不愿冒险孵蛋就得不到小鸡。

*It's* a small world after all.

这世界真小。

All things are difficult before *they* are easy.

凡事皆先难后易。

#### b 第三人称的宾格

包括him (他), her (她), it (它)和them (他们或它们)，在句中作表语和宾语。

The future never scared *him*, because he always saw difficulties as opportunities for change and growth.

未来从未让他恐惧过，因为他总是把困难看作改变和发展的机会。

To *her*, success means changing the present situation.

对她而言，成功意味着改变现状。

The worth of a thing is best known by the want of *it*.

缺乏一件东西时才最清楚它的价值。

The angels come to visit us, and we only know *them* when they are gone.

天使来到我们身边，只有当他们走后我们才认识到他们。

## 4.2 物主代词

物主代词分为形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词。

### 4.2.1 形容词性物主代词

包括my (我的), your(你的 ; 你们的), his (他的), her (她的), its (它的), our (我们的), their (他们的)。形容词性物主代词作定语。

Every life is a boat and the ideal is *its* sail.

每个人生都是一只船，理想就是船帆。

*Our* enemy is *our* teacher.

我们的敌人也是我们的老师。

Men are all alike in *their* promises. It is only in *their* deeds that they differ.

人们的许诺是一样的。不同的是他们的行为。

I will remove from *my* vocabulary the words like quit, impossible and hopeless.

我要从自己的词汇中删除放弃、不可能和绝望这样的词语。

You are *your* greatest enemy if you are a coward.

你若是懦夫，你就是自己最大的敌人。

#### 4.2.2 名词性物主代词

包括mine (我的), yours (你的 ; 你们的), his (他的), hers (她的), its (它的), ours (我们的), theirs (他们的)。名词性物主代词在句中可以作主语、宾语、表语，也可以用于双重所有格。

##### a 作主语

You dedicated your life to helping people. *Mine* will follow the same ideals and principles.

为帮助别人你奉献了一生。我的一生将遵循同样的理念和原则。

(mine是my life的省略表达)

My definition of happiness is probably not the same as yours, nor is *yours* exactly the same as that of other people.

我对幸福的定义或许和你的不同，你对幸福的定义和别人的也不完全相同。（yours是your definition of happiness的省略表达）

Our character shapes our approach to life. *His* was one of determination combined with an understanding of others.

我们的性格决定我们对待人生的态度。他是坚定的决心与理解他人相结合的性格。(his是his character的省略表达)

##### b 作宾语

Let others build a cave with their clay. I will build a castle with *mine*.

让别人用泥土建造洞穴吧。我要用自己的泥土构筑城堡。（mine是my clay的省略表达）

Envyng other colleagues' opportunities is a waste of time if you don't grab *yours* when they arrive.

如果不抓住自己的机会，羡慕其他同事的机会则是浪费时间。

(*yours*是*your opportunity*的省略表达)

Settle your own issues before trying to help others with *theirs*.

解决了自己的问题再去帮助别人解决问题。( *theirs*是*their issues*的省略表达)

Others have put up with my weakness so tolerantly that I would be less than fair not to make a reasonable discount for *theirs*.

既然别人如此宽容我的缺点，假如我不适当地宽容他们的缺点，我就不够公平。( *theirs*是*their weaknesses*的省略表达)

### c 作表语

I have foolishly blamed others for my trouble but now I see that the fault was *mine*.

我曾愚蠢地因为自己的困境而责怪他人，但现在我认识到错误是自己造成的。

The original concept for the film was entirely *his*, but teamwork with other people made it a reality.

这部电影完全是他的创意，但和其他人的一起合作使创意得以实现。

Whose idea was it to start this company? It was *hers*; she had the vision and the determination. We provided the marketing skills.

开办这家公司是谁的想法？是她的。她具有眼光和决心。我们提供的是销售技巧。( *hers*是*her idea*的省略表达)

Victory will be *ours*, provided we are strong in defense and bold in attack.

胜利将是我们的，只要我们防守坚固，进攻勇敢。

They tried for many years but success was not *theirs* until they had resolved some basic problems.

他们努力了很多年，但直到他们解决了一些基本问题才取得成功。

### d 用于双重所有格

A friend in word is never a friend of *ours*.

口头上的朋友绝不是我们的朋友。

This desk of *mine* is one at which a man may die, but from which he cannot resign.

我的这张办公桌，人可以在它面前光荣殉职，但不能引咎辞职。

## 4.3 反身代词

包括oneself (一个人自己，也常用来表示反身代词的基本形式), myself (我自己), yourself (你自己), himself (他自己), herself (她自己), itself (它自己), ourselves (我们自己), yourselves (你们自己), themselves (他们自己；她们自己；它们自己)。反身代词在句中可以作宾语、表语、同位语、状语等。

### 4.3.1 反身代词作宾语

To know *oneself* is wisdom; to forget *oneself* is folly.

自知之明是智慧，忘乎所以是愚蠢。

Man can only be free through mastery of *himself*.

只有掌握自己人类才能自由。

Respect *yourself*, or no one else will respect you.

尊重自己，否则别人就不会尊重你。

No matter where you are, happiness should be created and found by *yourself*.

无论你在哪里，幸福都应该由自己创造和寻找。

God helps those who help *themselves*.

自助者，天助之。

### 4.3.2 反身代词作表语

We should be *ourselves*.

我们应保持自己的本色。

The master of your fate is *yourself*.

你命运的主宰就是自己。

### 4.3.3 反身代词作同位语

Life *itself* is happiness.

生命本身就是幸福。

Man *himself* is the crowning wonder of creation.

人类自身就是万物至高无上的奇迹。

### 4.3.4 反身代词作状语，意义为“自己”、“凭自己”

Without walking the long distance *yourself*, you don't know how far it is.

不亲自走长路，不知路途有多远。

### 4.3.5 反身代词和介词构成短语

反身代词经常和介词by, for, in, of搭配，构成固定表达。

a by oneself常表示“自己”、“凭自己”，意义相当于反身代词作状语。

He is only bright that shines *by himself*.

凭借自身的努力做出成绩才是出类拔萃。

You can read philosophy *by yourself* if you want to, but you must share a joke with someone else.

如果你愿意，可以自己读哲学，但笑话必须和他人分享。

b for oneself表示“为自己”或“独自地”。

You have grown up if you can think *for yourself*.

如果能够独立思考，说明你已经长大了。

Each person in his own way can see, hear, touch, taste, and think *for himself*.

每个人都能以自己的方式去看、去听、去触、去尝并独立思考。

c in oneself 表示事物自身的性质。

Few things are impossible *in themselves*.

事情本身很少是不可为的。

Having intimate friends is happiness *in itself*.

拥有亲密的朋友其本身就是幸福。

The mind is its own place, and *in itself* can make a heaven of hell, a hell of heaven.

心灵是自己做主的地方，能把地狱变成天堂，把天堂变成地狱。

d of oneself 表示“自发地”、“自动的”。

Bad habits will abate *of themselves* if they are brought to an accounting every day.

如果每天究诘不良习惯，它们就会自动减轻。

## 4.4 指示代词

包括this (这个), that (那个), these (这些), those (那些), such (这样)和so (这样)。

### 4.4.1 this

a指近处或近时的单数事物。

Bear *this* in mind: Scientific research costs a man his energies of a lifetime.

要记住这一点：科学研究要求一个人付出终生的精力。

b指上文已提到的情况。

If someone asks you for directions, take the time to help him if you can.  
*This* will brighten both his day and yours.

如果有人向你问路，要尽量耐心地帮助他。这样做使你和他都可以过上愉快的一天。

#### 4.4.2 that

a 指远处或远时的单数事物。

Health is more valuable than money; this brings less happiness than *that*.  
健康比金钱更有价值；后者不如前者带来那么多幸福。

b 指上文已提到的情况，同*this*。如果*that*和*this*同时出现，则*that*指前一个事物，*this*指后一个事物。

Put your eggs in one basket, and watch the basket. *That's* how to make money.

把鸡蛋都放在一个篮子里，然后盯住篮子。这就是赚钱的方式。

You have to believe in yourself. *That's* the secret of success.

必须相信自己，这就是成功的秘诀。

c 为避免重复，代替前面出现过的单数名词或不可数名词，并且*that*之后要有修饰语。

Certainly, your influence on your family members is greater than *that* on the strangers you meet.

当然，你对家人的影响比对遇见的陌生人的影响大。（*that*指代your influence）

The darkest hour is *that* before the dawn.

最黑暗的时候是黎明前。（*that*指代the hour）

A person's destiny is closely tied up with *that* of the whole nation.

一个人的命运与整个国家的命运紧密相联。（*that*指代the destiny）

#### 4.4.3 these

指近处或近时的复数事物。

*These* school reports I'm reading are very useful for measuring the students progress over the last semester. Every pupil is capable of improvement.

我正在阅读的这些成绩单对于衡量学生在上学期的进步很有帮助。  
每个学生都能进步。

#### 4.4.4 those

a 指远处或远时的复数事物。

*Those* hills on the horizon were a sign to the travelers that they were reaching the end of their journey.

地平线上的那些山对旅行者而言是到达旅程终点的标志。

*Those* were the days, my friends. We thought they would never end.

那些就是往昔的日子，朋友们。我们原以为它们从未结束。

b 为避免重复，代替前面出现过的复数名词，并且*those*之后要有修饰语。

Our mightiest feelings are always *those* which remain most unspoken.

我们最强烈的情感总是那些最缄默的情感。（*those*指代the feelings）

The things that matter are *those* that can't be bought.

重要的东西是那些无法用金钱买到的东西。

c 用于*those who*这种表达，*who*引导定语从句，修饰*those*，该表达意为“.....的人们”。

*Those* who are diligent are focused on the task at hand.

勤奋的人着眼于手头的工作。

*Those* who go before time can best value their time.

走在时间前面的人最会珍惜时间。

The future belongs to *those* who believe in the beauty of their dreams.

未来属于那些相信美好梦想的人。

#### 4.4.5 such

表示前面提到的人或事物，意为“这样的人”或“这样的事物”。

*Such* is the incredible power of our mental attitude.

这就是我们的态度不可思议的力量。

If a lizard is cut in two, the front half will run forward and the other backward. *Such* is the progress of the person who divides his purpose.

如果蜥蜴被一切为二，其身体会前后分隔。目标不专一的人其进步也是这样。

#### 4.4.6 so

指代上文的词语或表达的意思。

There is nothing either good or bad, but thinking makes it so.

事情本无好坏，思维使然。

To think we are able is about to be so.

认为我们有能力我们就即将有能力。



## 4.5 疑问代词

包括who, whom, whose, what和which，用于引出疑问句。

### 4.5.1 who

表示“谁”，在疑问句中作主语、表语或宾语，但是作宾语时，前面不能有介词。

*Who may win without cost?*

谁能不付代价而取胜呢？

*Who are happy in marriage?*

婚姻中什么人幸福？

### 4.5.2 whom

表示“谁”，在疑问句中作宾语。当前面有介词时，只能使用whom，而不用who。

*With whom are you happiest?*

和谁在一起你最幸福？

*Whom do you think success belongs to?*

你认为成功属于谁呢？

### 4.5.3 whose

表示“谁的”，在疑问句中作定语。

*Whose philosophy do you think is most valuable for living a worthwhile life?*

你认为谁的哲学对于有价值的人生最为重要？

### 4.5.4 what

表示“什么”，在疑问句中作主语、表语、宾语和定语。

*What is this life if, full of care, we have no time to stand and stare?*

假如我们满心忧虑，无暇驻足凝视，那么此生是什么呢？

*What else do you want if you have enough money?*

假如有足够的金钱，你还需要什么呢？

### 4.5.5 which

表示“哪个”，从确定数量的事物中做选择，在疑问句中作主语、表语、宾语和定语。

Which attitude will bring most happiness in life, optimism or cynicism?  
Optimism, without a doubt.

哪种态度能带来人生的最大幸福，是乐观主义还是愤世嫉俗？毫无疑问是乐观主义。

Which of your personal visions are you ready to translate into reality?  
你准备付诸实施哪一个个人梦想？

## 4.6 相互代词

包括each other和one another，两个代词含义相同，皆为“互相”，在当代英语中，用法已没有差别。

We are all images of *each other*, with the same senses, the same hopes and the same blood.

我们都是彼此的形象，拥有同样的感觉，同样的希望，同样的血液。

Three helping *one another* bear the burden of six.

三人互相帮扶可以担负六人的重担。

People respond to *one another* according to their level of influence.

人们根据他们的影响力彼此做出反应。

## 4.7 关系代词

包括who, whom, whose, that, which, as等，用于引导定语从句。具体情况参见《定语从句》一章。

He *who* plays with fire gets burnt.

玩火者自焚。

There are but two roads *that* (或*which*) lead to an important goal and to the doing of great things: strength and perseverance.

只有两条路通往重大目标，使人完成伟业：力量和毅力。

As is known, education involves drawing out the talents of every individual for the benefit of themselves and society in general.

众所周知，教育涉及充分发挥每个人的才能为自己和整个社会服务。

## 4.8 连接代词

疑问代词who, whom, what和which都可以用作连接代词，用来引导名词从句，包括主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句。此外，whoever,

whomever, whatever和whichever有“任何”的意思，也属于连接代词，同样可以引导上述从句。具体情况参见《名词从句》一章。

No man can lose *what* he never had.

从未拥有过的东西无所谓失去。

*Whatever* is worth doing at all is worth doing well.

凡是值得做的事情都值得做好。

## 4.9 不定代词

即那些没有明确指代特定人或事物的代词，包括的词最多，有：one, ones, each, both, either, neither, another, other, others, some, any, many, much, most, all, none, few, little, a few, a little, 以及含有some, every, any或no的词（somebody, someone, something, everybody, everyone, everything, anybody, anyone, anything, nobody, no one, nothing）。

### 4.9.1 one

a 表示“一个人”（特指或泛指）。

*One* who keeps abreast of the times remains young.

和时代并驾齐驱的人永远年轻。

Nothing in the world is difficult for *one* who sets his mind on it.

世上无难事，只怕有心人。

A winner is *one* who responds by being trustworthy both as an individual and as a member of a society.

胜者是一个作为个人和社会的一员均能做出反应，成为一个可以信赖的人。

b 指代上文中的单数事物。

If you do not think about the future, you cannot have *one*.

对未来没有考虑，就不会拥有未来。（*one*指代the future）

Every day should be a happy and productive *one*.

每一天都应该是快乐而富有成果的一天。（*one*指代day）

c 表示与其他人或事物的对照。

There are only two ways to live your life. *One* is as though nothing is a miracle. The other is as though everything is a miracle.

生活的方式只有两种。一种好像什么都不是奇迹。另一种就好像一切都是奇迹。

### 4.9.2 ones

指代上文中的复数人或事物。

When you make new friends, don't forget the old *ones*.

有了新知，勿忘旧交。（*ones*指代friends）

Opportunities are always out there. The question is: Are you recognizing the *ones* for you?

机会总是有的。问题在于：你看到属于自己的机会吗？（*ones*指代opportunities）

#### 4.9.3 each

表示“每个人或事物”。

*Each* has his unique potentials.

每个人都有他的独特潜力。

*Each* has his own vision of what it means to be successful.

每个人对成功都有自己的看法。

#### 4.9.4 both

表示“两者”、“双方”。

If the blind lead the blind, *both* shall fall into the ditch.

盲人领盲人，双双掉沟里。

#### 4.9.5 either

表示两者之中的每一个。

The college program offers both English and French, but my schedule will let me choose *either*, not both.

大学的课程开设英语和法语，但我的时间表只允许我选择一门，而不是两者都选。

#### 4.9.6 neither

表示两者之中每一个都不。

If you run after two hares, you will catch *neither*.

同时追两兔，哪只也抓不到。

The person who is perpetually hesitating between which of two things he or she will do, will do *neither*.

永远在两件事情之间踌躇不决的人哪件事也做不了。

#### 4.9.7 another

a 表示不确定数量中的另一个人或事物。

*Another's* bread costs dear.

吃别人的面包代价高。

A person who walks in *another's* tracks leaves no footprints.

沿着别人的轨迹走路的人留不下足迹。

Perseverance is not a long race; it is many short races one after *another*.

坚持并非一次长跑，而是一次又一次的许多短跑。

b 表示不同的一个。

Saying is one thing and doing is *another*.

说是一回事，做是另一回事。

I must never act like a child who, when he has purchased one thing, regrets that he does not possess *another*.

我绝不能表现得像个孩子，买到一件东西却后悔没有得到另一件。

#### 4.9.8 other

与定冠词一起使用，表示两个中的另一个。

There are two tragedies in life. One is to lose your heart's desire. The *other* is to gain it.

人生有两出悲剧。其一是失去想往的东西，其二是如愿以偿。

#### 4.9.9 others

表示其余的人或事物，另外的人或事物。

Courage is the quality which guarantees all *others*.

勇气是保证其他品质的品质。

We learn from the mistakes of *others*.

我们从别人的错误中学到教训。

#### 4.9.10 some

表示一些人或事物。

*Some* cannot see the forest for the trees.

有些人只见树木，不见森林。

#### 4.9.11 any

表示任何一个（或一些）人或事物。

It's important to have moral standards in life. If you don't have *any*, how can you decide between good and bad behavior?

重要的是生活中具有道德准则。如果没有，你怎么能够区别善恶行为呢？

#### 4.9.12 many

表示许多人或事物，仅用于可数名词。

*Many* talk like philosophers and live like fools.

许多人讲起话来像哲学家，生活得却像傻瓜。

#### 4.9.13 much

表示大量，仅用于指不可数名词。

The years teach *much* that the days never know.

学问积年而成，而每日不自知。

#### 4.9.14 most

表示大多数人或事物。

*Most* are winners in some areas of their lives and losers in others.

大多数人在生活的某些方面是胜者，而在其他方面却是败者。

#### 4.9.15 all

表示所有人或事物。

A past mistake of one serves as a good lesson to *all*.

一人之过，百人之师。

Opportunity, sooner or later, comes to *all* who work and wish.

机会迟早属于努力工作、心怀志向的人。

#### 4.9.16 none

表示一个人或事物也没有。

A friend to all is a friend to *none*.

对所有人都友好的人对哪一个人都不是朋友。

Natural talent, intelligence, a wonderful education—*none* of these guarantees success. Something else is needed.

天赋、智力、良好的教育，所有这些都不能确保成功。还需要别的东西。

#### 4.9.17 few

表示几乎没有人或事物，仅用于指代可数名词。

*Few* are total winners or losers.

很少有人是完全的胜者或完全的败者。

*Few* realize that health actually varies according to the amount of their laughter.

很少有人意识到，健康实际上因笑的数量多少而不同。

#### 4.9.18 little

表示几乎没有，仅用于指代不可数名词。

Without method *little* can be done to any good purpose.

没有方法，什么事也做不好。

United, there is *little* we cannot do in a host of cooperative ventures.

团结一致，我们合作的多项事业将无往而不胜。

#### 4.9.19 a few

表示有几个人或事物，仅用于指代可数名词。

Some words of encouragement will really motivate the nervous students.

Just *a few* will do; no speeches are needed.

几句鼓励的话就能真正激励紧张不安的学生。仅仅几句就可以；不需长篇大论。

#### 4.9.20 a little

表示少量的一些，仅用于指代不可数名词。

*A little* is better than none.

聊胜于无。

*A little* with quiet is the only diet.

安安稳稳地吃一点才是最好的饮食方式。

#### 4.9.21 somebody

表示“某人”。

*Somebody* who dares to experiment is somebody who deserves to win.

敢于尝试的人是应该取胜的人。

#### 4.9.22 someone

表示“某人”。

*Someone* who is sure of himself does not talk all the time.

自信的人不会只顾自己说。

#### 4.9.23 something

表示“某物”或“某事”。

*Something* tells me you have had good news. Perhaps it's the smile on your face.

有什么东西告诉我你有好消息。或许是你脸上的微笑。

#### 4.9.24 everybody

表示“每个人”。

*Everybody* lives for something better to come.

每个人都是为了追求未来更美好的东西而生活。

#### 4.9.25 everyone

表示“每个人”。

*Everyone* has the ability and the right to succeed.

每个人都有能力和权力获取成功。

*Everyone* should have the courage to say that he is ignorant.

每个人都应该有勇气说自己无知。

#### 4.9.26 everything

表示“每件事情”或“每个事物”。

*Everything* must have a beginning.

凡事必有始。

*Everything* comes to those who can persist.

坚持不懈者实现一切。

#### 4.9.27 anybody

表示“任何人”。

*Anybody* who is any good is different from anybody else.

有价值的人有别于其他人。

#### 4.9.28 anyone

表示“任何人”。

Don't let *anyone* steal your dreams.

不要让任何人偷走你的梦想。

*Anyone* who stops learning is old, whether at twenty or eighty.

任何人只要不学习就会变老，不论是二十岁还是八十岁。

#### 4.9.29 anything

表示“任何事情”或“任何事物”。

*Anything* will give up its secrets if you love it enough.

如果你爱到足够深，任何事物都会展露其秘密。

#### 4.9.30 nobody



表示“没有人”。

Everybody's business is *nobody's* business.

三个和尚没水喝。

*Nobody* can let you feel inferior without your consent.

没有你的允许谁也不能让你觉得低人一等。

#### 4.9.31 no one

表示“没有人”。

*No one* can call back yesterday.

没有人能唤回昨天。

*No one* is born ready-taught.

无人生而知之。

*No one* can move your feet forward except you.

除了自己，没有人能让你行动起来。

#### 4.9.32 nothing

表示“没有事情”或“没有事物”。

*Nothing* in this world is impossible to a willing heart.

世上无难事，只怕有心人。

There is *nothing* permanent except change.

只有变化才是永恒的。

Politeness costs *nothing* and gains everything.

礼貌不花一分钱，却能赢得一切。

### 4.10 it的用法

#### 4.10.1 it作人称代词

a 指没有生命的物体

You cannot eat your cake and have *it*.

不能既吃蛋糕又留住它。

What is the most lasting emotion which stimulates us every minute? *It* is career.

每时每刻都激励着我们的最持久情感是什么？是事业。

b 指动植物

You can lead a horse to water, but you cannot make *it* drink.

引马河边易，逼马饮水难。

c 在性别不详时指人；指婴儿

Every human being must be viewed according to what *it* is good for.  
必须根据其优点看待每个人。

#### 4.10.2 *it*作无人称代词

a 指自然现象，包括天气、气候、季节等

*It* never rains but *it* pours.  
不雨则已，雨则倾盆。

b 指时间

*It* is the darkest hour before the dawn.  
黎明前是最黑暗的时候。

c 指距离

*It* is a long distance between saying and doing.  
说和做相去甚远。

d 指情况

What good does *it* do a man if he gains the whole world but loses his soul?

一个人如果丧失了灵魂，即使获得了整个世界，对他来说又有何用呢？

If *it* weren't for the fact that every one of us is special, there wouldn't be any point in giving each person a separate name.

要不是因为我们每个人都与众不同，给每个人取不同的名字就没有意义了。

#### 4.10.3 *it*作先行代词

a 充当句子的形式主语

指代不定式

*It* takes two to make marriage a success and only one a failure.  
婚姻的成功需要两个人，而婚姻的失败只需要一个人。

*It* is important to experience painful situations and learn from them.  
重要的是，有过痛苦的经历之后从中学到东西。

*It* is good for one to have self-knowledge.  
人贵有自知之明。

指代动名词

*It* is no use crying over spilt milk.  
牛奶已洒，哭也无用。

*It* is no use pumping a dry well.  
枯井打水，徒劳无益。

### 指代从句

*It is true that one must not live in the past.*

的确，一个人绝不能生活在过去。

*It doesn't matter how a man dies, but how he lives.*

一个人怎样死无关紧要，重要的是他如何生活。

*It is said that wars are won in the general's tent.*

可以说，战争的胜利是在将军的营帐里取得的。

### b 充当句子的形式宾语

#### 指代不定式

People often find *it* hard to define success.

人们往往觉得难以界定成功。

A good attitude makes *it* possible for you to be successful.

良好的态度使你能够成功。

### 指代从句

Write *it* on your heart that every day is the best day of the year.

请铭刻在心：每天都是一年之中最美好的日子。

### c 用于强调句型

*It is* the first step that is troublesome.

万事开头难。

*It is* love that makes the world go round.

使世界运行不息的是爱。

*It is* often the little details that make a difference.

发挥重要作用的往往是细微之处。

### 4.10.4 *it*用于习语

作某些动词、介词的宾语，本身词义模糊。如：

beat *it* 滚开 call *it* a day 到此为止

confound *it* 讨厌 foot *it* 步行

hold *it* 停止；慢着 make *it* 成功，做成

rough *it* 过艰苦生活 you name *it* 凡是你能想到的，说好了

Never give up, even when people tell you that you can never *make it*.

绝不要放弃，即使当人们说你不会成功。

## 实践演练

I. 指出下列句中黑体代词所指代的成分。

1. **It** is a man's job to bear misfortune lightly.

2. Confidence is the feeling that makes one believe a man, even when one knows that one would lie in **his** place.
3. Some men see things as **they** are and say, “why?” I dream things that never were and say, “why not?”
4. Time is money, and many people pay their debts with **it**.
5. Time brings everything to those who can wait for **it**.
6. Because friendships enhance our lives, it is important to cultivate **them**.
7. Life is a succession of moments. To live **each one** is to succeed.
8. He that publishes a book runs a very great hazard, since nothing can be more impossible than to compose **one** that may secure the approval of every reader.
9. When something comes from within you, you always try your best to do justice to **it**.
10. The success of some men bewilders those around because **they** never seem to work, or to work for any length of time.

## II. 改正下列各句中的黑体代词。

1. No ruins are so irreparable as **that** of reputation.
2. Love is a naked child: do you think **this** has pockets for money?
3. The feeling of friendship is like **one** of being comfortably filled with roast beef.
4. A people that values its privileges above its principles soon loses **either**.
5. Failure can be a hat or a pair of shoes; the weak wear it on the head and the strong trample on **it**.
6. A good song is **nothing** the worse for being sung twice.
7. In the dictionary of youth there is no **this** word as failure.
8. Our greatest misfortunes come to us from **ourself**.
9. The ox is never weary of carrying **itself's** (WT) horns.
10. Time is life and when the idle man kills time, he kills **him**.

## III. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. When drinking from a 【A】 well, one 【B】 mustn't forget these 【C】 who dug it 【D】.
2. Man's feet are his 【A】 destiny: it 【B】 lead him 【C】 to where he is 【D】 wanted.

3. Confidence is delight—delight in living, in being who 【A】 you are, in what 【B】 you do, in growing, in the endless and sometimes exasperating adventure of which 【C】 it 【D】 means to be human.
4. We do not know which 【A】 to do with this 【B】 short life, yet we want another 【C】 which 【D】 will be eternal.
5. In our 【A】 highly geared, modern industrial society there is no such 【B】 thing as private health—all health 【C】 is public. The illness and maladjustments of one unit of the mass affects all others 【D】 members.
6. All 【A】 men, no matter who 【B】 they are or how much 【C】 they know, can tell one other 【D】 something.
7. Continue to renew you 【A】 and remember that 【B】 life has a way of constantly testing your 【C】 ability and courage to deal with it 【D】.
8. One way to increase your 【A】 store of common sense is to observe it 【B】 in others 【C】, learning from theirs 【D】—and your own—mistakes.
9. Discard the old maxim, “Do not get others to do what 【A】 you can do yourself 【B】.” My motto is, do not do it 【C】 which 【D】 others can do as well.
10. In life, nothing 【A】 bears fruit except by labor of mind or body. To strive and still strive —such 【B】 is life; and in this 【C】 respect me 【D】 is fulfilled.

#### IV. 在空格处填入所给汉语代词的英文形式。

- \_\_\_\_\_ (我) trudge for the sake of seeking hope.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (他) that travels far knows much.
- I love wisdom more than \_\_\_\_\_ (她) loves me.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (你) are much more likely to get rich from hard work than from a lucky win.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (它) is a silly fish that is caught twice with the same bait.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (他们) never taste who always drink.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (我们) take no note of time but from its loss.

V. 将括号中提供的代词变为反身代词，并填入空格。

1. The sick soul must cure \_\_\_\_\_(it).
2. Time is life and when the idle man kills time, he kills \_\_\_\_\_(him).
3. We are never deceived. We deceive \_\_\_\_\_(us).
4. If you cannot find peace within \_\_\_\_\_(you), you will never find it anywhere else.
5. That government is best which governs the least, because its people discipline \_\_\_\_\_(they).
6. If a girl doesn't think much of \_\_\_\_\_(she), I don't think much of her either.

VI. 将括号中提供的代词变为恰当的形式填入每句空白处。

1. Nothing is given to \_\_\_\_\_(we) in this life without much labor.
2. Hate less, love more, and all good things are \_\_\_\_\_(you).
3. Cowards call \_\_\_\_\_(they) cautious and misers thrifty.
4. Content is the philosopher's stone that turns all \_\_\_\_\_(it) touches into gold.
5. It costs more to revenge injuries than to bear \_\_\_\_\_(they).
6. Time undermines \_\_\_\_\_(we).
7. Regard the sorrows and sufferings of others as \_\_\_\_\_(your) and hasten to assuage them.
8. Realize your weaknesses and work toward improving \_\_\_\_\_ (they).
9. The heart of the family is the mother because life comes from \_\_\_\_\_ (she).
10. She took his hand in \_\_\_\_\_(her) and thanked him for giving her the courage to live.

VII. 在空格处填入所给汉语代词的正确英文形式。

1. Even a frog would bite if \_\_\_\_\_(它) had teeth.
2. A powerful idea communicates some of \_\_\_\_\_(它的) strength to him who challenges it.
3. All men that are ruined are ruined on the side of \_\_\_\_\_(他们的) natural propensities.
4. Every bird loves \_\_\_\_\_(它的) own nest.
5. He gets a double victory who conquers \_\_\_\_\_(他自己).
6. The world is not \_\_\_\_\_(我们的) to command.

7. Without perseverance, \_\_\_\_\_(没有人) can succeed.
8. Enthusiasm finds the opportunities, and energy makes the most of \_\_\_\_\_(它们).
9. If you think \_\_\_\_\_(别人) have weakness, then look within yourself.
10. \_\_\_\_\_(我们的) is a world where people don't know what they want.

### VIII. 在每句空白处填入恰当的代词。

1. Beauty is not \_\_\_\_\_ physical.
2. I can believe \_\_\_\_\_ provided it is incredible.
3. It is better to suffer an injury than to commit \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Life's gifts are precious but we are too heedless of \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The world is \_\_\_\_\_ to enjoy, but not made for our convenience.
6. Make \_\_\_\_\_ a habit to remember your best self, the you that you want to be.
7. Age has \_\_\_\_\_ to do with years. Some men are born old, but some never grow old.
8. No man is rich enough to buy back \_\_\_\_\_ past.
9. A hero is \_\_\_\_\_ but a product of his time.
10. The reason for existing is to achieve \_\_\_\_\_ worthwhile in our lives.
11. Your environment has \_\_\_\_\_ to do with how much you grow.
12. We must see to \_\_\_\_\_ that enthusiasm for the future does not give rise to contempt for the past.
13. Success breeds success, as it gathers a momentum of \_\_\_\_\_ own.
14. We will either find a way, or make \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The deepest feeling always shows \_\_\_\_\_ in silence.

### IX. 将下列含有代词的英文译成汉语。

1. Art is I; science is we.
2. Everything is good for something.
3. Few things are impossible to diligence and skill.
4. He that is full of himself is very empty.
5. There is nothing in words; believe what is before your eyes.

6. The business of everybody is the business of nobody.
7. That which is bitter to endure may be sweet to remember.
8. A wise man never loses anything if he has himself.
9. If you have genius, industry will improve it; if you have none, industry will supply its place.
10. Your children are not your children only. They are the sons and daughters of life's longing for itself.

X. 使用代词it翻译下列句子。

1. 我们应该未雨绸缪。
2. 天上永远不会掉下玫瑰。
3. 给予比接受更幸福。
4. 仅仅一个微笑就会使阴暗的一天变得光明。
5. 光荣牺牲胜于忍辱偷生。
6. 多数时候我们都想当然地认为总是有充裕的时间。
7. 当你改变了自己的思维方式，你就会发现解决一个问题更容易。
8. 每个人都要时不时地放松一下，享受某种形式的消遣，这是很重要的。

XI. 将下列汉语翻译成英文，注意代词的用法。

1. 我们唯一害怕的事物就是害怕本身。
2. 爱能战胜一切。



3. 美德是自身的回报。
4. 你是自己命运的主人；你是自己灵魂的船长。
5. 几乎所有结了婚的人都会吵架，尽管很多人羞于承认此事。
6. 人生到处都是这样的状况：必须忍受的东西很多，可以享受的东西很少。
7. 我们评判自己是感觉自己有能力去做什么，而别人评判我们是看我们已经做了什么。

## XII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. Smiles are magnetic. \_\_\_\_\_draw people together.  
A. It B. That C. These D. They
2. We see books as if they were really alive; we sympathize with them, enjoy with them, grieve with them; their experience becomes\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. us B. our C. ours D. ourselves
3. Success will not come \_\_\_\_\_ to knock at your door.  
A. for itself B. of itself C. in itself D. to itself
4. It should be clear to you where to direct your efforts. \_\_\_\_\_ is to say, so long as you have a perfect knowledge of yourself, there won't be difficulties you can't overcome, nor obstacles you can't surmount.  
A. It B. That C. This D. What
5. As a cousin of \_\_\_\_\_once said about money, money is always there but the pockets change.  
A. I B. me C. mine D. my
6. Love has no\_\_\_\_\_desire but to fulfill itself.  
A. any B. another C. other D. one
7. He was of so just and blameless dealing that all men he ever had to do with magnified his great integrity and honesty, which were questioned by \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. A few B. little C. none D. some
8. You cannot serve two masters; you must serve\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. another or the other B. one another  
C. one or the other D. one or another

9. The timid and hesitating find everything impossible, chiefly because it seems \_\_\_\_\_.

A. it B. so C. that D. this

10. Men of \_\_\_\_\_ words are the best men.

A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

11. We reached the moon and came back, but we find \_\_\_\_\_troublesome to cross our own street and meet our neighbors.

A. it B. that C. this D. what

12. It is one thing to promise and \_\_\_\_\_to perform.

A. another B. one C. others D. the other

13. Keep away from people who try to belittle your ambitions. Small people always do \_\_\_\_\_, but the really great make you feel that you, too, can become great.

A. these B. that C. what D. which

14. \_\_\_\_\_garlic is to salad, insanity is to art.

A. Which B. That C. What D. As

15. \_\_\_\_\_usually happens, the man who has tried a bad doctor is afraid to trust even a good one.

A. As B. That C. This D. Which

16. The greatest of men are always linked to their age by some weakness or \_\_\_\_\_.

A. another B. the other C. others D. other

17. No matter how indifferent the universe may be to our choices and decisions, these choices and decisions are \_\_\_\_\_to make.

A. us B. our C. ours D. ourselves

18. All things come to \_\_\_\_\_who wait.

A. one B. them C. those D. who

19. Everyone's faults are not written on \_\_\_\_\_foreheads.

A. its B. her C. their D. these

20. Books and friends should be \_\_\_\_\_but good.

A. few B. much C. a little D. a few

## 第5章 形容词和副词

形容词是指描述或修饰名词、代词的词。

### 5.1 形容词的语法功能

形容词在句中主要作定语、表语、补语和状语等。

#### 5.1.1 形容词作定语

A warm smile is the *universal* language of kindness.

温馨的笑容是友好的通用语言。

A *clear* conscience is a *soft* pillow.

问心无愧，一枕安眠。

Each moment in history is a *fleeting* time, *precious* and *unique*.

历史的每一时刻都稍纵即逝，弥足宝贵，独具意义。

#### 5.1.2 形容词作表语

A good reputation is *valuable*.

好的名声是宝贵的。

If we command our wealth, we shall be *rich* and *free*.

如果我们能驾驭财富，我们将会富有和自由。

The grapes are not always *ripe*.

葡萄并非总是熟的。

#### 5.1.3 形容词作补语

形容词可以作主语和宾语的补足语。

##### a 作主语补足语

Character must be kept *bright*.

品格须保持光明正大。

Rough roads will be made *plain*.

崎岖的道路将变成坦途。

##### b 作宾语补足语

Knowledge makes one *gentle*, while association makes one *perfect*.

知识使人优雅，而交往使人完善。

The principal thing in this world is to keep one's soul *aloft*.

世上的首要事情就是保持灵魂的高尚。

The person who always considers himself *unhappy* will never be *happy*.  
总是认为自己不幸福的人将永远不会幸福。

#### 5.1.4 形容词作状语

形容词作状语，往往侧重表现的是施动者的状态，而副词作状语则重在表现动词的状态。这是形容词和副词作状语时的最大差异。

If you act *happy*, you will feel happy.

如果行动快乐，就会感觉快乐。

Men are born *equal* but they are also born *different*.

人生而平等，但他们也生而与众不同。

A mother's main wish is to see her children grow up *healthy* and *happy*.

母亲的主要愿望就是看着自己的子女健康、幸福地成长。

No man is born *wise* or *learned*.

人非生而知之。

### 5.2 形容词转化为名词

表示性质的形容词可以和定冠词一起使用，表示一类人或者一类事物。

When the going gets tough, *the tough* get going.

道路艰难，唯勇者行。

Don't be afraid to give up *the good* for *the great*.

不要害怕舍鱼而取熊掌。

The difference between *the impossible* and *the possible* lies in a person's determination.

不可能与可能之间的差异就在于一个人的决心。

Provide for *the worst*, and *the best* will save itself.

做最坏的准备，就会有最好的结果。

*The brave* and *the wise* can both pity and excuse.

勇者和智者都有同情和谅解之心。

形容词作名词的另一种常见形式为：形容词最高级+ of +名词。

The fruit derived from labor is *the sweetest* of all pleasures.

来自劳动的成果是最甜蜜的快乐。

One of the great undiscovered joys of this life comes from doing everything to *the best* of one's ability.

此生未被发现的一个巨大快乐来自竭尽全力做每一件事。

此外，形容词作名词的情况常见于一些成语。如：

in brief 简而言之 in common 共同的

in full 全部地 in general 一般说来；总体上  
in short 总之 in vain 徒劳地  
for certain 肯定地 for sure 肯定地  
for better or for worse 不管怎样 at best 充其量；从最好的一面来看  
at worst 从最坏的一面来看 at least 至少  
at most 至多

*In general, you get out of life what you put into it.*

通常，有多少投入，就会从生活中得到多少回报。

*For better or for worse, you must play your own little instrument in the orchestra of life.*

不管怎样，在人生的管弦乐队中你都必须演奏自己的小小乐器。

Keep on attempting new things. Even if you fail occasionally, you have the satisfaction that *at least* you tried.

要不断尝试新鲜事物。即使你偶尔失败了，你也会感到满足，因为至少你努力过。

For years the tennis player had tried *in vain* to win the championship, but once he really believed in himself success came at last.

多年来这位网球选手努力去获得冠军，没有成功，但是一旦他真正相信了自己，成功就最终来临了。

## 5.3 形容词的比较级和最高级

形容词的比较级是用来比较两个事物的形容词形式；形容词的最高级是用来表示性质、数量、程度等最大或最小的形容词形式。形容词比较级的最基本形式是在词尾加-er；最高级的最基本形式是在词尾加-est。

### 5.3.1 单音节词和少数双音节词，在词尾加-er, -est

rich (富裕的) : richer, richest poor (贫穷的) : poorer, poorest

long (长的) : longer, longest short (短的) : shorter, shortest

high (高的) : higher, highest low (低的) : lower, lowest

如果形容词词尾是e，只加-r, -st。

fine (好的) : finer, finest brave (勇敢的) : braver, bravest

simple (简单的) : simpler, simplest wise (明智的) : wiser, wisest

close (近的) : closer, closest scarce (稀少的) : scarcer, scarcest

如果形容词词尾是辅音+y，变y为i，再加-er, -est。

busy (忙碌的) : busier, busiest happy (幸福的) : happier, happiest

easy (容易的) : easier, easiest early (早的) : earlier, earliest

angry (愤怒的) : angrier, angriest    friendly (友好的) : friendlier, friendliest

也有个别单词直接加-er, -est, 或者变y为i, 再加-er, -est, 两种变法皆可, 如:

shy (害羞的) : shyder, shyest    sly (狡猾的) : slyder, slyest  
或 : shier, shiest    或 : slier, sliest

如果形容词词尾是闭音节, 即元音+辅音, 则双写辅音, 再加-er, -est。

big (大的) : bigger, biggest    fat (胖的) : fatter, fattest

thin (瘦的) : thinner, thinnest    hot (热的) : hotter, hottest

形容词最高级之前常要加定冠词the。

*The finest steel has to go through the hottest fire.*

最精良的钢铁必须经过最炙热火焰的锻造。

*The longest journey of any person is the journey inward.*

最长的旅程是心的旅程。

*The mightiest rivers lose their force when split up into several streams.*

大河巨川被分化为多条溪流时就失去了威力。

### 5.3.2 双音节或多音节形容词, 一般在前面加more, most

active (活跃的) : more active, most active

difficult (困难的) : more difficult, most difficult

successful (成功的) : more successful, most successful

important (重要的) : more important, most important

有些多音节形容词是由双音节形容词加前缀变化而来, 如果原来的双音节形容词的比较级和最高级加-er和-est, 则这些多音节形容词也一样, 如:

uneasy (不安的) : uneasier, uneasiest (变化规则同easy)

unfriendly (不友好的) : unfriendlier, unfriendliest (变化规则同friendly)

unhappy (不幸福的) : unhappier, unhappiest (变化规则同happy)

unlucky (不幸的) : unluckier, unluckiest (变化规则同lucky)

*The most certain way to succeed is to try just one more time.*

取得成功的最确定方法就是再尝试一次。

*The most powerful word in the English language is balance.*

英语中最有力量的单词是“平衡”。

*The most difficult thing in life is to know yourself.*

人生最难是自知。

### 5.3.3 有些双音节形容词既可在词尾加-er, -est, 也可在前面加 more, most

bitter (苦的) : bitterer, bitterest

或 : more bitter, most bitter

clever (聪明的) : cleverer, cleverest

或 : more clever, most clever

common (普通的) : commoner, commonest

或 : more common, most common

handsome (英俊的) : handsomer, handsomest

或 : more handsome, most handsome

hollow (空的) : hollower, hollowest

或 : more hollow, most hollow

pleasant (令人愉快的) : pleasanter, pleasantest

或 : more pleasant, most pleasant

polite (有礼貌的) : politer, politest

或 : more polite, most polite

quiet (安静的) : quieter, quietest

或 : more quiet, most quiet

stable (稳定的) : stabler, stablest

或 : more stable, most stable

The greatest truth is *the commonest* one.

最伟大的真理是最普通的真理。

*The most common* misunderstanding about success is that it is the same as having money.

关于成功最普遍的误解是将成功和拥有金钱相等同。

### 5.3.4 个别形容词有特殊变化形式

good (好的) : better, best well (健康的) : better, best

many (多的) : more, most much (多的) : more, most

little (少的) : less, least bad (坏的) : worse, worst

far (远的) : farther(更远的), farthest (最远的)

或 : further (进一步的), furthest (最大程度的)

old (老的)用于兄弟姐妹之间时, 经常使用elder, eldest代替older, oldest, 如my elder sister (我姐姐), her eldest brother (她大哥)。

Honesty is *the best* policy.

诚实为上策。

Observation is *the best* teacher.

观察是最好的老师。

The greatest talkers are often *the least* doers.

语言的巨人往往是行动的矮子。

### 5.3.5 表示“较不”和“最不”，在形容词前分别加less和least

useful (有用的) : less useful, least useful

strong (强壮的) : less strong, least strong

expensive (昂贵的) : less expensive, least expensive

intelligent (聪明的) : less intelligent, least intelligent

## 5.4 本身带有比较含义的形容词

这类词包括：equal (平等的), equivalent (相等的), inferior (地位较低的；质量较次的), superior (地位较高的；质量较好的), junior (较年轻的；地位较低的；资质较浅的), senior (较年长的；地位较高的；资质较深的), second (次要的), next (次要的), prior (比……早，比……重要), subsequent (比……晚), preferable (比……好)等。在两个事物之间作比较时，这些形容词要使用原形，其后跟介词to。

Knowledge is *equivalent* to power.

知识等于力量。

Cleanliness is *next* to godliness.

清洁仅次于圣洁。

Something inside people is *superior* to circumstances.

内心的东西胜过外部环境。

Be merciful to those who are *inferior* to you.

对不如你的人要仁慈。

Knowing something is *preferable* to not knowing it.

了解情况比不了解情况要好。

## 5.5 形容词的比较句型

### 5.5.1 more...than

表示“比……更”，两个事物作比较，形容词用比较级，后接连词than，引出比较对象。

Virtue is *fairer than* beauty.

美德胜于美貌。



Wisdom is *more precious than* wealth.

智慧比财富更宝贵。

Blood is *thicker than* water.

血浓于水。

A good name is *more desirable than* great riches.

好名声比巨大的财富更可取。

Kindness and gentleness are often *more effective than* force.

友善、温和往往比武力更有效。

Smiling wins *more friends than* frowning.

微笑比皱眉赢得更多朋友。

### 5.5.2 形容词比较级之前可以加表示程度的词语，如much, far, a lot等

You can be *a lot happier* than you have expected.

你可以远比自己所期望的更幸福。

It is *much more difficult* to judge oneself than to judge others.

判断自己比判断别人要难得多。

There are risks and costs to a program of action, but they are *far less* than the long-range risks and costs of comfortable inaction.

行动计划伴有风险和代价，但是和安于现状、无动于衷所带来的长期风险和代价相比，就小得多了。

### 5.5.3 Nothing...more than

表示“没有什么比.....更”，形式上是比较句型，实际表达的是最高级意义。

*Nothing is more terrible than* ignorance in action.

最可怕的事情莫过于无知而行动。

*Nothing is more precious than* independence and freedom.

没有什么比独立和自由更宝贵的了。

*Nothing is a greater misfortune than* not being able to bear misfortune.

经不起不幸是最大的不幸。

### 5.5.4 no more...than

表示“和.....一样不”，是同级否定表达。

A home without love is *no more* a home *than* a body without a soul is a man.

没有爱情的家庭不能成为家庭，就像没有灵魂的躯体不能成为人一样。

A fool can *no more* see his own folly *than* he can see his ears.

蠢人不能自知其蠢，就像不能自见其耳一样。

We have *no more* right to consume happiness without producing it *than* to consume wealth without producing it.

我们无权只享受幸福而不创造幸福，正如我们无权只享受财富而不创造财富一样。

#### 5.5.5 The more... , the more...

两个分句开头分别是定冠词+形容词比较级，表示“越.....，就越.....”。

*The more* you learn from the past, *the fewer* regrets you have.

越是向过去学习，悔恨就越少。

*The greater* your ability to understand, *the better* listener you will become.

你的理解能力越强，就越善于倾听。

*The happier* you are about yourself and your life, *the healthier* you will be.

对自己和生活越满意，就越健康。

#### 5.5.6 as...as

这是同级比较句型，表示“和.....一样”。形容词置于两个as 之间，要求用原形。

Defeat is *as* instructive *as* victory.

失败和胜利一样有教育意义。

A man can be *as* great *as* he wants to be.

一个人可以变得和自己希望的那么伟大。

该句型的否定形式为not as...as 或not so...as, 表示“不如.....”。

What happens is *not as* important *as* how you react to what happens.

发生的事情不如你对此采取的反应重要。

Any fact facing us is *not as* important *as* our attitude toward it, for that determines our success or failure.

摆在我们面前的任何事实都不如我们对待它的态度重要，因为态度决定我们的成败。

关于同级比较，英语中有许多习语表达，如：

as black as coal 漆黑一团 as blind as a bat 视力极差

as brave as a lion 勇如雄狮 as busy as a bee 非常忙碌  
 as clear as crystal 晶莹剔透 as cool as cucumber 非常镇静  
 as cunning as a fox 非常狡猾 as dry as dust 枯燥无味  
 as fair as a rose 非常美丽 as firm as a rock 坚如磐石  
 as fit as a fiddle 非常健康 as healthy as a horse 非常健康  
 as like as two peas 一模一样 as merry as a lark 兴高采烈  
 as mild (或gentle) as a dove 非常温和 as poor as a church mouse 一贫如洗  
 as proud as a peacock 非常高傲 as quick as lightning 一闪而过  
 as regular as clockwork 极有规律 as sick as a dog 病得厉害  
 as slippery as an eel 非常狡猾 as wise as an owl 非常聪明  
 My mother was *gentle as a dove* and *brave as a lioness*.  
 我的母亲温柔得像一只鸽子，勇敢得像一头母狮。（第一个as经常省略）  
 He had very bad news last night, but he came to the office *as cool as cucumber* this morning as if nothing had happened.  
 昨晚他听到一个很坏的消息，但今天早晨他来上班时却镇定自若，就好像什么也没有发生过。

## 5.6 形容词的位置

### 5.6.1 当形容词修饰不定代词和those时，只能放在代词的后面

Learning is the light that leads into everything *lovely*.

学习是通往各种美好事物的导航灯。

Integrity is the essence of everything *successful*.

诚实是所有成功事物的本质。

Nothing *good* comes from violence.

美好的东西不会来自暴力。

If you want a different result, do something *different*.

如果你希望一个与众不同的结果，就要采取与众不同的行动。

### 5.6.2 当两个或两个以上形容词同时修饰一个名词时，须遵循特定的规则

形容词的排列顺序为：数量+性质+大小+形状+新旧+颜色+来源+材料+用途+名词。

a Chinese writing desk 一张中国制造的写字台

an old wooden house 一栋老木屋

her charming small round pink face 她迷人的小而圆的粉红脸蛋

Whether we live to a *ripe old* age or must leave this life too soon, our time on Earth is short .

不论我们命高寿长，还是英年早逝，我们在地球上的时间都是短暂的。

It was the policy of the *good old* gentleman to make his children feel that home was the happiest place in the world.

这位有见识的老绅士的做法是，让子女感到家是世界上最幸福的地方。

副词是指专门用来修饰动词、形容词、其他副词，或者对句子起描述作用的词。

## 5.7 副词的种类

副词主要包括九种：时间副词、地点副词、频率副词、方式副词、程度副词、疑问副词、连接副词、关系副词和句子副词。

### 5.7.1 时间副词

时间副词是指表示时间的副词，包括：

now 现在 then 当时；然后

early 早 ever 从来

late 晚 before 以前

ago 以前（仅用于被修饰词之后） yet 已经（用于疑问句和否定句）

later 后来 already 已经(用于肯定句)

first 首先 finally 最后

ultimately 最后 recently 近来

lately 近来 long 长久

soon 不久 currently 当前

immediately 立即 since 自从那时以来

instantly 立即 presently 不久

suddenly 突然 eventually 最后

permanently 永久地 eternally 永久地

If you continue taking steps, *eventually* you will reach your destination.

如果你继续行程，最终会到达终点。

Failure just means you haven't succeeded yet.

失败只不过意味着你还没有成功。

Ultimately, it's our decisions, not the conditions of our lives, that determine our destiny.

最终，决定命运的是我们的决定，而不是生活状况。

Deeds of kindness are *quickly* forgotten but deeds of mischief are long remembered.

人们对善举易于遗忘，而对恶行则长记于心。

### 5.7.2 地点副词

地点副词是指表示地点或方向的副词，包括：

here 这里 there 那里

home 去家，在家 abroad 去国外；在国外

inside 在里面 outside 在外面

around 周围 round 周围

about 周围 near 在附近

nearby 在附近 away 远离

above 在上面 over 在上面

up 向上 below 在下面

down 向下 upstairs 在楼上；往楼上

downstairs 在楼下；往楼下 widely 广泛地

anywhere 在任何地方 everywhere 在每个地方

somewhere 在某个地方 elsewhere 在别的地方

nowhere 在任何地方都不

I am a slow walker, but I never walk *backwards*.

我走得很慢，但我从不后退。

We can find happiness *everywhere*.

到处都能找到幸福。

If you are successful, remember that *somewhere* someone gave you a lift.

假如你成功了，记住在某个地方有人曾给予你鼓励。

If your life has sown a trifling kindness *here and there*, your happy harvest will be wide.

假如生活中处处播下微薄的善意，幸福的收获将是广大的。

### 5.7.3 频率副词

频率副词是指表示频率的副词，包括：

often 经常 always 总是  
usually 通常 never 从来不  
seldom 很少 rarely 很少  
normally 通常 sometimes 有时  
regularly 经常地 continually 不停地  
occasionally 偶尔 constantly 不断地  
frequently 频繁地 repeatedly 反复地  
daily 每天地 weekly 每周地  
monthly 每月地 yearly 每年地

We are what we *repeatedly* do.

反复地做一件事可以成就我们。

Cooperation is the key to success with others, and I practice it *daily*.

合作是和他人一起成功的关键，我每天都在训练合作精神。

Appearances *often* are deceiving.

外表往往具有欺骗性。

One cannot *always* be a hero, but one can *always* be a man.

一个人不可能总是英雄，但可以一直做堂堂正正的人。

A modest man *frequently* ponders over his mistakes.

谦虚者常思己过。

#### 5.7.4 方式副词

方式副词是表示方式的副词，包括：

well 很好地 carefully 小心地  
patiently 耐心地 happily 幸福地  
calmly 平静地 nervously 紧张地  
seriously 认真地 casually 随意地  
easily 容易地 successfully 成功地  
hopefully 满怀希望地 sincerely 真诚地  
properly 恰当地 bravely 勇敢地  
quickly 快速地 slowly 缓慢地  
correctly 正确地 reasonably 合理地  
quietly 静静地 noisily 吵闹地  
firmly 坚定地 freely 自由地  
honestly 诚实地 diligently 勤奋地  
efficiently 效率高地 effectively 有效地  
willingly 愿意地 readily 愿意地  
smoothly 顺利地 faithfully 忠实地

positively 积极地 negatively 消极地  
actively 主动地 optimistically 乐观地  
pessimistically 悲观地 mistakenly 错误地  
hesitantly 犹豫不决地 deliberately 故意地  
perfectly 完美地 politely 有礼貌地  
kindly 客气地 openly 公开地  
privately 私下地

Don't *mistakenly* think that the whole world revolves around us.  
不要错误地认为整个世界围绕我们旋转。

We often get the results we *unknowingly* believe we deserve.  
我们往往得到我们不知不觉中认为自己应该得到的结果。

Life is *thickly* sown with thorns, and I know no other remedy than to  
pass *quickly* through them.

人生荆棘密布，我知道只有迅速穿过，此外，别无他法。

Admonish your friends *privately*, but praise them *openly*.  
对待朋友，要私下劝诫，公开夸奖。

### 5.7.5 程度副词

程度副词是指表示程度的副词，包括：

not 不 little 几乎不；一点儿也不

much 非常 far 远；很

very 很 too 太

enough 足够 adequately 足够地

sufficiently 足够地 only 仅仅

just 仅仅 merely 仅仅

quite 很 fairly 相当

rather 很 nearly 几乎

almost 几乎 virtually 几乎

hardly 几乎不 barely 几乎不

scarcely 几乎不 pretty 相当

simply 完全 altogether 完全

fully 完全 entirely 完全

totally 完全 thoroughly 完全

completely 完全 utterly 完全

absolutely 完全 purely 完全

slightly 轻微地 somewhat 有点

largely 主要地 mainly 主要地

chiefly 主要地 greatly 大大地  
really 真正地 truly 真正地  
indeed 真正地 highly 高度地  
extremely 极其 exceedingly 非常  
excessively 过度 deeply 深深地  
terribly 厉害地；非常 possibly 可能地  
certainly 当然 strictly 严格说来  
precisely 确切地 exactly 确切地

Bad gains are *truly* losses.

不义之财是真正的损失。

If our wealth commands us, we are poor *indeed*.

假如财富支配了我们，我们就真正一贫如洗了。

It is impossible to enjoy idling *thoroughly*.

完全无所事事是不可能的。

Miracles sometimes occur, but one has to work *terribly* for them.

奇迹有时会出现，但必须为之拼命努力。

Age is *strictly* a case of mind over matter. If you don't mind, it doesn't matter.

严格说来，年龄是精神高于物质的情况。如果不介意，就没问题。

Those who deny freedom to others *hardly* deserve it for themselves.

不给他人自由的人自己也几乎不配得到自由。

Idleness is *only* the refuge of weak minds.

懒惰只是意志薄弱者的避难所。

A great leader is *extremely* well-prepared when an incredible event occurs.

伟大的领导者在不可思议的事情发生时做好了充分的准备。

### 5.7.6 疑问副词

疑问副词是用于引起问句的副词，包括how, why, when, where等。

*How* can you find a new chance if you don't try?

不尝试怎么可以找到新的机会呢？

As man increases his knowledge of the heavens, *why* should he fear the unknown on earth?

随着人类对宇宙知识的不断增长，为什么对地球上的未知事物恐慌呢？

*When* can you use anger as a tool?

什么时候你可以把怒火作为工具加以利用呢？



Your progress toward success begins with a fundamental question:  
*where* are you going?

走向成功的进程开始于一个基本问题：你要去哪里？

### 5.7.7 连接副词

连接副词是指用来引导名词从句的副词，包括*how*, *when*, *where*, *why*等。

Life is 90 percent *how* I react to it.

生活百分之九十是我对生活做出的反应。

The most relaxed moment is *when* you take a rest after work.

最放松的时刻是当你在工作之后休息时。

Home is *where* all the love starts.

家是一切的爱开始的地方。

One may go wrong in many different ways, but right only in one, which is *why* it is easy to fail and difficult to succeed.

一个人走错路的方式有许多，但走对路的方式却只有一个，这就是为什么失败容易成功难的原因。

### 5.7.8 关系副词

关系副词是指用来引导定语从句的副词，包括*when*, *where*, *why*等。

There are times *when* silence has the loudest voice.

有时，沉默是最有力的声音。

Any relationship *where* you put yourself first won't last.

任何将自己摆在第一位的关系都不会长久。

The reason *why* most major goals are achieved is that first things are done first.

大多数重要目标得以实现的原因是首要的事情优先去做。

### 5.7.9 句子副词

句子副词有两种，一种用于承接上文，表明前后两句话的关系；另一种用于介绍下文，表示对下文的描述。

a 用于承接上文的句子副词，包括：

therefore 因此 hence 因此 thereby 因此

thus 因此 consequently 因此 however 然而

nevertheless 然而 otherwise 否则 likewise 同样地

similarly 同样地 besides 而且 moreover 而且

meanwhile 同时 meantime 同时 especially 尤其

You cannot do what you hope to; *therefore*, you should do what you can.  
你不能做自己希望做的事情；因此，你应该做自己能做的事情。

Luck is a wonderful thing. *However*, by its very nature, it comes with no guarantee.

运气是美妙的。但是，本质上来讲，运气是没有保障的。

For things to change you've got to change. *Otherwise*, nothing much will change.

要让情况发生改变，你自己必须做出改变。否则，就不会发生太大变化。

Nobody is born to be among the nobility; *hence*, one should make unceasing efforts to improve oneself.

没有人生来就精神崇高；因此，应不断努力提高自己。

b 用于介绍下文的句子副词，包括：

obviously 显然 apparently 显然 clearly 显然

frankly 坦率地说 honestly 说实在的 strangely 奇怪的是

personally 就个人而言 fortunately 幸运的是 luckily 幸运的是

unfortunately 不幸的是 unluckily 不幸的是 naturally 自然地

hopefully 但愿 interestingly 有趣的是 admittedly 诚然

essentially 实质上 generally 一般而言 sadly 遗憾的是

actually 实际上 surprisingly 令人惊讶的是

ironically 具有讽刺意味的是

*Actually*, there are four kinds of personal energy: mental, emotional, spiritual and physical.

实际上，存在着四种个人力量：脑力、情感力量、精神力量和体力。

*Sadly*, the attitude of many people in business has been to grind every last cent out of every situation.

遗憾的是，许多经商务士的态度是从每次机会中榨取最后一分钱。

*Clearly*, personal initiative is a demanding quality.

显然，个人的首创精神是一种高标准的素质。

## 5.8 副词的语法功能

副词在句中可以作状语、表语、定语、补语等。

### 5.8.1 副词作状语

副词作状语时，可以修饰动词、形容词、另一个副词、介词短语或句子。

a 修饰动词

Still water runs *deep*.

静水流深。

The biggest trust between people is to face each other *sincerely* and *honestly*.

人与人之间的最大信任就是真心相待，开诚布公。

Positive thinking is reacting *positively* to a negative situation.

积极的思维就是对消极的情况积极地做出反应。

b 修饰形容词

We should have *clearly* defined goals.

我们应具有明确界定的目标。

Smokers and non-smokers cannot be *equally* free in the same railway carriage.

吸烟者和不吸烟者在同一车厢内不可能一样自由。

*Truly* successful people pursue first what they need.

真正成功的人首先追求他们需要的东西。

c 修饰另一个副词

Excellence is doing ordinary things *extraordinarily* well.

卓越就是把普通的事情做得出众地好。

If you stay out of balance long *enough*, you'll always run into trouble.

如果你长时间失衡，你总会遇到麻烦。

d 修饰介词短语

I will struggle against the rainstorm, and will not hesitate *even* in a broken ship.

我将对抗风暴，即使身处破船也不会犹豫。

The horizon of life is broadened *chiefly* by the enlargement of the heart.

人生的地平线主要因心灵的开阔而变得宽广。

e 修饰句子

The reasonable man adapts himself to the world; the unreasonable man persists in trying to adapt the world to himself. *Therefore*, all progress depends on the unreasonable man.

通情达理的人使自己适应世界；不可理喻的人坚持让世界适应自己。因此，一切进步都取决于不可理喻的人。

*Chiefly* the mould of a man's fortune is in his own hands.

一个人的命运主要掌握在他自己的手里。

## 5.8.2 副词作表语

I'm not *here* just to make a living; I'm *here* to make a difference.  
我来到这里并非仅仅为了谋生；我来到这里是为了发挥作用。  
Positive ideas are *everywhere*.  
积极的想法到处都有。

### 5.8.3 副词作定语

Struggle is the only way *out*.  
奋斗是唯一的出路。

Injustice *anywhere* is a threat to justice *everywhere*.  
任何地方的非正义就是对所有地方正义的威胁。

Not many things indifferently, but one thing supremely, is the demand of our world.

我们的世界要求的不是平平庸庸做许多事情，而是把一件事情做得精湛高超。

### 5.8.4 副词作补语

副词常作宾语的补足语。

Only struggle can help us *out*.  
唯有奋斗给我们出路。

Teamwork turns a company *around*.  
合作精神可以扭转公司的局面。

## 5.9 副词的比较级和最高级

单音节副词的比较级在词尾加-er，最高级在词尾加-est。

fast (快速地) : faster, fastest

hard (努力地) : harder, hardest

soon (早) : sooner, soonest

如果副词以e结尾，其比较级和最高级则直接在词尾加-r和-st。

late (晚) : later, latest

双音节和多音节副词的比较级和最高级分别在单词前加more和most。

carefully (仔细地) : more carefully, most carefully

slowly (缓慢地) : more slowly, most slowly

quickly (快速地) : more quickly, most quickly

successfully (成功地) : more successfully, most successfully

有个别双音节副词属例外情况，如：

early (早) : earlier, earliest

near (近) : nearer, nearest

副词often的比较级和最高级既可以在词尾加-er, -est, 也可以在单词前加more, most, 以第二种情况更为常见。

often (经常) : oftener, oftenest

或 : more often, most often

有些副词的比较级和最高级有特殊变化。

badly (糟糕地) : worse, worst

far (远) : farther (更远), farthest (最远)

或 : further (进一步), furthest (最大程度)

little (几乎没有) : less, least

much (非常) : more, most

well (很好地) : better, best

Failure is the opportunity to begin again *more intelligently*.

失败是更为明智地重新开始的机会。

We should review our thoughts and actions of one day in order to *better* shape the next.

我们应该回顾一天中自己的思想和行为，以便于更好地塑造第二天。

If I have seen *further* it is by standing on the shoulders of giants.

假如我看得比别人远，那是由于站在巨人肩膀上的缘故。

副词最高级作状语时，不必加定冠词the。

Character is *best* formed in the stormy billows of the world.

人世间的惊涛骇浪最能磨练性格。

Those who succeed *best* in life are always cheerful and hopeful people.

生活中取得最大成功的人总是乐观向上、充满希望的人。

## 5.10 副词的比较句型

### 5.10.1 more...than

副词用比较级，由连词than引出比较对象，表示“比……更”。

Actions speak *louder* than words.

行动胜于言辞。

The spectators see the game *better* than the players.

当局者迷，旁观者清。

People who laugh actually live *longer* than those who don't laugh.

爱笑的人实际上比不爱笑的人活得长。

Quality matters *more* than quantity.

质比量更重要。

### 5.10.2 as...as

这个结构是同级比较句型，表示“和.....一样”，副词使用原级。

Our deeds determine us as *much* as we determine our deeds.

我们取决于我们的行为，正如我们的行为取决于我们一样。

I will go forward with head held high, searching for opportunity as *fiercely* as the starving lion searches for food.

我将昂首向前，寻找机会，就像饥饿的雄狮搜寻食物。

同级比较句型的否定形式为：not as...as或not so...as, 表示“不如.....”。

Your living is determined not so(或as) *much* by what life brings to you as by the attitude you bring to life.

与其说生计取决于生活带给你的东西，不如说取决于你带给生活的态度。

## 5.11 小品副词与动词构成的短语动词

小品副词的特点为：有很多既可以作副词，也可以作介词，如in, on, down, up, behind, over等；小品副词多表示方向。

### 5.11.1 小品副词up与动词构成的短语动词

break up 打碎；终止；分解 bring up 养育；提出

brush up 重温 build up 逐步建立；增强

burn up 烧光；烧旺 call up 使人想起

cheer up 高兴起来 clear up 放晴；澄清

come up 发生 cover up 掩盖

crop up 出现 dress up 盛装打扮

dry up 干透；干涸；枯竭 end up 结束

finish up 完成 fix up 修好；安排；解决

follow up 对.....采取进一步行动 gather up 收拢

get up 起床；起身 give up 放弃

go up 上升 grow up 长大

hang up 挂起；挂断电话 hold up 举起；耽搁

hurry up 赶紧 keep up 保持；继续

line up 排成队 look up 抬头看；改善；查阅

make up 弥补；编造；构成；化妆；和解 mix up 搅匀；混淆

open up 打开；张开；开设 pay up 全部付清

pick up 捡起；恢复；好转；获得；看到；听到；取走

play up 大加渲染 pull up 向上拉；停下

put up 举起；建造；张贴；为.....提供膳宿  
set up 建造；创立 show up 到来；暴露  
shut up 关闭；住口；监禁 sit up 熬夜  
speak up 大胆地或公开地发表意见 speed up 加速  
spring up 涌现 stand up 起立  
stay up 不睡觉 step up 加快；提高  
sum up 概括 take up 拿起；开始从事；占去  
tidy up 整理 turn up 开大；出现  
use up 用光 wake up 醒来；叫醒  
warm up 加热；做准备活动，热身 work up 激发

An optimist *stays up* until midnight to see the new year in. A pessimist *stays up* to make sure the old year leaves.

乐观者等到午夜迎新年。悲观者等到午夜别旧岁。

Roses often *grow up* in thorns.

玫瑰往往在荆棘丛中长大。

Talent is like a spark, and it may die or *burn up*.

天分就像火花，可以熄灭，也可以烧旺。

Things don't *turn up* in this world until somebody *turns* them up.

世界上的事情不会自动发生，除非有人使其发生。

### 5.11.2 小品副词out与动词构成的短语动词

blow out 吹灭；爆裂 break out 爆发

bring out 拿出；使发挥出来；出版 burn out 烧光；熄灭；精疲力竭

carry out 完成；实行 check out 结账离开；检查

come out 出现；出版；结果是 count out 不把.....算入；逐一数出

cross out 划掉 cut out 切去；删掉

die out 逐渐消失；灭绝 dig out 挖出；找出

dine out 外出就餐 drive out 驱车外出；驱逐

drop out 掉出；退出；退学 fall out 闹翻；掉队

figure out 想出；理解；计算出 fill out 填写；使膨胀

find out 发现 get out 出去；取出

give out 发出 go out 出去；熄灭

hand out 拿出；分发 help out 帮忙；帮助.....摆脱困难

hold out 伸出；坚持 lay out 安排

leave out 遗漏 live out 实践

look out 向外看；当心 make out 辨认出；理解

pick out 选出；认出 point out 指出

pull out 拔出;出站;摆脱困境 put out 伸出;熄灭  
rule out 排除 run out 到期;被用完  
rust out 锈坏;由于缺乏活动而失去活力  
seek out 找出 set out 出发  
shut out 把.....关在外面;把.....排斥在外  
sort out 整理;挑选 spell out 详细地说明  
stand out 出众;醒目 stick out 突出;坚持到底  
try out 考验;试用 turn out 生产;培养出;结果;赶出  
watch out 戒备,提防 wear out 磨损;疲惫  
weed out 清除;淘汰 wipe out 擦掉;消灭  
work out 想出;解决;理解;锻炼

Great objects *bring out* great minds.

伟大的目标造就伟大的人物。

Everything will *come out* all right.

到头来一切都会变好的。

*Try out* your ideas by putting them into practice.

要通过付诸实践来检验自己的想法。

Anger is a wind which *blows out* the lamp of the mind.

怒火是吹灭思想之灯的风。

Time drops in delay, like a candle *burnt out*.

时间在拖延中减少,就像燃尽的蜡烛。

It is better to *wear out* than *rust out*.

与其闲死不如忙死。

I finally *figure out* the only reason to be alive is to enjoy it.

我最终明白了,活着的唯一理由就是享受生活。

Two men *look out* through the same bars: one sees the mud, and the other the stars.

两个人透过栅栏向外望去:一个看到的是泥巴,一个看到的是星星。

If you have the courage to *stick it out*, you are going to make it.

如果你有勇气坚持到底,你就会成功。

### 5.11.3 小品副词off与动词构成的短语动词

back off 后退 break off 中断;绝交

buy off 收买 call off 取消

carry off 搬走;成功地应付 come off 成功

cut off 切掉;切断;使隔绝 doze off 打盹儿



get off 下来 give off 发出；长出  
go off 离开；爆炸；变质 lay off 解雇  
leave off 停止；改掉习惯 let off 排放；宽恕；准许……不做某事  
make off 走开；逃走 pass off 顺利完成；冒充  
pay off 还清；得到好结果 put off 推迟  
ring off 挂断电话 see off 送别  
send off 邮寄；发出；派遣 set off 出发；引爆  
show off 炫耀 start off 出发；开始  
stop off 中途停留 take off 脱下；开始获利；经济起飞  
throw off 摆脱；康复 turn off 关掉  
wear off 磨损；逐渐消失 write off 勾销  
Patience and perseverance will *pay off*.  
耐心和毅力终会获得报偿。

*Turn off* the TV and read great books.

关掉电视，阅读好书吧。

Be always employed in something useful; *cut off* all unnecessary actions.

始终从事有用的事情；去除一切不必要的行动。

Those who seldom *show off* before others are able to achieve greatness.  
很少在人前炫耀的人能够成就伟业。

#### 5.11.4 小品副词down与动词构成的短语动词

break down 出故障；垮掉；分解；拆毁 bring down 降低；击败  
close down 关闭；停业 cut down 削减  
die down 逐渐消失或停止 get down 下来；使沮丧  
go down 下去；减少 hand down 传承下去  
lay down 放下；制定 let down 降下；使失望  
pin down 钉牢；困住 play down 轻描淡写  
pull down 拆除 put down 放下；写下  
run down 耗尽；筋疲力尽 set down 放下；制定；确定  
settle down 定居；平静下来 sit down 坐下  
slow down 减速 take down 记下  
track down 追捕到；查出；找到 turn down 拒绝；关小  
A combined effort can *break down* the wall of impossibility.  
协力合作可以打破不可能的壁垒。  
It is easier to *pull down* than to build up.  
拆毁容易建设难。

The only man who is really free is the one who can *turn down* an invitation to dinner without giving any excuse.

唯一真正自由的人是拒绝赴宴的邀请而没有托辞的人。

All men have fears, but the brave *put down* their fears and go forward.

所有的人都有恐惧，但是勇者放下恐惧，向前走去。

We often hear of people *breaking down* from overwork, but in nine cases out of ten they are really suffering from worry or anxiety.

我们常听说人们因劳累过度而垮下，但十有八九他们实际上是饱受担忧或焦虑的折磨。

#### 5.11.5 小品副词on与动词构成的短语动词

carry on 继续；开展 come on 发生；发展；快点

drag on 拖延 draw on 利用；临近

go on 继续；持续 hand on 转交；传给

hang on 坚持；不挂断电话 hold on 坚持

pass on 传递 push on 继续向前；鼓励

put on 穿上；上演 try on 试穿

turn on 打开

Never lose hope; keep *pushing on*.

永不放弃；继续前进。

The only way to overcome is to *hang on*.

获胜的唯一方法就是坚持。

A lie can travel half way around the world while the truth is *putting on* its shoes.

谎言已走了半个世界，而真理才刚穿鞋子。

#### 5.11.6 小品副词over与动词构成的短语动词

bring over 带来；说服 hand over 移交

knock over 打翻；撞倒 make over 翻新；改造

pass over 忽略；原谅 pull over 把车驶到路边

run over 溢出 start over 重新开始

take over 接管；接任；取而代之 think over 仔细考虑

turn over 翻转过来；移交；仔细考虑 win over 说服；把……争取过来

It's never too late to *start over*.

只要重新开始就不晚。

We have been conscientious about training the next generation of leaders to *take over* after we retire.

我们认真地培训下一代领导人以便在我们退休后接管工作。

*Think over this idea during the weekend. It's daring and risky but risks are essential in business.*

周末要仔细考虑这个想法。这个想法大胆且有风险，但是风险在商业中是必不可少的。

#### 5.11.7 小品副词back与动词构成的短语动词

answer back 还口，顶嘴 call back 叫回；收回；回电

come back 回来 cut back 削减

fight back 还击；忍住 give back 归还；恢复

hold back 阻挡；控制；退缩 keep back 阻止

look back 回头看；回顾 pay back 偿还；报答；报复

set back 耽搁；阻碍 stand back 后退；不介入

turn back 往回走；翻回到

*There is no turning back.*

永不回头。

*Our youth will never come back.*

青春永不再来。

*You cannot call back yesterday.*

昨天唤不回。

#### 5.11.8 其他一些小品副词与动词构成的短语动词

check in 登记；报到 count in 把.....算入

give in 屈服；让步 hand in 交上，递交

look in 朝里面看；顺便看望 pull in 进站；吸引

send in 提交 set in 开始，到来

take in 欺骗；理解；改小 turn in 上交；拐弯进入

bring about 导致；带来 come about 发生

hang about 闲荡 get across 度过；讲清楚；被理解

go ahead 前进 look ahead 向前看

come along 出现；进展 get along 前进；进展；对付过去

go along 前进；继续 set apart 分开

take apart 拆开；严厉抨击 tell apart 区分

bring around 说服；使恢复知觉或健康 come around 苏醒

fool around 闲荡 get around 传开；避开

look around 环顾 lay aside 放到一边；留存

put aside 放到一边；储存 set aside 留出

give away 赠送；暴露 pass away 去世  
wear away 磨损；消磨 fall behind 落在后面  
leave behind 不带；留给 come by 得到  
get by 通过；勉强生活 go by 逝去  
stand by 袖手旁观 call forth 唤起  
go forth 出发 set forth 阐明  
bring forward 提出；提前 put forward 提出  
walk forward 向前走 fall through 失败  
pull through 度过难关 come to 恢复知觉  
Never *give in* to your fate.  
决不要向命运屈服。  
Purposes *go forth* in action.  
有行动，目的才会实现。  
To live in hearts we *leave behind* is not to die.  
活在后人们心中就是没有死亡。  
Constant dropping *wears away* the stone.  
滴水穿石。  
If good people *stand by*, evil will conquer all.  
假如好人袖手旁观，邪恶就会征服一切。  
*Walk forward* fearlessly, and you will gain talent, power and magic naturally.  
无畏前行，你自然就会得到天赋、力量和奇迹。  
Because lifetime is limited, there is no time to *look around* and wait.  
因为生命有限，所以来不及左顾右盼，一再等待。  
True wisdom lies in gathering the precious things out of each day as it *goes by*.  
真正的智慧在于随着每一天的流逝而积累宝贵的东西。  
True friendships are hard to *come by*.  
真正的友谊难以得到。  
If you are pretending to be something you are not, be careful: it's easy to *give* yourself away.  
如果伪装，就要小心，因为容易暴露。  
Problems *call forth* our courage and wisdom.  
问题唤起我们的勇气和智慧。

## 实践演练

## I. 根据汉语翻译写出各句中的形容词。

1. The door of truth is \_\_\_\_\_ to everyone.  
真理之门向每个人敞开。
2. It is more \_\_\_\_\_ to seek truth than to possess it.  
寻求真理比拥有真理更可贵。
3. A success is \_\_\_\_\_ to his ideal.  
成功者忠实于自己的理想。
4. Everyone's circumstances are \_\_\_\_\_.  
每个人的境况都是独一无二的。
5. That grief is \_\_\_\_\_ which is capable of counsel.  
伤心听劝慰，痛苦变轻微。
6. Necessity makes the coward grow \_\_\_\_\_.  
情势所迫时，懦夫变勇士。
7. Opportunity is so freely \_\_\_\_\_ that we take it for granted.  
机会如此易得以至于我们对此视为理所当然。
8. A pebble and a diamond are \_\_\_\_\_ to a blind man.  
瞎子不辨卵石和钻石。
9. Never judge one as a gentleman just because of his \_\_\_\_\_ good reputation.  
不要因为某人一时的好名声就把他当成绅士。
10. Kindness and gentleness are often more \_\_\_\_\_ than force.  
仁慈和温和往往比力量更有效。
11. Happy life is \_\_\_\_\_ with various virtues.  
愉快的生活和各种美德不可分割。
12. Although people are born to win, they are also born \_\_\_\_\_ and totally \_\_\_\_\_ on their environment.  
尽管人们生而为赢，但他们也是无助的，完全依赖环境。
13. The eye is \_\_\_\_\_ if the mind is \_\_\_\_\_.  
心不在焉就会视而不见。
14. Proverbs are \_\_\_\_\_ sentences drawn from \_\_\_\_\_ experience.  
格言虽短，源自长期经验。
15. Put up with \_\_\_\_\_ annoyances to gain \_\_\_\_\_ results.  
忍得小烦恼，换来大成就。

## II. 根据汉语写出相对应的副词。

1. Men \_\_\_\_\_ (情愿地) believe what they wish.

2. He invites a new injury who bears the old \_\_\_\_\_(耐心地).
3. The words not only affect us \_\_\_\_\_(暂时); they change us, and they socialize us.
4. One \_\_\_\_\_(很少) loses by dealing with honest men.
5. The scores of the children who were ignored \_\_\_\_\_(几乎没有) improved at all.
6. A winner's timing is right. Winners respond \_\_\_\_\_(恰当地) to the situation.
7. A clear conscience is \_\_\_\_\_(绝对) essential to happiness.
8. A teacher must remain \_\_\_\_\_(头脑方面) alert.
9. You can make your interests \_\_\_\_\_(逐渐地) wider and more impersonal, until bit by bit the walls of the ego recede, and your life becomes \_\_\_\_\_(越来越) part of the universal life.
10. A man must ask \_\_\_\_\_(过多地) to get a little.
11. Confidence is not always winning, not always victory. \_\_\_\_\_(实际上), it is that very quality in humanity which refuses to stay defeated.
12. Assertiveness is the ability to clearly represent your thoughts and feelings in a \_\_\_\_\_(互相) respectful way.
13. People \_\_\_\_\_(偶尔) tell you, "Do that in your free time." But in fact there's no such thing as "free" time.
14. By reorienting, you can learn to see yourself and the world around you \_\_\_\_\_(以不同的方式).
15. We look forward \_\_\_\_\_(充满希望地) to the future.

### III. 写出句子中所提供的形容词或副词的比较级形式。

1. The only thing some people do is getting \_\_\_\_\_(old).
2. Enthusiasm will take you \_\_\_\_\_(far) than any amount of experience.
3. It's wise to think a thing well; it's wiser to plan it \_\_\_\_\_(well).
4. Prevention is \_\_\_\_\_(good) than cure.
5. There is no love \_\_\_\_\_(sincere) than the love of food.
6. The more unintelligent a man is, \_\_\_\_\_(little) mysterious existence seems to him.
7. Luck is a dividend of sweat. The more you sweat, \_\_\_\_\_(lucky) you get.
8. When audiences come to see the authors' lectures, it is largely in the hope that they will be \_\_\_\_\_(fun) to look at than to read.

9. The art of getting rich consists not in industry, much \_\_\_\_\_(little) in savings, but in a better order, in timeliness, in being at the right spot.

#### IV. 写出下列形容词的最高级形式。

1. The greatest talkers are the \_\_\_\_\_(little) doers.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_(busy) men find the most time.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_(happy) of all lives is a busy solitude.
4. Pride is tasteless, colorless and sizeless. Yet it is the \_\_\_\_\_(hard) thing to swallow.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_(high) intellects, like the tops of mountains, are the first to catch and to reflect the dawn.
6. Gratitude is the \_\_\_\_\_(healthy) of all human emotions.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_(tough) thing about success is that you've got to keep on being a success.
8. The \_\_\_\_\_(absurd) hopes have sometimes been the cause of extraordinary success.
9. Sometimes the \_\_\_\_\_(good) helping hand you can get is a good, firm push.

#### V. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. The happiest 【A】 people don't necessarily 【B】 have the best 【C】 of everything; they just make the most 【D】 of everything in their lives.
2. Learning makes the wise 【A】 more wise 【B】 and the foolish 【C】 more foolish 【D】.
3. Although 【A】 we met with 【B】 some difficulties at the beginning 【C】, we fulfilled our task the same 【D】.
4. Life is infinitely 【A】 inventive. It will always outrun and outmaneuver any attempt to bottle it up 【B】 in a cut-and-dried system, for life is perpetual becoming. When life turns your wisest plans or best rules upside 【C】, throw out 【D】 the plans and bend with the circumstance.
5. I decided I still 【A】 wanted to move forward 【B】 rather than end with 【C】 a mouth full of "if only" later on 【D】.
6. No matter how often unpleasant or difficult challenges get you down 【A】, don't give up 【B】 to negative thinking. Just pick yourself

up **【C】** and move on **【D】**.

## VI. 在空格处填入恰当的副词。

1. After encountering much misery, he succeeded in becoming a servant. The situation, \_\_\_\_\_, opened for him the road to learning, and he shortly became one of the most famous men of his time.
2. People who have the capacity for hard work \_\_\_\_\_succeed.
3. You must make the most of your time and energy. \_\_\_\_\_, you can't do your job well.
4. The well-adjusted take college \_\_\_\_\_but know the importance of fun as well.
5. Confident people are not afraid to show \_\_\_\_\_their achievements.
6. Courage, selflessness and will power all stand \_\_\_\_\_in him.
7. Do not throw good things \_\_\_\_\_; you may be glad to have them at some other time.
8. You are able to bring \_\_\_\_\_an inner peace and spirituality that gives you a good tool for building self-confidence and self-esteem.
9. Many lottery winners wind \_\_\_\_\_with larger problems.

## VII. 将下列英文比较句式翻译成汉语。

1. His success is not so much by talent as by energy.
2. Books are by far the most lasting products of human effort.
3. The greatest mistake is trying to be more agreeable than you can be.
4. Nothing is so firmly believed as what is least known.
5. The very possession of wealth might indeed have proved an obstacle greater even than the humble means to which they were born.
6. There is no mistake so great as that of being always right.
7. A man is not necessarily intelligent because he has plenty of ideas any more than he is a good general because he has plenty of soldiers.



8. What is the fastest while the slowest, the longest while the shortest, the most ordinary while the most valuable, ignored most easily while most regrettable in the world is time.

9. You know we can't pay good people like you as much as we would like to; but we do care, and I want you to know you are important to us.

### VIII. 将下列带有比较句型的句子翻译成英文。

1. 聪明人创造的机会比他发现的机会多。
2. 金钱是宝贵的，生命更宝贵，而时间最宝贵。
3. 胜利者不一定是跑得最快的人，但一定是坚持到最后的人。
4. 大多数人都比他们意识到的更大有可为。
5. 孩子以及他们的自尊要比他们打破或损坏的任何东西都要重要得多。
6. 你越不向别人敞开心扉，你内心承受的痛苦就越多。
7. 你摆脱让你烦恼的问题越快，你就越健康。

### IX. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. Success does not come\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. easy B. easier C. easily D. too easily
2. Some countries have introduced flexible working time with less emphasis on pressure\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. and more on efficiency B. than efficiency  
C. than more on efficiency D. and more efficiency
3. Harvey was as\_\_\_\_\_as any we have named.  
A. indefatigable laborer B. an indefatigable laborer  
C. a laborer indefatigable D indefatigable a laborer
4. Although the main characters in the novel are so true to life, they are certainly\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. imaginary    B. imaginable  
C. imaginative    D. imagining

5. There is no more sense in having an argument with a man so stupid that he doesn't know you have \_\_\_\_\_ of him.

- A. the more    B. the most    C. the better    D. the best

6. A given event will be seen in several ways by \_\_\_\_\_ witnesses.

- A. so many    B. as many    C. the same    D. many

7. You cannot get a sense of security by refusing to take chances \_\_\_\_\_ a country can get it by living behind walls.

- A. more than    B. less than  
C. much less than    D. any more than

8. It is wise to have some money \_\_\_\_\_ for old age.

- A. put away    B. kept up    C. given away    D. laid up

9. She is such a strong woman; he's too weak to \_\_\_\_\_ her.

- A. stand for    B. stand out    C. stand in    D. stand up to

10. Listen to sweet music, and your foolish fears and petty jealousies will \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. pass away    B. pass on    C. pass through    D. pass up

11. Hard work can often \_\_\_\_\_ a lack of intelligence.

- A. make up into    B. make up  
C. make up for    D. make the best of

12. It is difficult for a man who is in debt to be truthful; \_\_\_\_\_ it is said that lying rides on debt's back.

- A. hardly    B. hence    C. honestly    D. however

13. Parents must \_\_\_\_\_ the idea that "I love you always, but sometimes I do not love your behavior."

- A. get along    B. get around  
C. get through    D. get across

14. The best things are hard to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. come around    B. come by  
C. come through    D. come up

15. The more I think about him, the more reason I find for loving him \_\_\_\_\_ I did.

- A. as much as    B. as long as    C. as soon as    D. as far as

## 第6章 数词

数词指的是表示数量或顺序的词。数词有两种，分别为基数词和序数词。表示数量的数词称为基数词，表示顺序的数词称为序数词。

### 6.1 基数词

#### 6.1.1 基数词的构成

##### a 1至12构成

one 一 two 二 three 三 four 四  
five 五 six 六 seven 七 eight 八  
nine 九 ten 十 eleven 十一 twelve 十二

##### b 13至19的构成

一致之处是词尾皆为-teen。

thirteen 十三 fourteen 十四 fifteen 十五 sixteen 十六  
seventeen 十七 eighteen 十八 nineteen 十九

##### c 20至90的十位整数构成

一致之处是词尾皆为-ty。

twenty 二十 thirty 三十 forty 四十 fifty 五十  
sixty 六十 seventy 七十 eighty 八十 ninety 九十

##### d 21到90带个位的数字

十位数在前，个位数在后，十位数与个位数之间用连字符连接。如21—29的数字：

twenty-one 二十一 twenty-two 二十二 twenty-three 二十三  
twenty-four 二十四 twenty-five 二十五 twenty-six 二十六  
twenty-seven 二十七 twenty-eight 二十八 twenty-nine 二十九

##### e 百位数

百位整数100到900由one到nine加上hundred构成，如one hundred (一百)，two hundred(二百)，three hundred(三百)等。一百也可表示为a hundred。百位数后有十位数和个位数的构成为：在百位和十位之间用and连接，也可不用；如果只有百位数和十位数，或只有百位数和个位数，则百位和十位，百位和个位之间用and连接，也可不用。如：

345：three hundred (and) forty-five

340：three hundred (and) forty

305：three hundred (and) five

#### f 千位数

千位整数1000到9000由one到nine加上thousand构成，如one thousand(一千)，two thousand(两千)，three thousand(三千)等。当后面有百位数、十位数、个位数时，置于其后即可，如：

5600：five thousand six hundred

8450：eight thousand four hundred (and) fifty

9321：nine thousand three hundred (and) twenty-one

#### g 万的构成

从1万到9万的整数是由ten到ninety加thousand构成，如：ten thousand(一万)，twenty thousand(二万)，thirty thousand(三万)等。若表示几万几千，则对应的是几十几thousand，如sixty-five thousand(六万五千)。

#### h 十万的构成

从10万到90万的整数是由one hundred到nine hundred加thousand构成，如：one hundred thousand(十万)，two hundred thousand(二十万)等。

#### i 百万的构成

百万的基本单位是million。从100万至900万的整数是由one到nine加million构成，如one million(一百万)，two million(二百万)等。

#### j 千万的构成

从1000万到9000万的整数是由ten到ninety加million构成，如：ten million(一千万)，twenty million(两千万)，nine million(九千万)等。

#### k 亿的构成

从1亿到9亿的整数是由one到nine加hundred million构成，如：one hundred million(一亿)，nine hundred million(九亿)等。

#### l 十亿的构成

十亿的基本单位是billion。从10亿到90亿的整数是由one到nine加billion构成，如two billion(二十亿)，four billion(四十亿)等。

#### m 千亿的构成

从1千亿到9千亿的整数是由one hundred到nine hundred加billion构成，如six hundred billion(六千亿)，eight hundred billion(八千亿)等。

#### n 万亿的构成

万亿的基本单位是trillion，如表示七万亿，则是seven trillion。

#### o 复杂数字的读法

在英语中，数字如果超出三位，须从右到左，每三位为一组，用逗号隔开。从右至左的第一个逗号读作thousand，第二个逗号读作million，第三个逗号读作billion，第四个逗号读作trillion。读的时候，则从左至右。如：

129, 479读作 one hundred and twenty-nine thousand four hundred and seventy-nine

6, 129, 479读作 six million one hundred and twenty-nine thousand four hundred and seventy-nine

7, 926, 129, 479 读作 seven billion nine hundred and twenty-six million one hundred and twenty-nine thousand four hundred and seventy-nine

8, 367, 926, 129, 479 读作 eight trillion three hundred and sixty-seven billion nine hundred and twenty-six million one hundred and twenty-nine thousand four hundred and seventy-nine

### 6.1.2 基数词的复数

基数词后加-s构成复数，表示概数，基数词的复数形式主要包括：tens (数以十计的), dozens (许多), scores (许多), hundreds (成百的，数以百计的), thousands (成千的，数以千计的), millions (成百万的，数以百万计的)。如果基数词的复数后面接宾语时，则必须用of连接。

Your actions may touch the lives of *thousands* of people.

你的行为可能会关系到成千上万人的生活。

*Thousands* of books reveal the lives of successful people.

无数的书籍表现了成功人士的人生。

Knowledge, wisely used, has enabled *scores* of ambitious individuals to soar to great heights of fame.

知识，当明智地加以利用时，使许多有抱负的个人名声大振。

You may make *millions*, but they will not necessarily bring you happiness.

或许你可以成为百万富翁，但这些钱并不一定能给你带来幸福。

### 6.1.3 基数词的语法功能

基数词在句中可以充当主语、宾语、表语、定语、同位语和状语等。

#### a 基数词作主语

*Two* in distress make sorrow less.

困境中有人相伴使伤痛减轻。

*Three* helping one another bear the burden of six.

三个相互帮扶，能担当六人的重任。

#### b 基数词作宾语

When angry, count *ten* before you speak; if very angry, count *a hundred*.

生气的时候，数到十再开口；如果非常生气，数到一百。

#### c 基数词作表语

I am *sixty-seven*, but not too old to make a fresh start.

我六十七岁了，但还不算太老，可以从头开始。

d 基数词作定语

A good mother is worth *a hundred* schoolmasters.

一位好母亲胜过一百位老师。

Seeing much, suffering much, and studying much, are the *three* pillars of learning.

多见识，多磨砺，多学习，是学识的三大支柱。

e 基数词作同位语

Give me love and work, these *two* only, and I will be able to live a contented life.

赋予我爱和工作，只有这两样东西，我就会生活得心满意足。

f 基数词作状语

When one is asked to go one mile, one should willingly go *two*.

当一个人被要求走一英里的路程，他应该心甘情愿地走两英里。

## 6.1.4 与基数词有关的习语

baker's dozen 十三

in a million 无与伦比的

nine to five 九点到五点（指通常的办公时间）

nine days' wonder 昙花一现的事物

on all fours 匍匐前进

one by one 依次地

the upper ten 上流社会

to the nines 完美无缺地

ten to one (或 a hundred to one, a thousand to one) 很可能

a hundred and one (或 a thousand and one, a million and one) 许多

at sixes and sevens 乱七八糟

in twos and threes 三三两两地

one in a thousand 杰出的

three score and ten 人生七十载（指正常的寿命）

nine times out of ten 几乎总是

talk nineteen to the dozen 喋喋不休

be dressed up to the nines 打扮得非常漂亮

six of one and half a dozen of the other (或 six and two threes) 不相上下

## 6.2 序数词

### 6.2.1 序数词的构成

#### a 1至19序数词的构成

一般规则是在基数词的词尾加-th。

first 第一 second 第二 third 第三  
fourth 第四 fifth 第五 sixth 第六  
seventh 第七 eighth 第八 ninth 第九  
tenth 第十 eleventh 第十一 twelfth 第十二  
thirteenth 第十三 fourteenth 第十四 fifteenth 第十五  
sixteenth 第十六 seventeenth 第十七 eighteenth 第十八  
nineteenth 第十九

注意first, second, third, fifth, ninth和twelfth的特殊变化。

#### b 20到90整数序数词的构成

将基数词词尾的-y变为-ie，再加-th。

twentieth 第二十 thirtieth 第三十 fortieth 第四十  
fiftieth 第五十 sixtieth 第六十 seventieth 第七十  
eightieth 第八十 ninetieth 第九十

#### c 21到99带个位序数词的构成

十位数用基数词，个位数用序数词，中间用连字符连接。

如21到29：

twenty-first 第二十一 twenty-second 第二十二  
twenty-third 第二十三 twenty-fourth 第二十四  
twenty-fifth 第二十五 twenty-sixth 第二十六  
twenty-seventh 第二十七 twenty-eighth 第二十八  
twenty-ninth 第二十九

#### d 一百以上序数词的构成

统一规则为：有个位数时，在基数词的基础上只变个位数为序数，其他部分仍用基数；没有个位数时，在基数词的基础上，变最后一位数为序数，其他部分仍用基数。如：

one hundredth 第一百  
two hundredth 第二百  
three thousandth 第三千  
one hundred and thirty-fifth 第一百三十五  
two thousand six hundred and fifty-second 两千六百五十二

#### e 序数词的数字表示法

序数词也可以采用阿拉伯数字与英文相结合的方式表示，规则为：在阿拉伯数字结尾加对应的英文序数词的最后两个字母，如：

1<sup>st</sup> (first) 2<sup>nd</sup> (second) 3<sup>rd</sup> (third)

4<sup>th</sup> (fourth) 5<sup>th</sup> (fifth) 16<sup>th</sup> (sixteenth)

27<sup>th</sup> (twenty-seventh) 31<sup>st</sup> (thirty-first) 42<sup>nd</sup> (forty-second)

53<sup>rd</sup> (fifty-third)

### 6.2.2 序数词的语法功能

序数词在句中可以作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语等。

#### a 作主语

There are two great moments in your life. *The first* is when you are born.

*The second* is when you discover why you are born.

你的生命中有两个重大时刻。第一个重大时刻是当你出生的时候。

第二个重大时刻是当你明白为什么而生的时候。

There are three classes of people in the world. *The first* learn from their own experience. *The second* learn from the experience of others. *The third* learn neither from their own experience nor from the experience of others.

世界上有三种类别的人。第一种类别的人借鉴自己的经验。第二种类别的人借鉴他人的经验。第三种类别的人既不借鉴自己的经验，也不借鉴他人的经验。

#### b 作宾语

Try your best and be among *the first*.

尽最大努力，跻身于最前列。

#### c 作表语

You have to be *first*, best or different.

你必须捷足先登，或者无以伦比或者与众不同。

#### d 作定语

Habit is *second* nature.

习惯是第二天性。

*First* impressions are half the battle.

第一印象至关重要。

#### e 作状语

Each time you run the race and fail to finish *first*, examine your progress.

每当你参加比赛，并没有得第一的时候，要评估自己的进步。



I might say that success is won by three things: *first*, effort; *second*, more effort; *third*, still more effort.

我要说，成功有三个要素：其一，努力；其二，努力；其三，再努力。

## 6.3 分数

### 6.3.1 分数的构成

#### a 不带整数的分数

分子用基数词，分母用序数词；分子与分母之间可用连字符连接，也可不用；当分子大于1时，分母用复数形式。

$1/3$  : a third 或 one third (one-third)

$2/3$  : two thirds (two-thirds)

$1/4$  : a fourth 或 one fourth (one-fourth)，但更常见的表示方式为 a quarter 或 one quarter

$3/4$  : three fourths 或 three quarters

$1/5$  : a fifth 或 one fifth (one-fifth)

$2/5$  : two fifths (two-fifths)

$3/5$  : three fifths (three-fifths)

$4/5$  : four fifths (four-fifths)

注意： $1/2$ 的表示方法只能是 a half 或 one half。

当分数较为复杂时，都用基数词，中间加 over。

$39/7$  : thirty-nine over seven     $18/19$  : eighteen over nineteen

$137/465$  : one hundred and thirty-seven over four hundred and sixty-five

简单的分数也可采取这种表示方法：

$1/3$  : one over three     $2/3$  : two over three

#### b 带分数（带整数的分数）

整数与分数之间用 and 连接。

$2\frac{1}{2}$  : two and a half

$3\frac{1}{4}$  : three and a quarter

$5\frac{2}{3}$  : five and two thirds

### 6.3.2 分数的语法功能

分数在句子最常用作主语、宾语、定语等。

#### a 作主语

*Three-fourths* of the people you will ever meet are hungering and thirsting for sympathy.

你遇见的人中有四分之三渴望得到同情。

*Nine tenths* of wisdom is being wise in time.

十分之九的智慧在于明智得及时。

b 作宾语

When I'm getting ready to reason with a man, I spend *two thirds* of my time thinking about him and what he is going to say.

当我准备劝导一个人的时候，我花三分之二的时间对他和他要说的话进行考虑。

c 作定语

分数作定语时，分子和分母之间必须加连字符，而且分母要用单数。

*Nine-tenth* happiness is built on the basis of health.

十分之九的幸福建立在健康的基础之上。

## 6.4 百分数

百分数的表示方式是英文数字后面加percent(或per cent), 也可以直接用阿拉伯数字加%、percent (或per cent)表示。

百分数在句中可以用作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语等。

百分数作主语：

95% of all individuals lack the determination to call on their unused capacities.

百分之九十五的人缺乏激发自己潜在能力的决心。

*Seventy percent* of all patients could cure themselves if they only got rid of their fears and worries.

百分之七十的病人如果没有恐惧和担心，可以治好自己的病。

百分数作宾语：

Always give *a hundred percent*, and you'll never have to second guess yourself.

永远付出百分之百的努力，你就永远不必事后批评自己。

My advice is to focus *100%* on doing the job you are good at.

我的建议是，将百分之百的精力投入自己擅长的工作。

百分数作表语：

No one is *100 percent*, but everyone has their own gifts and talents.

没有人十全十美，但每个人都有自己的天赋和才能。

百分数作定语：

Genius is *one percent* inspiration and *ninety-nine percent* perspiration.

天才是百分之一的灵感加百分之九十九的汗水。

Life is *10 percent* what happens to us and *90 percent* how we respond to it.

生活是百分之十的境遇加百分之九十我们对境遇的回应。

Few people are *one hundred percent* winners or *one hundred percent* losers.

没有几个人是百分之百的胜者或百分之百的败者。

百分数作状语：

Be *100 percent* responsible for your task.

要百分之百地对自己的工作负责。

Life is like baseball; it is *95 percent* mental.

人生就像棒球运动，百分之九十五要靠头脑。

## 6.5 小数

小数点读作point，小数点之后的数字逐一读出。

0.38 读作：zero point three eight

1.17 读作：one point one seven

8.956 读作：eight point nine five six

## 6.6 倍数

表示倍数关系的句式常见的有以下三种。

“A是B的N倍大（或长）”对应的英文表达可以是：

A is N times as large (long) as B.

A is N times larger (longer) than B.

A is N times the size (length) of B.

（二分之一用one half表示；一倍即同等程度，用同级比较句型as...as即可；两倍用twice表示；三倍或以上用基数词加times表示）

Listen *twice as much as* you speak.

要做到，倾听别人说话是自己说话的两倍。

Today is *one hundred times more valuable than* yesterday.

今天的价值是昨天的一百倍。

I'm determined, in the future, to get *ten times* what I have achieved.

我决心在未来取得十倍于过去的成绩。

## 6.7 数字公式

下面提供一些数字公式的英文基本表达法。

等号可读作is或equals。

$A + B = C$  读作：A plus B equals C (或 A and B is C; A and B makes C)

$A - B = C$  读作：A minus B equals C (或 A less B equals C)

$A \times B = C$  读作：A multiplied by B equals C (或 A times B equals C)

$A \div B = C$  读作：A divided by B equals C (或 B into A is C)

$A:B = C$  读作：The ratio of A to B is C.

$A = B$  读作：A is equal to B

$A \neq B$  读作：A is not equal to B

$A \approx B$  读作：A is approximately equal to B

$A > B$  读作：A is more than B

$A < B$  读作：A is less than B

## 6.8 日期和时刻

### 6.8.1 日期

#### a 年代的读法

709年 读作：seven hundred and nine

856年 读作：eight hundred and fifty-six (或eight fifty-six)

1700年 读作：seventeen hundred

1908年 读作：nineteen and eight (或nineteen“o”eight)

1990年 读作：nineteen ninety

1995年 读作：nineteen ninety-five

2000年 读作：two thousand

1970s (1970's) 20世纪70年代 读作：nineteen seventies

268 B.C. 公元前268年 读作：two sixty-eight B.C. 或 two hundred and sixty-eight B.C.

790 A.D. 公元后790年 读作：seven ninety A.D. 或 seven hundred and ninety A.D.

#### b 月份的表示法

括号内为缩写形式：

January (Jan.) 一月 February (Feb.) 二月

March (Mar.) 三月 April (Apr.) 四月

May 五月 June 六月

July 七月 August (Aug.) 八月

September (Sept.) 九月 October (Oct.) 十月

November (Nov.) 十一月 December (Dec.) 十二月

#### c 年月表示法

月在前，年在后，中间没有逗号

March 1998 June 2001

d 月日表示法

英国英语：日写作序数词，读出时须加定冠词

August 5<sup>th</sup> 读作 August the fifth

September 10<sup>th</sup> 读作 September the tenth

美国英语：日写作基数词，读作序数词，但无须加定冠词

August 5 读作 August fifth

September 10 读作 September tenth

e 年月日表示法

常见的方式为月在前，日在中间，年在后，日与年之间用逗号隔开。

March 2<sup>nd</sup>, 1998 June 19<sup>th</sup>, 2001

## 6.8.2 时刻

a 用数字表示

11 : 00 十一点 11 : 18 十一点十八分

11 a.m. 上午十一点 11 : 18 a.m. 上午十一点十八分

11 p.m. 晚上十一点 11 : 18 p.m. 晚上十一点十八分

b 用文字表示

简单方式表示，如：

eleven 十一点 eleven eighteen 十一点十八分

用past表示几点几分，方式为：分+ past +时，如：

eighteen (minutes) past eleven 十一点过十八分

a quarter past nine 九点过一刻

half past ten 十点半

注意：用past时，如果超过三十分，应使用简单方式或下列的表示方式。

用to表示差几分几点，方式为：分+ to +时，如：

six to nine 差六分九点 a quarter to twelve 差一刻十二点

## 6.9 年龄

直接用数字表示。

He is 20(或 twenty).

他二十岁。

可以在数字后面加years old或years of age。如果是婴儿，也可以用具体的天数表示。

He is 20 years old. 或He is 20 years of age.

The baby is *five months and six days old*.

这个婴儿五个月零六天大。

表示处于具体的某一年龄，方式为：介词at + 具体年龄或at + the age of + 具体年龄。

Anyone who stops learning is old, whether *at twenty or eighty*.

任何人只要停止学习就会变老，不论是二十岁还是八十岁。

用in one's + 年龄段的复数，表示某人处于某个年龄阶段。

The boy is *in his late teens*.

这个男孩快二十岁了。

The young man is *in his early twenties*.

这个小伙子二十岁出头。

The gentleman is *in his mid-fifties*.

这位先生五十五岁左右。

## 6.10 带序号的表达

World War I 读作：World War One 或 the First World War

World War II 读作：World War Two 或 the Second World War

Volume I 读作：Volume One 或 the First Volume

Section II 读作：Section Two 或 the Second Section

Part III 读作：Part Three 或 the Third Part

但是，君主称号的读法不同于以上表达，如：

James I (詹姆斯一世) 读作：James the First

Elizabeth II (伊丽莎白二世) 读作：Elizabeth the Second

Edward VIII (爱德华八世) 读作：Edward the Eighth

## 第7章 介词

介词连接前后单词，使单词之间在意义上产生关联。英语中的介词极为普遍，而且用法广泛。

### 7.1 介词的分类

7.1.1 按照构成，介词可分为单一介词、双重介词、分词介词和短语介词。

a 单一介词

即单个介词，包括：

about above across after against  
along alongside amid amidst among  
around as at before behind  
below beneath beside besides between  
beyond but by despite down  
during except for from in  
inside into like minus near  
of off onto opposite outside  
over past per plus round  
save since than through throughout  
till to toward(s) under underneath  
until up upon via with  
within without worth

Teaching offers something *besides* money: it offers love.

除了金钱，教书还会带来别的东西：那便是爱。（*besides* 表示“除……之外，还有”）

No one *but* you is responsible for the choices you make.

除了你没有谁为你自己做出的选择负责。（*but* 和否定词搭配使用）

An aim *in* life is the only fortune *worth* finding.

生活中的目标是唯一值得去寻找的财富。

If you lie *upon* roses when young, you lie *upon* thorns when old.

倘若年轻时卧于玫瑰丛，年老时就会躺于荆棘堆。

Repetition does not transform a lie *into* a truth.

重复并不能把谎言变成真理。

Keep working *toward* your goal.

要不断地朝着目标去努力。

The longest distance *between* two points is a shortcut.

两点之间的最长距离就是捷径。

Along the road to great success, there are many trifle failures.

沿着通向伟大成功的道路，有许多微不足道的失败。

#### b 双重介词

即两个介词一起使用，如：

except for 除了.....以外 from among 从.....之中

from behind 从.....后面 from under 从.....下面

from across 从.....对面 inside of 在.....里面

outside of 在.....外面 until after 直到.....之后

A life isn't significant *except for* its impact on other lives.

一个生命如果对别的生命没有影响，就无足轻重。

#### c 分词介词

即由动词分词演变而成的介词，绝大多数由现在分词变化而来。

这类介词包括：

barring 除.....以外 concerning 关于 considering 考虑到

excepting 除.....以外 excluding 除.....以外 failing 如果没有

following 继.....之后 given 考虑到 including 包括

involving 涉及到 lacking 没有 notwithstanding 尽管

pending 在.....之前 regarding 关于 respecting 关于

saving 除.....之外 touching 关于 wanting 没有

I agree with your philosophy *regarding* the best way to deal with life.

我同意您关于如何最好地对待人生的哲学。

#### d 短语介词

即一个短语行使介词的功能，如：

according to 根据 along with 和.....一起

aside from 除.....之外，还有；除.....之外，别无

due to 因为 out of 从.....之中

thanks to 幸亏 by means of 依靠

in honor of 为了向.....表示敬意 with reference to 关于

at the expense of 以.....为代价 in the event of 如果.....发生

to the best of 竭尽.....

Life becomes richer *because of* the offer of love.

生活因为爱的给予而变得更为丰富。



Gain *at the expense of* reputation should be called loss.  
以名誉为代价的获得应称为损失。

### 7.1.2 按照意义，介词可分为时间介词、地点介词以及表示其他意义的介词。

#### a 时间介词

about 大约 after 在.....之后 before 在.....之前  
by 到.....为止 during 在.....期间 in 在.....期间  
on 在.....的时候 since 自从 till 直到  
until 直到 within 在.....之内 following 在.....之后  
Have an aim *in* life, or your energies will all be wasted.  
人生要有目标，否则一切努力都将被浪费。  
Cowards die many times *before* their deaths.  
胆小鬼在死亡之前已经死过很多次。

#### b 地点介词

about 在.....周围 above 在.....之上 along 沿着  
among 在.....之中 around 在.....周围 at 在.....处  
behind 在.....之后 below 在.....之下 beneath 在.....之下  
beside 在.....旁边 between 在.....中间 beyond 在.....的那一边  
down 沿着 in 在.....里 inside 在.....里  
near 在.....附近 on 在.....上 outside 在.....之外  
over 在.....之上 round 在.....周围 under 在.....之下  
up 沿.....向上 upon 在.....之上 in front of 在.....前面  
Nothing *on* earth can help the man with the wrong attitude.  
世界上没有什么能帮助态度错误的人。  
It is important to use the past to learn *from* your mistakes.  
重要的是，利用过去，从错误中学习。  
If you have to choose *between* a good reputation and great wealth,  
choose a good reputation.  
如果在名誉和财富之间做选择，应选择名誉。  
Leadership grows *out of* self-knowledge, character and competence.  
领导才能来源于自知之明，品格和能力。

#### c 表示其他意义的介词

表示按照：by, on, according to

表示方式：by, on, with

表示分离：from, of

表示“除了……以外，还有”：besides, in addition to, apart from, aside from, as well as

表示排除：but, except, excluding, apart from, aside from, except for

表示让步：despite, in spite of, for all, notwithstanding

表示比较：above, as, like, over

表示原因：for, from, of, with, because of, due to, owing to

表示关于：about, of, on, concerning, regarding, as for, as to

You will rise *by* lifting others.

通过提携他人你也会提升自己。

Love frees us *of* all the weight and pain of life.

爱使我们免受生活的压力和痛苦。

A hero is nothing *but* a product of his time.

英雄只不过是所处时代的产物。

There is nothing permanent *except* change.

只有变化才是永恒的。

Health is *above* wealth.

健康胜过财富。

Man shall not live *by* bread alone.

人不能仅靠面包活着。

I will become a firefly and even in the day my glow will be seen *in spite of* the sun.

我要做一只萤火虫，即使在白天，尽管有太阳，我也要闪现自己的光辉。

Don't judge each day *by* the harvest you reap but *by* the seeds you plant.

不要按照收获的成果判断每一天，而要按照种下的种子判断每一天。

## 7.2 介词的宾语

### 7.2.1 名词作介词的宾语

Money doesn't grow *on* trees.

财富不会长在树上。

Patience is the best remedy *for* every trouble.

忍耐是医治一切麻烦的良方。

The way to happiness is to stop worrying *about* things which are beyond the power of our will.

幸福的方式就是不要担心非我们的意志力所及的事物。

### 7.2.2 代词作介词的宾语

Sorrow is good *for nothing*.

悲伤于事无补。

A friend *to all* is a friend *to none*.

对所有人都友好的人不是任何人的朋友。

Only God is in a position to look down *on anyone*.

只有上帝才处于可以俯视任何人的位置。

Only the person who has faith *in himself* is able to be faithful *to others*.

只有信任自己的人才能对他人守信用。

### 7.2.3 动名词作介词宾语

动词作介词宾语，必须用动名词形式。

Continuous efforts are the key *to unlocking our potential*.

持续的努力是释放我们潜能的关键。

When it comes to *helping people grow and feel good about themselves*, there is no substitute for love.

在帮助人们成长、帮助他们自我感觉良好方面，没有什么能替代爱。

To idle away one's time amounts *to killing oneself*.

虚度年华等同于自杀。

Living without an aim is *like sailing without a compass*.

生活没有目标如同航行没有指南针。

### 7.2.4 形容词或副词作介词宾语

这种情况多见于成语和固定表达，如in general(总体而言)，for sure(毫无疑问)，less than successful(不太成功)，far from enough(远远不够)，from good to worse(每况愈下)等。

We must draw on resources *from within* to meet challenges.

我们必须凭借自身内部的力量迎接挑战。

We don't know *for sure* what problems or opportunities any day or any moment will bring.

我们不能确切地知道每天、每时会出现什么问题或者什么机会。

Read *from thin to thick* first, and then *from thick to thin*.

读书要先从薄到厚，然后再从厚到薄。

The leader who stands still will not remain a leader *for long*.

毫无业绩的领导不会长时间做领导。

Money spent on the brain is never spent *in vain*.

智力投资决不是掷于空地。

### 7.2.5 连接代词或副词引导的不定式作介词宾语

When at work, don't think *about what to do* when back at home.

在工作时，不要考虑回家后做什么。

We should learn some rules *on how to stop worrying*.

我们应学会有关如何停止担心的一些规则。

### 7.2.6 复合结构作介词宾语

a 介词后是名词或代词，然后接不定式。

Don't wait *for opportunity to knock*.

不要坐等机会上门。

b 介词后是名词或代词，然后接动名词。

Everything starts *with you making up your mind what you're going to do with your life*.

每件事情都开始于你下定决心如何对待生活。

We know the importance *of all family members working for the good of the family*.

我们知道所有家庭成员为了整个家庭的利益而工作的重要性。

### 7.2.7 从句作介词宾语

When you are fully engaged *in what you are doing*, you are happy.

当你完全投入正在做的事情，你就是幸福的。

If you have a plan, you can deal better *with whatever comes along*.

如果你有计划，你就能更好地对待所发生的任何事情。

How we treat each other is largely a product *of how we feel about each other*.

我们彼此对待的方式在很大程度上是我们彼此看待对方的结果。

## 7.3 介词短语的语法功能

介词和其宾语一起构成介词短语，在句中可以作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语和补语等。

### 7.3.1 介词短语作主语

*From words to deeds* is a great space.

语言和行动之间存在着巨大差距。

*From the sublime to the ridiculous* is but a step.

从伟大到荒谬仅一步之遥。

### 7.3.2 介词短语作宾语

介词短语有时可以作动词或其他介词的宾语。

A life isn't significant except *for its impact on other lives*.  
一个生命如果对别的生命没有影响，就无足轻重。

### 7.3.3 介词短语作表语

Beauty is *in the beholder's eye*.

情人眼里出西施。

The strength of a group is *in the will of the leader*.

团队的力量在于领导者的意志。

The wind is never *for the sailor who knows not to what port he is bound*.  
不清楚自己驶向哪个港口的水手永远不会一帆风顺。

### 7.3.4 介词短语作定语

介词短语可以置于名词之后，作定语，修饰名词。

There is no royal road *to learning*.

学无坦途。

Adversity will never destroy the person *with courage and faith*.

逆境打不垮有勇气和信念的人。

A friend *in need* is a friend indeed.

患难见真情。

Government *of the people, by the people, and for the people* shall not perish from the earth.

民有、民治、民享的政府将永世长存。

### 7.3.5 介词短语作状语

介词短语可以作状语，修饰动词、形容词或整个句子。

Time and tide wait *for no man*.

岁月不待人。

Hope *for the best* and prepare *for the worst*.

怀最好的希望，做最坏的准备。

Only a worm is free *from the worry of stumbling*.

只有虫子不必担忧跌倒。

Don't be afraid *of the enemies who attack you*. Be afraid *of the friends who flatter you*.

不必害怕敌人的攻击。应害怕的是朋友的奉承。

Men are alike *in their promises*. It is only *in their deeds* that they differ.  
许诺时人皆一样，行动时才见短长。

*Of all ideas*, none carries more weight than this: Change, before it's too late.

在所有观念中，最重要的是：趁为时尚早，做出改变。

### 7.3.6 介词短语作补语

作主语的补语：

Life can be compared *to a voyage*.

人生可以比作航海。

作宾语的补语：

A man should keep his friendship *in constant repair*.

一个人应不断地使友谊保持良好状态。

You can turn negative consequences *into positive rewards*.

你可以将消极的结果变作积极的报偿。

Never think yourself *above your business*.

千万不要认为自己大材小用。

## 7.4 介词的后置

有时，出于表达需要，介词位于其逻辑宾语的后面，形成介词后置的现象，常见于疑问句、被动语态、从句、不定式中。

见于疑问句：

What are you worrying *about*?

你在担心什么呢？

见于被动语态：

He is not laughed *at* that laughs at himself first.

先自嘲者不会见笑于人。

见于从句：

We all have possibilities we don't know *about*.

我们都具有自己不了解的潜力。

In the long run men hit only what they aim *at*.

长远看来，人们达到的只是他们的目标所向。

Always remember what you're good *at* and stick with it.

永远记住自己的一技之长，并坚持不懈。

见于不定式：

Everyone needs a set of principles to live *by*.

每个人都需要一套生活的准则。

Confidence is the foundation to build your life *upon*.

信心是成就人生的基础。

A mother is not a person to lean *on*, but a person to make leaning unnecessary.

母亲并不是赖以依靠的人，而是使依靠变得没有必要的人。

见于其他情况：

The world is a fine place and worth fighting *for*.

世界是个好的所在，值得为之奋斗。

The more things a man is ashamed *of*, the more respectable he is.

一个人感到惭愧的事情越多，他就越受人尊敬。

## 7.5 单一介词的用法

### 7.5.1 about

#### a 关于

Thinking positively *about* yourself improves your chance of success.

积极地看待自我可以提高成功的机会。

#### b 在……身上

One of the great things *about* work is that it can be a powerful tool.

工作本身的一个伟大之处在于它可以成为一个强有力的手段。

#### c 在……周围

walk about the fields 在田野四处走动

gather about the table 围桌而坐

#### d 从事于

Whoever is in a hurry shows that the thing he is *about* is too big for him.

凡是忙手忙脚的人说明他不胜任自己所从事的事情。

### 7.5.2 across

#### a 穿过，越过

The family unites us *across* all our faiths.

家庭把不同信仰的人联为一体。

#### b 在……对面

across the street 在街道对过

across the desk 在桌子对面

#### c 与……交叉

with her legs across each other 她两腿交叉

d 暂时与.....接触

come across 或 run across 偶然遇见，偶然发现

### 7.5.3 after

a (时间) 继.....之后

Everybody is wise *after* the event.

事过之后人人都变得聪明。

b (位置) 在.....后面

Shut the door *after* you. 请随手关门。

c (顺序) 跟在.....后面

*After* you. 您先请。

d (地位或重要性) 次于

Wealth comes *after* health.

财富不如健康重要。

e 追赶，追求

If you run *after* two hares, you will catch neither.

如果同时追赶两只野兔，你将会一只也抓不到。

f 依照，按照

name *after* 以.....的名字命名

g 模仿

model *after* 仿照.....制造 write *after* 模仿.....来写

### 7.5.4 against

a 逆向；违背；反对

The man who is swimming *against* the stream knows the strength of it.

逆向游泳的人知道潮流的力量。

We cannot control life, but we can struggle *against* it.

我们无法控制生活，但我们可以和它斗争。

b 对.....不利

A house divided *against* itself cannot stand.

家不和则不能自立。

c 以.....为竞争对手

Time is running *against* everybody.

时间在和每个人赛跑。

d 紧靠

lean *against* 斜靠着

e 以.....为防备或抵抗对象



insure against 对.....采取预防措施  
protect against 保护免受.....之害  
Lay up *against* a rainy day.  
要积存储备，以防雨天。（未雨绸缪。）

#### 7.5.5 around

##### a 在.....周围

Character is learned from the people *around* us.  
性格是从我们周围的人们那里学到的。

##### b 在.....各地

around the globe 在全球

##### c 绕过

Keep going—success is often just *around* the corner.  
坚持下去——成功往往即将到来。

#### 7.5.6 as

##### a 作为

As parents, we can teach our children to love people.  
作为父母，我们可以教孩子有爱人之心。  
Difficult circumstances serve *as* a textbook of life for people.  
困境可以作为人生的教科书。

##### b 当作

Accept change *as* part of your life.  
将变化接受为生活的一部分。  
Regard money *as* a resource.  
把金钱当作一种资源。  
Don't see work *as* a necessary evil.  
不要把工作看作既讨厌又不可或缺的东西。

##### c (用于比较句型) 像.....一样

Youth is as rich *as* the spring river.  
青春像春天的河流一样丰富。  
My mother is gentle *as* a dove and brave *as* a lioness.  
我的母亲像鸽子一样温柔，像母狮一般勇敢。

##### d 如同，好像

fight together *as* one man 团结奋战，如同一人

#### 7.5.7 at

a ( 地点 ) 在.....地方

The most important success is success *at* home.

最重要的成功是家庭的成功。

b ( 时间 ) 在.....时候

Do what you can do *at* present.

做好当前的事情。

Anyone who stops learning is old, whether *at* twenty or eighty.

任何人如果停止学习就老了，不论是二十岁还是八十岁。

c ( 原因 ) 因为

marvel *at* 对.....感到惊讶

be disappointed *at* 对.....感到失望

d ( 状态 ) 处于

*at* war 处在战争状态 *at* a standstill 处于停顿状态

the man *at* the wheel 驾驶员

e ( 方向 ) 朝着

Fortune knocks once *at* least *at* every man's gate.

命运至少光顾每人一次。

Snatch *at* today and trust as little as you can in tomorrow.

把握今天，尽可能不要相信明天。

Envy shoots *at* others and wounds herself.

妒忌射的是别人，伤的是自己。

f ( 速度、价格、数量等 ) 以.....，达.....

A thing you don't want is dear *at* any price.

不需要的东西，再便宜也昂贵。

g 按照，根据

*at* one's request 按照某人的要求

*at* one's invitation 应某人的邀请

h 在.....方面

be good *at* 善于 be bad *at* 不善于

be skilled *at* 在.....方面驾轻就熟 be adept *at* 擅长

excel *at* 善于

A man can succeed *at* almost anything for which he has unlimited enthusiasm.

一个人能够在自己具有无限热情的几乎任何事情方面获得成功。

i 以.....方式，通过一次.....动作

Clever people should be challenged *at* every step.

明智的人每一步都应该接受挑战。

At the touch of love, everyone becomes a poet.

在爱情的激发下，每个人都可以成为诗人。

An oak is not felled *at* one stroke.

一斧砍不倒大橡树。（伟业非一时之功。）

#### 7.5.8 before

a (时间) 在.....之前

Pride goes *before* a fall.

骄者必败。

b (位置) 在.....前面，在.....面前

*Before* difficulties, we have only one choice: try to overcome them.

在困难面前，我们只有一个选择：努力去克服。

c (顺序、重要性等) 先于

The dictionary is the only place where success comes *before* work.

词典是唯一“成功”先于“工作”的地方。

True men choose death *before* dishonor.

大丈夫可杀不可辱。

*Before* everything else, getting ready is the secret of success.

比其他因素都重要，做好准备是成功的秘诀。

#### 7.5.9 behind

a 在.....背后

Sacrifice lies *behind* every success.

每次成功的背后都有所牺牲。

b 落后于

behind the country in economy 在经济上落后于该国

c 晚于

behind schedule 晚于计划 behind time 落后

d 支持

Your willpower is always *behind* you.

你的意志力永远在支持你。

#### 7.5.10 beyond

a 在.....另一边

beyond the river 在河对岸

b 超越

A winner must go *beyond* himself.

胜者必须超越自我。

c 除.....以外，别无

Given a choice *beyond* love and physical attractiveness, I prefer to marry a woman of ability.

除了爱情和外表的美丽，如果有选择，我宁愿娶一位精明强干的女人。

d (能力、理解力等) 非.....所及

No problem of human destiny is *beyond* human beings.

人类命运的问题没有人类所不能解决的。

### 7.5.11 by

a 在.....旁边

by the river 在河边 by the window 在窗户旁

b 到.....为止

by now 到目前为止

c 在.....时候

by day 在白天 by night 在夜间

What is done *by* night appears *by* day.

夜里做的事情白天终会暴露。

d (表示动作发出者或起作用的事物) 由，被

Hatred is never ended *by* hatred, but *by* love.

恨绝不会由恨结束，而是由爱终结。

e 表示交通或通讯工具

go by taxi 打出租 travel by air 乘飞机 call by phone 打电话

f 通过，沿着，经由，从.....旁边

Different people get to places *by* different paths.

不同的人走不同的道路到达终点。

g (表示方式) 凭借

Great works are performed not *by* strength but *by* perseverance.

伟大作品的完成不是凭借力量，而是依靠毅力。

If you're going to ask people to respect your authority, you'll need to lead *by* example.

如果要人们尊重你的权威，需要以身作则地来领导。

A great man shows his greatness *by* the way he treats little men.

伟大人物通过对待小人物的方式显示其伟大之处。

h 根据，按照

abide by 遵守 go by 依据

A man is known *by* the company he keeps.

观其友，知其人。

Life is measured *by* thought and action, not *by* time.

生命是根据思想和行动来衡量的，而不是按照时间来衡量的。

i (表示原因) 由于

*by accident* 偶然地      *by chance* 偶然地

*by mistake* 由于失误

j (表示连续或反复) 一个接一个

*day by day* 一天天地      *step by step* 一步一步地

Happiness is built in one's life *bit by bit*.

生活中的幸福是一点一滴建立起来的。

*Little by little* we add to our store of life experience.

我们一点点地增加生活经验的积累。

k就(职业、出生、本性等)来说

*by birth* 论出身 *by descent* 论血统

*by name* 名叫 *by nature* 本质上来说

*by profession* 论职业 *by training* 论专业

*by temperament* 从气质方面来说

We are spiritual *by* our nature.

本性上来说我们是精神层面的。

A rose *by* any other name would smell as sweet.

玫瑰如果不叫玫瑰，芬芳会依然如故。

l表示动作所触及的身体部位

An ox is taken *by* the horns, and a man *by* the tongue.

牛因犄角被擒，人因口舌遭殃。

m表示差距或变化幅度

miss the plane *by* fifteen minutes 差十五分钟没赶上飞机

increase *by* fifty percent 增长百分之五十

## 7.5.12 down

a 在.....下面，向.....下面

It is easier to run *down* the hill than to go up.

下山容易上山难。

b 顺着，沿着

Curiosity keeps leading us *down* new paths.

好奇心不断引导我们沿着新路走下去。

c 在.....下游，向.....下游

*down* the river 顺河而下

### 7.5.13 for

#### a (表示目的) 为了

Let's fight *for* our happiness.

让我们为幸福而奋斗。

#### b (表示用途) 供, 用于

We have no time *for* regrets.

我们没有时间用于懊悔。

Your attitude is a powerful tool *for* positive action.

你的态度是积极行动的强大工具。

Heaven has given you a mind *for* judging truth and error. Use it.

上天赐给你一个用于判断真理和谬误的头脑。那就运用它吧。

#### c 表示对象

Self-knowledge is the basis *for* character.

自知之明是性格的基础。

Love is respect *for* the dignity of an individual.

爱就是对个人尊严的尊重。

#### d (表示方向) 去往

leave *for* 动身前往    make *for* 走向    be headed *for* 去往

#### e 取代; 代表

There is no substitute *for* work.

工作是无可替代的。

A is *for* action and L is *for* learning.

A代表行动, L代表学习。

#### f 表示赞同、支持, 有利于

argue *for* 主张    vote *for* 投.....的票

#### g 以.....为交换; 以.....为代价

Honor is the reward *for* what you give.

荣誉是对付出的奖赏。

Doing good for others is just the rent you pay *for* living on this earth.

为别人做好事不过是你为活于世上所付出的租费。

#### h 表示寻找或期待的目标

look *for* 寻找    search *for* 搜寻    wait *for* 等候

When you are unfortunate, it is necessary to look *for* friends.

当你遇到不幸时, 有必要去寻找朋友。

#### i 因为

A thing is bigger *for* being shared.

物因共享而变大。

Be grateful *for* whatever you have.

要感激自己所拥有的东西。

One must never, *for* whatever reason, turn his back on life.

无论什么原因，一个人决不能背弃生活。

j 作为.....的原因

What are the reasons *for* choosing teaching as a career?

之所以选择教书为职业的原因是什么呢？

There are many reasons *for* working outside the home.

在家庭以外工作有诸多原因。

k 当作

Often we mistake busyness *for* success.

我们经常把忙碌误看作成功。

l 对.....来说

Beginning is the hardest *for* everything.

万事开头难。

Nothing in the world is difficult *for* one who sets his mind to it.

世上无难事，只怕有心人。

m (表示时间、距离等) 长达

Get rid of bad habits once and *for* all.

要永远地改掉坏习惯。

Mother's example of never giving up gives me courage *for* the rest of my life.

母亲永不放弃的榜样给了我一生的勇气。

n 与名词或代词一起使用，后接动词不定式，构成短语，相当于名词或状语。

*For* things to change, you've got to change.

要让事情改变，你必须做出改变。（作目的状语）

It is possible *for* everybody to be successful.

每个人都有可能成功。（作主语）

7.5.14 from

a 从.....开始，始于

*From* our first moments, mothers are our best teachers and most selfless friends.

自从我们的人生之初，母亲就是我们最好的老师和最无私的朋友。

To do an important thing, one must be careful *from* the beginning to the end.

举大事者慎其始终。

b 来自于，出自

A friend you buy with presents will be bought *from* you.

你用礼物收买的朋友也会从你这里被人收买。

Experience is a wonderful teacher if you learn *from* it.

如果从中加以借鉴，经验则是非常好的老师。

c 根据

Never judge a thing only *from* its appearance.

评判事物绝不能仅凭外表。

d 因为，由于

People tend to die *from* worry.

人们往往死于担忧。

Good friends who are suffering *from* hardship know how to help and love each other.

正处于困境的好朋友知道如何互助互爱。

e (表示观察方位) 从

Try to see things *from* the other person's point of view.

设法从他人的角度去看待事物。

f (表示情况或状态的改变) 从

recover from 从.....中康复

g 表示离开、脱离

Being free *from* the fear of failure is a great thing.

不惧失败是一件了不起的事情。

Learning must offer an escape *from* poverty.

学习一定可以摆脱贫困。

h 表示阻止、排斥

Friendship is a big tree which shelters you *from* bad weather.

友谊是一株大树，可以为你遮蔽风雨。

i 表示区别

tell right from wrong 辨别是非    be different from 不同于

7.5.15 in

a 表示地点

A healthy mind is *in* a healthy body.

健全的精神寓于健康的体魄。

A bird *in* the hand is worth two *in* the bush.

一鸟在手胜过二鸟在林。



*In Rome, do as the Romans do.*

入乡随俗。

*In every country, knowledge is the most reliable basis for public happiness.*

在每个国家，知识都是公众幸福最可靠的基础。

b 表示时间

Friends are sunshine *in* life.

朋友是生活中的阳光。

Study the past ; live *in* the present.

研究过往；活在当下。

*In* doing we learn.

我们边实践边学习。

Mistakes are the necessary steps *in* the learning process.

在学习过程中，犯错误是必要的步骤。

c 表示领域、范围

The difference between a successful man and others is *in* the exercise of will.

成功人士和别人的区别在于意志的运用。

A man who belittles another does not belong *in* the top level of management.

贬低别人的人不适合做高层管理。

Leadership lies *in* sacrifice, love and fearlessness.

领导才能在于牺牲、爱和无畏。

d 表示状态或情况

The strong are able to strive *in* the storm of fate.

强者能够在人生的风暴中奋争。

e 从事于

*in* business 经商    *in* politics 从政

f 表示表达方式

A philosopher summed life up *in* eight words: "Our life is what our thoughts make it."

有位哲学家用八个字概括了生活：“生活是思维使之然。”

g 表示穿着、装饰

Misfortune might be a blessing *in* disguise.

不幸可能是披着伪装的好事。

It is better to be clothed *in* rags than to be clothed with shame.

衣衫褴褛胜于蒙受耻辱。

h 表示动作的对象

The future belongs to those who believe *in* the beauty of their dreams.  
未来属于那些坚信美好梦想的人。

i 表示动作的方向或结果

end in 以.....告终 result in 导致

j 表示性质

*In* man there is nothing great but mind.  
人的伟大之处莫过于思想。

Mental toughness is the most important element *in* the character of a successful person.

坚忍不拔是成功人士性格中最为重要的因素。

k表示情感或目的

in surprise 惊讶地 in doubt 困惑地

in return 作为回报 in fun 为了好玩

l表示数量或比例关系

in full force 全体地 in large numbers 大量地

in thousands 成千上万地 in twos and threes 三两成群地

one in ten 十分之一 one in a thousand 千分之一

## 7.5.16 of

a ( 表示从属关系 ) .....的

The most terrible enemy is the lack *of* strong faith.

最可怕的敌人是缺乏强大的信念。

Hardship is the teacher *of* life.

困难是人生之师。

Time is the only treasure *of* man.

时光是人唯一的财富。

A mistake is simply another way *of* doing things.

犯错误不过是另一种做事的方式。

b 关于

complain *of* 抱怨 dream *of* 梦见

inform...*of* 通知 remind...*of* 提醒

Men talk *of* killing time, while time quietly kills them.

人们谈论着如何消磨时光，而时光在悄然无声地销蚀着人们的生命。

Everyone complains *of* his memory, and nobody complains *of* his judgment.

每个人都抱怨自己的记忆力，却没有谁抱怨自己的判断力。

c 因为，由于

die of 死于 of necessity 出于必要

d 表示同位关系

the city of Rome 罗马城 the age of ten 十岁

e 表示材料或构成

Life is made of time.

生命是由时间构成的。

Forgiveness makes friends of enemies.

谅解可以化敌为友。

To keep silent when they should protest makes cowards of men.

当应该抗议时却保持沉默使人们变成了胆小鬼。

f 表示性质或状况

Youth is full of energy of importance.

青春充满重要的能量。

People of real capability are kind, frank and open-minded.

具有真正能力的人善良、坦诚、心胸开阔。

g 表示来源

Great achievement is usually born of great sacrifice.

伟大的成就通常源自于重大的牺牲。

Don't demand too much of love and friendship.

不要对爱情和友谊要求过多。

You have to expect things of yourself before you can do them.

对自己有所期望才能有所作为。

h 表示去除、剥夺

free...of 解脱 rob...of 抢劫

deprive...of 剥夺 cure...of 治愈

relieve...of 解除 rid...of 摆脱

get rid of 摆脱 let go of 放弃

wash one's hands of 洗手不干（某事）

Friendship relieves one of one's sorrow.

友谊能解除人的伤痛。

If you allow yourself to be forgiving, you'll be able to let go of anger and hurt.

如果让自己宽容大度，你就能够不惹自己生气，不招致伤害。

i 表示范围

Of two evils choose the least.

两害相权取其轻。

*Of all the possessions of this life, fame is the noblest.*

在此生所有财产之中，名誉是最高尚的。

### 7.5.17 on

#### a 在.....上面

Love *on* the surface is false.

浮于表面的爱是虚假的。

#### b (表示地点) 在某处

*on campus* 在校园里 *on the outskirts* 在郊区

*on the farm* 在农场 *on earth* 世界上

*On earth there is nothing great but man.*

世上最伟大的是人类。

#### c 表示动作对象

focus *on* 集中于 keep an eye *on* 照看；密切注意

look down *on* 看不起 cut back *on* 减少

Concentrate *on* what you do well, and do it better than anybody else.

专注于自己的一技之长，并且做到最好。

#### d 表示依靠，根据，以.....为基础

Love is based *on* a common foundation.

爱情建立在共同的基础之上。

Fools act *on* imagination without knowledge.

蠢人无知，仅凭想象行事。

#### e 在从事，处于某种状态

*on duty* 在值班 *on business* 在出差

*on holiday* 在度假 *on strike* 在罢工

*on a visit* 在访问 *on the phone* 在打电话

#### f 表示具体的某一天

*on Saturday* 在周六 *on Christmas* 在圣诞节当天

#### g 关于

comment *on* 评论 offer advice *on* 提供关于.....的建议

#### h 在.....旁边，靠近，沿着

*on the river* 在河边 *on one's right* 在某人右侧

*on the border* 边境

#### i (表示方向) 朝，向

smile *on* sb. 朝着某人微笑 look *on* the street 朝向大街

#### j 一.....就

on arrival一到达 on graduation一毕业

on receipt一收到 on sight一看见

On going out from home, take a look at the color of the sky.  
出门看天色。

k以.....方式

on foot 步行 on TV 通过电视

on the radio 通过收音机 on the telephone 通过电话

7.5.18 over

a 在.....上方

over one's head 在某人脑袋的上方

b 表示覆盖其上

throw a sheet over the bed 在床上铺一条床单

c (表示地位) 高于

preside over the meeting 主持会议

rule over the country 统治国家

Nothing external to you has any power *over* you.

身外之物没有什么能够控制你。

d (数量、程度) 超过

over three hundred people 三百多人

The hardest victory is the victory *over* self.

最难取得的胜利是超越自己的胜利。

Greatness lives in one who triumphs equally *over* defeat and victory.

同时战胜失败和成功的人才是不平凡的。

e 优先于

You can choose a positive attitude *over* a negative one.

在积极的态度和消极的态度之间，你可以选择前者。

f 越过

If there's a roadblock, jump *over* it.

如果遇到路障，跳越过去。

g 遍及，从一端到另一端

all over the world 全世界范围 over distances 跨越长距离

We can find friends all *over* the world.

全世界都能找到我们的朋友。

h 在.....期间

Over the long term, a company cannot win at the expense of its business partners.

长远来看，一家公司不能以牺牲商业伙伴为代价取胜。

Our goal will not be achieved overnight, but it can come *over* time.

我们的目标不会一夜之间达到，但经过一定时间可以实现。

i 关于

Let others argue *over* small things, but not you.

不要计较细枝末节，让别人这样去做吧。

j 因为，由于

Don't cry *over* spilt milk.

牛奶已洒，不必哭泣。（不要后悔过去。）

k 通过

*over* the phone 通过电话 *over* the radio 通过广播

l 在做.....的时候

talk *over* dinner 边吃边谈

fall asleep *over* a book 看书时睡着了

## 7.5.19 through

a 穿过

push *through* the crowd 穿过人群

fly *through* the air 在空中飞翔

Great people climb to the peak of glory only after they pass *through* the desert.

伟大的人物只有在穿越荒沙大漠之后才能登上辉煌的顶峰。

b 普及

travel *through* the country 走遍全国

c 从头至尾

*through* the night 通宵

work Monday *through* Saturday 从周一工作到周六

The finest steel has to go *through* the hottest fire.

最精良的钢铁必须历经最炙热火焰的锻造。

d 凭借，通过

solve the crisis *through* peaceful means 通过和平手段解决危机

*Through* your example, you can teach your children the nobility of work.

通过以身作则，可以让自己的孩子认识到工作的崇高。

Only *through* struggles can we win happiness.

只有通过奋斗才能赢得幸福。

e 透过

We should see the world *through* rose-colored glasses.

我们应该乐观地看待世界。

f 因为

through neglect 由于疏忽

7.5.20 to

a 表示方向

All roads lead *to* Rome.

条条大道通罗马。

There is no royal road *to* learning.

学无坦途。

b 表示从属关系

Only today really belongs *to* you.

只有今天真正属于你。

Love is the answer *to* everything.

爱是所有问题的答案。

Ideal books are the key *to* wisdom.

理想的书籍是智慧的钥匙。

c 表示对比、比较关系

be second to none 无与伦比 be true to life 非常逼真

be superior to that one 比那个好 prefer A to B 和B相比，更喜欢A

Life may be compared *to* voyage.

可以将人生比作海上航行。

Health without wealth is preferable *to* wealth without health.

有健康，没有财富也比有财富而没有健康更可取。

d 表示动作对象

listen to 倾听 write to 给.....写信

Bad books do harm *to* you.

坏书害人。

I attach great value *to* the experience of struggling.

我非常重视由奋斗得来的经验。

e 表示反应

object to 反对 adjust to 适应

react to 对.....做出反应 reply to 答复

When things go bad, we should rise *to* the occasion.

当情况不如意时，我们应起而应变。

A leader must be sensitive *to* the emotional needs of others.

领导者必须对他人的情感需要保持敏感。

f 表示关联

Praise is like sunlight *to* the human spirit.

赞美就像人类精神的阳光。

g 表示伴随

dance to the music 随着音乐起舞

sing to the accompaniment 跟着伴奏歌唱

h 表示目的

come to one's rescue 救助某人

drink to one's health 为某人的健康干杯

i 表示状态或情况的转变

go to sleep 入睡 rise to power 掌权

j 表示结果

to no purpose 徒劳 to one's surprise 令某人惊讶的是

k 达到.....程度

be accurate to the second 精确到秒 be wet to the skin 湿透

be scared to death 被吓得要死

fight to the last drop of blood 战斗到最后一滴鲜血

A man who is trained *to* his capacity will gain confidence.

训练有素的人会有自信。

l (表示时间) 直到

from spring to autumn 从春到秋 to this day 直到今天

m 根据, 按照, 符合

to my mind 依我看 to one's knowledge 据某人所知

to one's liking 根据某人的爱好

7.5.21 under

a 在.....下面

The foolish person seeks happiness in the distance; the wise grow it *under* their feet.

愚蠢的人追求遥不可及的幸福; 明智的人在脚下经营幸福。

b 少于, 不足

under one hundred people 不足一百人 under age 不够年龄

c (地位) 低于

A leader should be kind to those *under* him.

领导者应善待手下人。

d 表示受到



under attack 受到攻击 under threat 受到威胁

You can even excel *under* adverse conditions.

在逆境之下，你也可以出类拔萃。

*Under* the influence of good books, all the stupid things will melt away.

有了好书的影响，一切愚昧都将冰消雪释。

The measure of a man is the way he bears up *under* misfortune.

衡量一个人的标准是看他担负不幸的方式。

When someone is *under* pressure, a smile can help him realize that all is not hopeless.

当一个人面对压力时，一个微笑会帮他意识到并非一切都失去了希望。

e 在进行之中

under discussion 在讨论之中 under way 在进展之中

under study 在研究之中 under construction 在建设之中

f 假借

under an assumed name 隐姓埋名

under the mask of friendship 假借朋友之名

## 7.5.22 with

a 和.....一起

play with children 和孩子们一同玩耍

go with a friend 和朋友一起去

b 带有，具有

Nothing on earth can help the man *with* the wrong attitude.

世上没有什么能帮助态度错误的人。

c 表示对象

fight with fate 和命运抗争

break with the past 和过去决裂

A strong man will struggle *with* a storm of fate.

意志坚强者愿与命运的风暴相斗争。

d 随着

One must not hesitate to change *with* the times.

一个人必须毫不犹豫地随时代而改变。

e 表示伴随状态

The life of man is like a long journey *with* a heavy load on the back.

人的生活就像漫长的旅途，背上担负着沉重的负担。

f 使用

Kill two birds *with* one stone.  
一石二鸟。

Light tomorrow *with* today.  
用今天点亮明天。

g 关于，对于，就.....来说

To be a leader, you must be honest *with* yourself.  
要做一位领导者，必须对自己诚实。

h 表示行为方式

*with* certainty 肯定地 *with* difficulty 费力地  
*with* effort 努力地 *with* ease 自如地

i 因为

shake *with* fright 因害怕而发抖  
be mad *with* joy 高兴得发狂

## 7.6 短语介词

### 7.6.1 两个单词构成的短语介词

*according to* 根据 *ahead of* 在.....前面

*along with* 和.....一起 *apart from* 除了.....以外，还有或别无

*aside from* 除.....以外，还有或别无 *as for* 至于

*as to* 关于 *away from* 离开

*because of* 因为 *but for* 如果没有，要不是因为

*due to* 因为 *for all* 尽管

*instead of* 代替；而不是 *irrespective of* 不管，不顾

*next to* 紧挨着；仅次于 *out of* 从.....之中

*owing to* 因为 *prior to* 在.....以前

*save for* 除了.....以外，别无 *short of* 除了

*thanks to* 因为 *together with* 和.....一起

*up to* 一直到；多达；胜任的；取决于 *up until* (或*up till*) 一直到

*Apart from* setting a good example, there's no better way to teach children.

除了以身作则，教育孩子没有更好的方法。

Don't make a mountain *out of* a molehill.

不要小题大做。

*For all* your success, you should try to keep the common touch.

即使成功，也应努力保持平常的作风。

Millionaires' success is usually *due to* discipline.

百万富翁们的成功通常是因为严于律已。

If it is to be, it is *up to me* .

做事舍我其谁。

If you cannot win, make the one *ahead of* you break the record.

如果不能取胜，就让你前面的对手打破记录。

### 7.6.2 三个单词构成的短语介词

as well as 除了.....以外，还有 at home with 熟悉，精通

at odds with 与.....不和；与.....不相称 at peace with 与.....和平相处

at times of 在.....时候 at variance with 与.....不一致

at war with 与.....交战；与.....不和 by courtesy of 蒙.....提供

by dint of 凭借 by force of 凭借；由于

by means of 借助于 by order of 奉.....之命

by reason of 由于 by virtue of 凭借；由于

by way of 经由；通过.....方法 for fear of 因为害怕；以防

for lack of 因为缺乏 for want of 因为缺乏

in accordance with 按照

in acknowledgement of 作为对.....的感谢

in addition to 除了.....以外，还有 in agreement with 与.....意见一致

in aid of 为了帮助 in alignment with 与.....联合

in answer to 作为对.....的回答 in anticipation of 期待着

in attendance on 护理，照料 in awe of 敬畏

in case of 如果发生 in charge of 管理，负责

in collision with 和.....碰撞；和.....冲突 in combination with 与.....结合

in command of 指挥 in common with 与.....有共同之处

in company with 与.....一起 in comparison with 与.....比较

in compensation for 作为.....的赔偿 in compliance with 按照

in conflict with 与.....不一致 in conformity with 按照；与.....一致

in conjunction with 与.....协力；连同 in connection with 在.....一起；关于

in consequence of 由于 in consideration of 考虑到

in contact with 与.....接触，与.....联系 in contrast with (或to) 与.....对比

in control of 控制 in danger of 有.....危险

in default of 因缺乏 in defence of 保卫  
in defiance of 违抗；无视 in excess of 超过  
in exchange for 作为.....的交换 in excuse of 作为.....的辩解  
in expectation of 预计；期待 in face of 在.....面前；不顾  
in favor of 赞同，支持；有利于 in fear of 担心  
in front of 在.....面前  
in honor of 向.....表示敬意；为纪念；为庆祝  
in imitation of 模仿 in justice to 对.....作应有的评价  
in keep with 与.....一致，与.....协调  
in league with 与.....联合；与.....勾结  
in lieu of 替代 in love with 爱上  
in matters of 在.....方面 in memory of 纪念  
in mistake for 误当作 in need of 需要  
in obedience to 遵照 in opposition to 反对；反抗  
in order of 按.....次序 in payment for 支付  
in peril of 冒丧失.....的危险 in place of 代替  
in possession of 拥有 in praise of 赞美，歌颂  
in proof of 证明  
in proportion to 和.....成比例，与.....相称  
in pursuit of 追赶；追求 in quest of 寻找  
in readiness for 准备好 in recognition of 作为.....的酬劳  
in regard of (或to) 关于 in relation to 关于；和.....相比  
in remembrance of 纪念 in respect of (或to) 关于  
in response to 作为对.....的答复或反应 in return for 作为对.....的  
回报  
in revenge for 作为报复 in search of 寻找  
in security for 作为.....的担保或保证 in spite of 不顾，不管  
in succession to 接替；继承 in support of 支持  
in terms of 按照；从.....方面来说 in time for 及时赶上  
in token of 作为.....的表示，证物 in touch with 与.....接触或联系  
in tune with 与.....一致 in view of 考虑到；由于  
in want of 需要；缺少 on account of 由于  
on behalf of 代表；为了 on receipt of 一收到  
on top of 在.....上面；对.....完全掌握；还有  
with reference to 关于 with regard to 关于  
with relevance to 关于 with respect to 关于  
Great achievements are *in proportion to* hard work.

伟大的成就和辛勤的工作是成正比的。

The hero is brave in deeds *as well as* words.

英雄不仅在口头上，而且在行动中大胆无畏。

Doubt often makes us lose the possible victory *for fear of* trying.

疑虑往往让我们因为不敢尝试而丧失可能的胜利。

If people make friends *by way of* money, they will separate when money is gone.

以利交者，利穷则散。

A man travels the world over *in search of* what he needs and returns home to find it.

一个人走遍世界去找寻自己需要的东西，结果归来时却发现它就在家中。

The ultimate measure of a man is where he stands *at times of* challenge and controversy.

评判一个人的最终标准是看他在出现挑战和争议之时立场如何。

*In matters of* style, swim with the current; *in matters of* principle, stand like a rock.

在风度方面，要顺流而动；在原则方面，却要坚如磐石。

### 7.6.3 四个单词构成的短语介词

as a result of 由于 at the bottom of 是.....的根源

at the center of 在.....的中心 at the cost of 以.....为代价

at the end of 在.....的最后

at the expense of 由.....付费；以.....为代价

at the mercy of 任凭.....的摆布 at the point of 正要.....的时候

at the rate of 按.....比例；以.....速度 at the risk of 冒.....风险

at the sight of 一看见 at the thought of 一想到

at the time of 在.....时候 at the top of 在.....的顶部；居.....首位

by the grace of 承蒙 by the name of 名叫

for the benefit of 为了.....的利益 for the good of 为了.....的利益

for the love of 为了.....起见 for the purpose of 为了.....目的

for the sake of 为了 in the absence of 没有

in the act of 正在.....的时候 in the case of 就.....来说

in the company of 由.....陪伴

in the course of 在.....期间，在.....过程之中

in the custody of 托.....保管 in the direction of 朝.....方向

in the employ of 受雇于 in the event of 如果.....发生

in the eyes of 在.....的眼里 in the face of 在.....面前；不顾  
in the form of 用.....形式 in the habit of 有.....习惯  
in the light of 按照，根据  
in the matter of 在.....方面，就.....而论  
in the middle of 在.....中间；正忙于  
in the midst of 在.....之中；正当.....时候  
in no mood for 不想.....，无意..... in the mood for 想.....  
in the name of 以.....名义；为了；凭 in the opinion of 在.....看来  
in the person of 以.....身份；名叫 in the possession of 为.....所有  
in the presence of 在.....面前 in the service of 为.....工作  
in the thick of 在.....正起劲时  
in the wake of 在.....之后；作为.....结果  
on the basis of 以.....为基础 on the brink of 将要，即将  
on the eve of 在.....前夕 on the ground of 根据，以.....为理由  
on the occasion of 在.....的时候 on the part of 就.....而言  
on the threshold of 即将 on the verge of 濒于  
on a visit to 看望；访问，参观 on the watch for 提防；守候  
out of favor with 失宠 out of patience with 对.....失去耐心  
out of pity for 出于对.....的同情 out of proportion to 与.....不成比例  
out of touch with 和.....失去联系 to the accompaniment of 伴着，随着  
to the best of 竭尽..... to the satisfaction of 令.....满意  
to the surprise of 令.....惊奇 to the tune of 达.....之多  
under the auspices of 在.....的支持或赞助之下  
under the cover of 在.....的掩护下  
under (或in) the disguise of 以.....为借口  
under the protection of 在.....的保护下  
under the rule of 在.....的统治下  
with the exception of 除.....之外，别无  
with an eye to 着眼于，考虑到  
with a view to 为了  
within the bounds of 在.....限度之内  
without the knowledge of 在.....不知道的情况下  
We should be cheerful *in the midst of* challenge.  
在身处挑战时我们应保持乐观。  
Don't sit down to wait *on the threshold of* victory.

胜利即将到来之际，不要坐下来等待。

No man is justified in doing evil *on the ground of expediency*.

以自身利害关系为理由而做坏事，谁也不能被谅解。

*In the absence of* confidence, fear and worry take control.

没有信心，担心和忧虑就会占上风。

The living of every flatterer is *at the expense of* sacrifice of those flattered.

每位奉承者的生活都是以牺牲被奉承者为代价的。

The most serious mistake of one person is to pursue the interests *at the cost of* his health.

一个人最严重的错误就是以自身健康为代价去追求利益。

## 7.7 由介词+名词构成的短语

主要用作状语，有些也用作表语或后置定语。

### 7.7.1 介词in和名词构成的短语

in abundance 大量的，丰富的 in addition 另外

in advance 事先 in comparison 相比之下

in conclusion 综上所述，总之 in consequence 因此，结果

in contrast 对比而言 in control 得到控制

in danger 在危险中 in debt 负债

in demand 有需要，有销路 in depth 深入

in detail 详细 in disguise 伪装

in effect 实际上；生效的 in excess 过度

in excitement 兴奋 in fact 事实上

in hand 现有的，手头的 in isolation 孤立

in love 在恋爱中 in order 整齐；正常

in part 部分地 in person 亲自；当面

in place 适当；在恰当位置上 in point 恰当的

in practice 在实践中 in progress 在进行中

in question 在讨论中的 in reality 实际上

in return 作为回报 in sight 看得见

in silence 沉默，静静地 in step 合拍；齐步

in surprise 惊讶地 in theory 在理论上

in time 及时；经过一段时间 in triumph 得意洋洋

in turn 依次地 in wonder 惊奇地

in a hurry 急急忙忙 in a nutshell 概括来讲

in a row 连续 in a sense 在某种意义上  
in a way 在某种意义上 in a word 总而言之  
in any case 无论如何 in no case 决不  
in no time 立刻 in no way 决不  
in other words 换言之 in the dark 在暗处; 蒙在鼓里; 暗中  
in the distance 在远处 in the end 在最后  
in the future 在未来 in the meantime 在此期间; 同时  
in the final analysis 归根结底 in the long run 长远来看  
Delay is a thief, waiting *in disguise* to rob you of your hopes and dreams.  
拖延是窃贼, 伪装起来等待着夺走你的希望和梦想。  
Correct your friend's mistakes *in person*, and praise his advantages behind his back.  
当面纠正朋友的错误, 背后称赞他的优点。  
*In the final analysis*, the one quality that all successful people have is the ability to take on responsibility.  
归根结底, 所有成功人士具有的一个素质就是能够承担责任。

### 7.7.2 介词on和名词构成的短语

on average 平均来说 on board 在船、车、飞机上  
on business 因公, 有事 on credit 赊账  
on demand 一经要求 on display 展览, 陈列  
on duty 在值班 on earth 在世上  
on fire 着火; 热烈的 on foot 步行  
on guard 警惕 on hand 现有, 在手头  
on holiday 在度假 on occasions 有时  
on purpose 故意地 on sale 廉价出售; 出售  
on schedule 准时, 按计划 on strike 在罢工  
on time 按时 on trial 在受审; 在试用  
on no account 决不 on second thoughts 经过再次考虑  
on the contrary 相反 on the decline 在衰退, 在下降  
on the mend 在好转 on the telephone 在打电话  
on the rise 在增长 on the run 在奔忙; 在逃  
on the spot 在场; 立即 on the way 在路上  
on the whole 总体看来 on a large (small) scale 大规模或小规模  
on the spur of the moment 一时冲动之下  
The most powerful weapon is the human soul *on fire*.



最强大的武器是人热情似火的精神。

Adversity in the workplace is *on the rise*.

职场的逆境在增加。

### 7.7.3 介词at和名词构成的短语

at ease 放松，自在 at fault 有过错；有故障

at hand 在手头；即将发生 at heart 本质上，内心里

at home 在家里；不拘束 at intervals 每隔一段时间

at leisure 有空 at length 最终；详细地

at liberty 自由；有空的；失业的 at odds 不和，意见不同；不相称

at peace 处于和平、平静状态 at play 在玩耍

at random 胡乱地；随机地 at sea 在海上；茫然

at times 有时 at war 处于战争状态；不和

at will 随意 at work 在工作；在起作用

at a distance 有相当距离 at a loss 茫然；亏本地

at a stretch 不停地，一口气地 at a time 每次

at all costs 不惜任何代价 at all events 不管怎样，无论如何

at any rate 不管怎样，无论如何 at every opportunity 利用一切机会

at one's disposal 供某人使用；由某人支配

at one stroke 一下子，一举 at first sight 乍看起来；一见之下

at the moment 此刻 at the wheel 在驾驶；掌管

at the first opportunity 一有机会

Books are advisors *at hand*.

书籍是身边的顾问。

Reading will make you live *at ease*.

阅读使你生活轻松。

“Never accept second best,” she tells her daughter *at every opportunity*.

“决不要接受第二名，”她利用一切机会告诉女儿。

### 7.7.4 介词by和名词构成的短语

by accident 偶然 by birth 在血统上；天生地

by chance 偶然 by choice 出于自己的选择

by contrast 对比而言 by day 在白天

by degrees 逐渐地 by education 按教育

by far 修饰比较级或最高级，用于加强语气

by hand 用手工，用人工 by luck 侥幸

by mistake 错误地 by nature 天生地

by night 在夜晚 by stages 逐步地  
by turns 轮流地 by all accounts 据各种说法  
by all means 一定；当然可以 by any chance 万一；也许  
by no means 决不 by the way 顺便说一下  
by leaps and bounds 突飞猛进地 by trial and error 通过反复试验或尝试

Affairs that are done *by due degrees* are soon ended.

按部就班地做事情很快就完成。

Knowledge advances *by steps* and not *by leaps*.

知识的获取应循序渐进，不能突飞猛进。

*By birth and by education* Jefferson belonged to the highest social class, yet he went out of his way to talk with gardeners, servants, and waiters.

按出身和所受的教育，杰斐逊均属于最高的社会阶层，但他却主动跟园丁、仆人和侍者攀谈。

#### 7.7.5 介词beyond和名词构成的短语

beyond bearing 难以忍受 beyond belief 难以置信  
beyond control 无法控制 beyond description 难以形容  
beyond dispute 无可置疑 beyond doubt 毫无疑问  
beyond measure 无法估量 beyond price 无价的  
beyond question 毫无疑问 beyond reach 达不到  
beyond recovery 无法康复 beyond remedy 不可救药  
beyond words 难以形容 beyond repair 无法修复；无法弥补

Good advice is *beyond price*.

忠告是无价的。

Good friends make your life joyful and rich *beyond measure*.

好友令生活无比快乐和丰富。

*Beyond doubt*, the biggest problem you and I have to deal with is choosing the right thoughts.

毫无疑问，你我必须解决的最大问题是选择正确的思维。

#### 7.7.6 介词out of和名词构成的短语

out of action 不再运转 out of breath 喘不过气  
out of control 失去控制 out of curiosity 出于好奇  
out of danger 脱离危险 out of date 过时的  
out of doors 在户外 out of existence 灭绝

out of fashion 不合时尚 out of favor 失宠；不受欢迎  
 out of fear 出于害怕 out of focus 焦点不准；模糊不清  
 out of hand 无法控制；立即 out of humor 心情不好  
 out of luck 运气不好  
 out of order 次序颠倒；出故障；身体不好  
 out of patience 失去耐心  
 out of place 不在合适的位置上；不合时宜  
 out of practice 荒疏 out of print 绝版  
 out of reach 够不着 out of season 不当时令  
 out of service 退役；辞职；已不能使用 out of shape 身体不好；走样的  
 out of sight 看不见 out of sorts 不舒服；心情不好  
 out of step 不合拍；不一致 out of stock 脱销的  
 out of sympathy 出于同情 out of temper 发脾气  
 out of touch 失去联系 out of tune 走调  
 out of use 不再使用的 out of work 失业的  
 out of one's element 处于不合适的环境中 out of one's senses 发疯  
 out of the ordinary 不同寻常 out of the question 不可能的  
 Bravery never goes *out of fashion*.  
 勇敢永远不过时。  
*Out of sight, out of mind*.  
 眼不见，心不念。  
 Put out the fire of lust before it is *out of control*.  
 在贪欲之火失控之前要将其扑灭。

## 7.8 后跟介词的名词

### 7.8.1 后跟介词for的名词

admiration 钦佩 affection 深爱 allowance 余地  
 ambition 雄心 appetite 爱好 aptitude 才能  
 blame 责备 cause 理由 charge 费用  
 consideration 体贴 craving 渴求 cure 疗法  
 demand 需要 desire 愿望 ear 听力  
 excuse 借口 explanation 解释 eye 鉴赏力  
 flair 天资 fondness 爱好 genius 天才  
 love 爱好 match 匹敌；相配 need 需要  
 opportunity 机会 pity 怜悯 plan 计划

plea 请求 qualification 资格 reason 原因  
regard 顾及 regret 遗憾 remedy 补救  
reputation 名声 request 请求 requisite 必要条件  
respect 尊敬；尊重 responsibility 责任 reverence 崇敬  
room 余地 search 搜寻 substitute 替代  
sympathy 同情 talent 天赋 taste 爱好  
volunteer 志愿者 warrant 授权；正当理由 wish 希望  
Don't allow the *desire for* possessions to control you.  
不要让物质的欲念左右自己。  
A good *cure for* psychological problems is friendship.  
友谊是医治心理疾病的一个好方法。  
All the world's wealth and a thousand armies are no *match for* the  
strength and decency of the human spirit.  
世上所有的财富和千军万马也抵不上人类精神的力量和高雅。

### 7.8.2 后跟介词to的名词

access 接触 allegiance 忠诚 advantage 好处，优势  
allusion 暗指；提及 alternative 替代方法 answer 答案  
approach 方法 attention 注意 attitude 态度  
aversion 反感 bar 障碍 claim 要求  
contrast 对比 contribution 贡献 danger 危险  
dedication 奉献 devotion 献身 engagement 订婚  
heir 继承人 hindrance 妨碍 index 索引；迹象  
introduction 介绍 key 钥匙；关键 limit 限制  
marriage 婚姻 objection 反对 obstacle 障碍  
obstruction 障碍 opposition 反对 preface 序言；开端  
prologue 序幕 reaction 反应 reference 提及；参考  
regard 留意 reply 回答 resemblance 相似  
response 回应 similarity 相似 solution 解决方法  
stranger 陌生 witness 目击者；证人  
Poverty must not be a *bar to* learning.  
一定不能让贫穷阻碍学习。  
The face is no *index to* the heart.  
面孔不能反映心灵。  
Lack of education is an *obstacle to* success.  
缺乏教育是成功的障碍。

The only *limit to* our realization of tomorrow will be our doubts of today.

实现明天理想的唯一障碍是今天的疑虑。

The event is not important, but the *response to* the event is everything.

事情本身并不重要，但对事情的反应至关重要。

### 7.8.3 后接介词in 的名词

belief 信任；信仰 confidence 信心 delight 喜欢  
difficulty 困难 experience 经验 faith 信念；信心  
interest 兴趣 involvement 参与 persistence 坚持  
pride 自豪 progress 进展 skill 技能  
trust 信任

To overcome fear you must have *faith in* the outcome.

要克服恐惧，必须对结果有信心。

We can have *faith in* the future only if we have *faith in* ourselves.

只有当我们对自己有信心才能对未来有信心。

### 7.8.4 后接介词on的名词

advice 建议 attack 攻击 authority 权威  
bearing 关系，关联 comment 评论 compassion 同情  
concentration 专心 debate 辩论 dependence 依赖  
discussion 讨论 effect 影响 emphasis 重点  
idea 观点 impact 影响 influence 影响  
mercy 怜悯 operation 手术 opinion 观点  
outlook 观点 raid 突袭 reliance 依赖  
shame 耻辱 suggestion 建议

Self-image has an important *effect on* a person's actions.

自我形象对一个人的行动有着重要的影响。

Story telling has a positive *influence on* children.

讲故事对孩子有积极的影响。

Be strong. Never beg God to have *mercy on* you.

做强者。永远不要乞求上天的怜悯。

## 7.9 后跟介词的动词

### 7.9.1 后跟介词on的动词

agree 达成一致 attend 服侍

bear 使.....承受重压；影响 begin 着手  
blunder 无意中发现 brood 焦急地考虑  
build 建立；指望 call 拜访；要求；号召  
chance 偶然遇到 cheat 作弊  
comment 评论 concentrate 集中注意力  
count 指望 dawn 被想到；被理解  
decide 决定；择定 depend 取决于  
devolve 移交某人负责 draw 利用  
dwell 长久思考；详细讲述 embark 开始  
fall 袭击；偶然遇到；遭受；由.....负担 fix 选定；集中于  
focus 集中于 gain 接近于；跑得比.....快  
get 上马，上车等 hang 取决于  
happen 偶然遇到 hinge 取决于  
hit 发现；想到 insist 坚决要求；坚持认为  
jump 跳上；猛扑 keep 不停  
lean 依靠；勒索 light 偶然遇到；降临  
live 以.....为食；靠.....为生 look 看待  
pick 选中 pitch 选定  
pounce 猛扑；突袭 reckon 指望  
reflect 深思 rely 依赖  
remark 评论 rest 依靠  
round 责骂；告发 run 涉及；一直想着  
set 袭击 sit 拖延；审理  
smile 对.....微笑；惠及 stamp 踩到；压制  
start 开始 strike 突然想到；突然发现  
stumble 偶然遇到 subsist 靠.....维持生活  
touch 谈到，提及 trade 为私利而利用  
verge 处于边缘；接近于 wait 服侍；是.....的必然结果  
work 从事于

*Insist on yourself; never imitate.*

坚持自己的本色；决不要模仿。

*Don't dwell too long on the shortcomings of others.*

不要过多谈论他人的短处。

*Happiness depends on inner conditions.*

幸福取决于内心状态。

*Generally, it's better to focus on one thing to do it well.*

一般说来，最好专注于一件事情，把它做好。

It slowly *dawned on* me that I had great abilities that I had never developed.

我逐渐意识到，我自身具备从未开发的巨大能力。

### 7.9.2 后跟介词to的动词

adapt 适应 add 增加

adjourn 转移会址 adjust 适应

admit 通向；承认 agree 答应

amount 共计；相当于；成为 answer 反应；对.....负责；符合

appeal 呼吁；上诉；诉诸；吸引 apply 适用

assent 赞同 attend 照料；留意

awaken 认识到 belong 属于

cling 粘住；坚持；依附 come 达到；结果是

conform 遵守；符合 consent 赞同；答应

contribute 促进 correspond 与.....一致

descend 下倾；祖传；堕落 fall 开始

get 到达 happen 发生

hold 紧握；坚持 keep 遵守；坚持

listen 倾听 look 指望

object 反对 occur 被想起

point 表明 propose 求婚

react 反应 refer 参考；提到

relate 有关系；适用；交往 reply 回答

resort 求助；诉诸 respond 回答；反应

revert 回返；重提 run 达到

see 办理；保证

speak 对.....说话；对.....演讲；证明；对.....有吸引力

stick 粘贴；忠于；坚持 submit 屈服于；听任；甘心

succeed 继承；接续 succumb 屈服于；听任；死于

surrender 投降；自首；屈服于 take 开始；喜欢；走上

turn 求助于 yield 屈服于；听从

Good manners *add to* your image.

良好的举止有助于你的形象。

*Stick to* it, and you'll succeed.

坚持到底，就会成功。

We must never *yield to* temptations.

我们决不要屈从于诱惑。

The reasonable man *adapts* himself to the world.

明白事理的人主动去适应世界。

You'll never *amount to* anything if you spend your time only daydreaming.

如果耽于幻想你将一事无成。

The future *belongs to* those who see possibilities before they become obvious.

未来属于那些在机会显露之前就看到机会的人。

### 7.9.3 后跟介词with的动词

accord 一致，符合 agree 同意

bear 宽恕，容忍 begin 开始

bother 烦恼 break 决裂

clash 冲突 coincide 巧合

collide 碰撞；冲突 combine 联合；化合

communicate 交流 comply 答应；遵守

concur 同时发生；同意 confer 协商

consort 一致 contrast 对比

cooperate 合作 cope 对付，处理

correspond 符合，一致 deal 处理；交往

do 对付；满足于；忍耐 go 相配；一起去

help 帮助 hold 赞同

interfere 干涉；有害于 meddle 干涉；摆弄

meet 遇见；遭遇 mingle 混合；交际

part 断绝关系 plead 恳求

reckon 结算；预料到；处理；对付；惩罚 rest 取决于

start 开始 stick 坚持

sympathize 同情 tally 符合

We have to *cope with* life's hardships.

我们必须对付人生中的困难。

*Stick with* what you are good at.

坚持自己的专长。

Every failure one *meets with* adds to one's experience.

一个人所遇到的每次失败都丰富了他的经验。

A way to *deal with* fear is to face it and overcome it.

对付恐惧的一个方法就是面对它，战胜它。



#### 7.9.4 后跟介词for的动词

account 解释；导致；占 allow 考虑到；体谅  
answer 负有责任 apologize 道歉  
appeal 呼吁 apply 申请  
argue 主张 atone 弥补  
bargain 预料；想廉价得到 call 要求；需要  
care 喜欢；照顾 cater 承办；迎合  
clamor 吵闹着要求 crave 渴望；恳求  
enter 报名参加 fall 受骗；迷恋  
feel 探索；同情 fight 奋斗  
go 支持；争取 grieve 悲痛  
head 走向 hope 希望  
hunger 渴望 leave 动身前往  
live 为……而生活；盼望 long 渴望  
look 寻找 make 走向；有助于；扑向  
pass 充当；被看作 pay 为……付出代价  
pine 想念 prepare 做准备  
press 催促；竭力推行；竭力要求 provide 供养；做准备；规定  
regret 后悔 run 奔逃；竞争  
search 搜寻 send 派人去请  
settle 满足于 sit 参加考试  
stand 代表 strive 力争  
substitute 替代 vote 投票支持  
wait 等待 wish 希望  
witness 作有利于……的证明

Working to *provide for* those you love is happiness.

为供养自己所爱的人而工作就是幸福。

We *hunger for* a self that we can be proud of.

我们渴望一个引以为骄傲的自我。

Great winners *strive for* a long-term plan.

伟大的胜者追求长远的计划。

A great epoch *calls for* great men.

伟大的时代需要伟大的人物。

A sailor without a destination cannot *hope for* a favorable wind.

没有目的地的水手不可能指望遇到顺风。

*Go for* the moon. If you don't get it, you'll still be *heading for* a star.

奔向月亮。即使得不到它，你仍然在朝着星星的方向前进。

### 7.9.5 后跟介词of的动词

admit 有.....余地，有.....可能 approve 赞成

become 发生于 beware 当心，提防

boast 吹嘘，夸耀 come 由于

complain 抱怨 conceive 设想

consist 由.....组成 despair 绝望

die 死于 dream 梦见；梦想

hear 听说 know 了解

smell 有某种气味 speak 谈到

talk 谈论 think 想起；想出

treat 论述，探讨

*Beware of no man more than yourself.*

最该当心的莫过于自己。

*We trust our strength without boasting of it.*

我们相信自己的力量而不必吹嘘。

*We need men who can dream of things that never were.*

我们需要能梦想前所未有事情的人。

*The first half of life consists of the capacity to enjoy without the chance;*

*the last half consists of the chance without the capacity.*

前半生有享受的能力而无享受的机会；后半生有享受的机会却无享受的能力。

### 7.9.6 后跟介词at的动词

aim 目标为 arrive 到达

bark 吠叫 begin 从.....开始

call 访问 catch 抓住

clutch 抓住 come 袭击；赶上

drive 打算 frown 皱眉；厌恶，反对

gaze 凝视 get 够得着；察明；理解

grieve 悲伤 keep 坚持

laugh 因.....而笑；对.....不以为意；嘲笑

look 看 make 扑向，袭击

marvel 惊叹 pick 挑剔；指责

point 指向 shoot 向.....射击

smile 对.....微笑 snap 猛咬；迅速抓住

snatch 抢夺；迅速抓住 stare 注视

stick 坚持 strain 难以接受；用力推拉

strike 打击 succeed 成功

wonder 惊讶

Everybody gets better if they *keep at* it.

如果每个人都坚持做事情，会变得更好。

The landscape belongs to the man who *looks at* it.

风景属于看风景的人。

A man can *succeed at* almost anything for which he has unlimited enthusiasm.

一个人可以在自己具有无限热情的几乎任何事情上取得成功。

### 7.9.7 后跟介词in的动词

agree 想法一致 arrive 到达 believe 坚信

belong 适合于 confide 吐露秘密；信赖 consist 在于

culminate 达到高潮 deal 经营 interfere 干预

intervene 干预 lie 在于 major 主修

persevere 锲而不舍 persist 坚持不懈 result 导致

share 分享；分担 specialize 专攻；专营 succeed 成功

trade 做生意

*Specialize in* what you do.

要专于其业。

The beauty of life *lies in* its variety.

生活的美丽在于生活的丰富多彩。

If one desires to *succeed in* everything, he must pay the price.

如果一个人希望成功地做每件事，他必须付出代价。

I don't *believe in* luck; I think luck is preparation meeting opportunity.

我不相信运气；我认为运气就是迎接机会的准备工作。

If we *persist in* our efforts, we shall surely get what we deserve.

如果我们坚持努力，我们一定会得到自己应该得到的东西。

*Persevere in* what you do, and you are sure to attain your goals.

坚持做自己的事情，你一定会达到目标。

True wisdom *consists not only in* seeing what is before your eyes, but in foreseeing what is to come.

真正的智慧不仅在于看到眼前的事情，而且在于预见将来的事情。

### 7.9.8 后跟介词against的动词

bump 碰撞；遭到 compete 竞争

count 被认为对.....不利

decide 决定不做；做出不利于.....的判决  
go 反对；对.....不利 guard 防范  
make 与.....相违背；有害于 offend 违反  
protest 抗议 run 与.....相撞；不利于；违反  
stand 抵御；反对 struggle 同.....斗争  
turn 背叛 witness 作不利于.....的证明  
We should *guard against* losing heart after failure.  
我们应提防失败后丧失信心。

I will *struggle against* the rainstorm, and will not hesitate even in a broken ship.  
我将同暴风雨进行斗争，即使船只破损也不会犹豫。

### 7.9.9 后跟介词about的动词

boast 吹嘘 bother 烦恼 care 关心  
complain 抱怨 dream 梦见；梦想 go 着手做  
gossip 闲聊；说长道短 grieve 悲痛 hear 听说  
see 负责，安排 talk 谈论 wonder 疑惑；想知道  
Don't *gossip about* others' errors.  
不要对他人的错误说长道短。

The secret of being miserable is to have the leisure to *bother about* whether you are happy or not.

痛苦的秘诀就是有闲暇时间去为自己是否幸福而烦心。

The pessimist *complains about* the wind; the optimist expects it to change; the realist adjusts the sails.

悲观主义者抱怨有风；乐观主义者希望风向改变；现实主义者调整船帆。

### 7.9.10 后跟介词from的动词

adapt 改编 come 来自于 date 追溯  
depart 离开；背离 detract 减损；贬低 die 死于  
differ 不同于 dissuade 劝阻 hear 收到.....的来信  
keep 避开；克制 recover 恢复 refrain 忍住；避免  
result 起因于 shelter 躲避 suffer 遭受

Knowledge *comes from* experience.

知识来自实践。

*Keep from* worrying and enjoy your life.

不要担心，要享受生活。

His failure *resulted* in part *from* his laziness.

他失败的部分原因是由于他懒惰。

A lazy fellow may *die from* thirst even though a well is nearby.

即使水井就在身旁，懒汉也会渴死。

## 7.10 后跟介词的形容词

### 7.10.1 后跟介词to的形容词

accountable 对某人负责的 accustomed 习惯的

adequate 足够的；胜任的 adjacent 邻近的

adverse 敌对的；不利于 agreeable 一致的；讨人喜欢的

akin 类似于；是近亲的 alert 警惕的；留意的

alien 不相容的 allergic 过敏的；反感的

amenable 顺从的；易受影响的 applicable 适用的

appropriate 合适的 attentive 专心的；关心的

attributable 可归因的 averse 不喜欢的；不愿意的

central 至关重要的 close 接近的；关系密切的

common 共同的 comparable 比得上的；类似的

conducive 有利的 contiguous 相邻的

contrary 相反的 dedicated 致力于

devoted 致力于；深爱的 equal 平等的；等于；胜任

equivalent 等于的 essential 必不可少的

exposed 暴露的 faithful 忠实的；忠诚的

favorable 赞同的；有利的 foreign 陌生的；无关的

fundamental 极其重要的 grateful 对某人表示感谢的

hospitable 好客的；适宜的；易于接受的 hostile 敌对的，不友好的

immune 免疫的；不受影响的 indifferent 不关心的

indispensable 不可或缺的 inferior 地位较低的；质量等较次的

junior 年纪较小的；资历较浅的 kind 和蔼的，亲切的

liable 易患.....的，易遭受.....的 loyal 忠诚的

merciful 仁慈的 new 生疏的

obliged 对某人表示感谢的

open 乐于接受的；容易受到；对.....开放的

opposed 反对的；相反的 opposite 对面的；相反的

partial 偏心的；偏爱的 peculiar 为.....所特有的

polite 有礼貌的 preferable 更好的；更可取的

preparatory 作为.....的准备 previous 在.....之前

prior 在.....之前 prone 易于.....的  
 proportional 成比例的；相称的 related 相关的；有亲缘关系的  
 relative 关于；和.....相比 relevant 相关的  
 repugnant 反感的；反对的；不一致的 rude 粗暴无礼的  
 second 第二的，较次的 senior 年纪较长的；资历较深的  
 sensitive 敏感的 similar 类似于  
 subject 受支配的；易受.....的 subordinate 级别低的；顺从的；次要的  
 subsequent 继.....之后的 superior 地位较高的；质量等较好的  
 sympathetic 同情的，支持的 tantamount 等于的  
 true 真实的 used 习惯的  
 visible 看得见的 vital 至关重要的  
 Knowledge is *equivalent to* power.  
 知识相当于力量。  
 Happiness is *proportional to* virtue.  
 幸福与美德相称。  
 Sincerity is always *subject to* proof.  
 诚意总是有待于检验。  
 Leadership and learning are *indispensable to* each other.  
 领导才能和学识彼此是不可或缺的。  
 A man *used to* vicissitudes is not easily dejected.  
 习惯于世事沧桑的人不会轻易沮丧。  
 Be *true to* your work, your word and your friend.  
 对自己的工作、言语和朋友要真诚。  
 Climbing is *akin to* swimming upstream. It demands unending energy, sacrifice and dedication.  
 攀登类似于逆流游泳，需要不懈的努力、牺牲和奉献。

### 7.10.2 后跟介词of的形容词

afraid 害怕的 appreciative 感谢的；有欣赏力的  
 ashamed 羞愧的 aware 意识到的  
 bare 光秃的 capable 有能力的  
 careful 注意 careless 不关心  
 cautious 谨慎的 certain 确信的  
 characteristic 典型的，特有的 clear 没有的  
 composed 由.....构成的 confident 有信心的  
 conscious 意识到的 convinced 确信的，信服的

critical 批判的；挑剔的 deprived 被剥夺的  
destitute 没有的 destructive 破坏的，毁灭的  
devoid 没有的 envious 妒忌的；羡慕的  
exclusive 排除的；不包括的 expressive 表现的；表达的  
fond 喜欢的 forgetful 健忘的；疏忽的  
free 没有的 frightened 害怕的  
full 充满的 guilty 有罪的  
independent 独自的 inclusive 包括在内的  
indicative 表明的 innocent 无罪的  
jealous 妒忌的 mindful 注意的，小心的  
proud 骄傲的，自豪的 reckless 不顾及的  
scared 害怕的 short 短缺的  
shy 畏缩的；不喜欢的 sick 厌倦的  
sure 确信的 suspicious 怀疑的  
terrified 恐惧的 tolerant 容忍的  
typical 典型的

We are *sick of* war.

我们厌倦了战争。

The greatest of faults is to be *conscious of* none.

错中之大错是有错不知错。

Happiness is given to the person who is not *afraid of* hard work.

幸福属于不畏惧艰苦工作的人。

No great people complain that they are *short of* opportunity.

伟大人物没有谁抱怨自己缺少机会。

The longer I live, the more deeply I am *convinced of* the power of thought.

我活得越长，就越发深刻地确信思想的力量。

You should be very *mindful of* the things you say, particularly in anger.

你应该十分留意自己的言语，特别是在生气的时候。

Self-awareness is the first step to becoming *aware of* your emotions and attitudes.

自我意识是认识到自己情感和态度的第一步。

### 7.10.3 后跟介词with的形容词

acquainted 了解的 alive 充满的

angry 生气的 annoyed 生气的；感到讨厌的

careful 小心的 careless 粗心的

comparable 可比较的 compatible 一致的  
concerned 关心的；有关的 content 满足的  
delighted 高兴的 disappointed 失望的  
disgusted 感到厌恶的 done 完毕的  
even 与某人两清 familiar 熟悉的  
filled 装满的 finished 完毕的  
friendly 友好的 happy 高兴的；满意的  
honest 诚实的 identical 完全相同的  
ill 患上 patient 耐心的  
pleased 高兴的 popular 受欢迎的  
satisfied 满意的 sick 患上  
skillful 熟练的 strict 严格的  
sympathetic 同情的 wrong 出问题的，有毛病的  
Be *content with* little, yet wish for more.  
不要满足，而是希冀更多。  
Be *sympathetic with* others' ideas and desires.  
对他人的想法和愿望要给予同情。  
Those who take the long view are *patient with* difficulties.  
目光长远的人对困难泰然处之。  
We should be *honest with* ourselves and admit our mistakes quickly.  
我们应该对自己诚实，立刻承认自己的错误。

#### 7.10.4 后跟介词for的形容词

accountable 对某事负责的 adequate 足够的  
answerable 对某事负责的 bound 以.....为目的地的  
celebrated 闻名的 dying 极为渴望的  
fit 适合的 good 有用的；有好处的  
grateful 感谢的 hungry 渴望的  
known 著名的 liable 有责任的  
noted 知名的 prepared 做好准备的  
qualified 胜任的 ready 做好准备的  
regretful 悔恨的 responsible 负责的  
right 合适的 ripe 成熟的  
sorry 内疚的；抱歉的 sufficient 充足的  
suitable 合适的 thankful 感谢的  
Everything is *good for* something.  
天生一物必有用。



Be *fit for* more than the thing you are now doing.

对自己正在从事的事情要胜任愉快。

Don't expect yesterday's answer to be *adequate for* today's problems.

不要期望昨天的答案足以解决今天的问题。

Be *grateful for* what you have, not *regretful for* what you haven't.

满足于自己拥有的东西，不要懊悔自己没有得到的东西。

#### 7.10.5 后跟介词at的形容词

adept 熟练的，擅长的 aghast 吓呆的

alarmed 惊恐的；担心的 amazed 惊奇的

angry 生气的 annoyed 生气的；感到讨厌的

apt 聪明的 astonished 惊讶的

bad 不善于 clever 擅长的

delighted 高兴的 disgusted 感到厌恶的

embarrassed 感到尴尬的 good 善于

irritated 恼怒的 mad 愤怒的

puzzled 迷惑的 quick 快捷的；灵敏的

relieved 宽慰的 scared 害怕的

shocked 震惊的 skilful 熟练的

startled 吃惊的 surprised 吃惊的

terrified 恐惧的

The most promising winners are those who are *good at* seizing every opportunity.

最有希望的获胜者是那些善于抓住每次机会的人。

Learn to become *adept at* leading yourself to a higher AQ (adversity quotient).

学会善于引导自己具备更高的逆境商数。

#### 7.10.6 后跟介词about的形容词

angry 生气的 anxious 焦虑的

careful 小心的 careless 粗心的

cautious 谨慎的 conceited 自负的

concerned 关心的；担心的 critical 挑剔的；批判的

curious 好奇的 enthusiastic 热情的

excited 激动的，兴奋的 happy 高兴的；满意的

mad 迷恋的 particular 挑剔的，过分讲究的

sad 悲伤的 serious 认真的

sorry 内疚的；遗憾的；抱歉的 upset 烦恼的  
worried 担心的

We should not be *careless about* anything.

我们对任何事都不应漫不经心。

Make others *happy about* doing the thing you suggest.

让他人愉快地去做你建议的事情。

A man can be *concerned about* his serious problems and still walk with his chin up.

一个人可以在担心自己严重问题的同时仍然精神昂扬。

### 7.10.7 后跟介词in的形容词

absorbed 全神贯注的 abundant 丰富的

adept 熟练的，擅长的 dressed 穿.....衣服的

engaged 忙于 interested 感兴趣的

involved 参与的 lacking 缺乏的

poor 贫乏的 rich 丰富的

skilful 熟练的 slow 迟缓的

successful 成功的 wanting 缺乏的

weak 不善于

We are not *interested in* the possibilities of defeat.

我们对失败的可能性不感兴趣。

It is a pity to find people *rich in* goods, but *poor in* spirit.

看到人们物质丰富，而精神匮乏，这是一种遗憾。

### 7.10.8 后跟介词from的形容词

absent 缺席的 detached 分离的；冷漠的

different 不同于 divorced 脱离的

free 没有 immune 免疫的；不受影响的

remote 遥远的 safe 安全的

Being *free from* the fear of failure is a great thing.

不惧怕失败是了不起的。

Be aware of opinions in social circles *different from* your own.

要认识到社会圈子中和自己不同的观点。

### 7.10.9 后跟介词on的形容词

based 以.....为基础的 consequent 因.....而引起的

dependent 依赖的 founded 以.....为根据的

hard 过分严厉的 intent 专心致志的

keen 热衷于 strict 严格的

A good leader must be *hard on* himself.

优秀的领导者一定要严于律已。

The success for a team is *dependent on* the quality of the relationship between the teammates.

一个团队的成功取决于队员之间的关系。

## 7.11 由动词+副词+介词构成的短语

add up to 合计达 boil down to 归结为

break away from 脱身；背叛；戒除 catch up with 赶上

come down with 患上 come in for 遭到

come up against 遇到 come up to 达到

come up with 提出 crack down on 制裁；镇压

cry out for 迫切需要 cut back on 削减

do away with 废除 fall back on 依赖，借助于

fall in with 遇到；同意；符合 get along with 和睦相处

get down to 开始认真对待 go back on 违背诺言；背叛

go in for 参加；从事；爱好 hang on to 抓牢；坚持

hold on to 抓牢；坚持 keep abreast of 跟上

keep out of 不参加 keep up with 跟上

live up to 遵守；不辜负 look back on 回顾

look down on 看不起 look forward to 盼望

look up to 尊敬 make up for 弥补

put in for 申请 put up with 忍受

run out of 用完，耗尽 shy away from 回避

sign up for 报名参加 stand up for 维护

stand up to 勇敢地面对；经得起 steer clear of 绕开

take up with 致力于 think back to 回忆

think better of 改变主意 tie in with 连接；符合

watch out for 提防

Diligence *makes up for* deficiency.

勤能补拙。

Only God is in a position to *look down on* anyone.

只有上帝处于可以俯视任何人的位置。

I have seen men *stand up to* attacks and torture without breaking.

我见过许多人勇敢地面对攻击和折磨而没有屈服。

## 实践演练

### I. 按照句义的需要，在句子空格处填入恰当的介词。

1. You have got to work \_\_\_\_\_ your happiness.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ this special day of yours, please accept my sincere blessings.
3. Adventure is not \_\_\_\_\_ man; it is within.
4. Beauty is \_\_\_\_\_ the eye of the beholder.
5. If peace cannot be maintained \_\_\_\_\_ honor, it is no longer peace.
6. The life of man is \_\_\_\_\_ a long journey with a heavy load on the back.
7. To marry a woman \_\_\_\_\_ her beauty is like buying a house \_\_\_\_\_ its paint.
8. Never beg the enemy \_\_\_\_\_ mercy. You should fight.
9. All the splendor in the world is not \_\_\_\_\_ a good friend.
10. Courage is not the absence of fear. It's doing what it takes \_\_\_\_\_ one's fear.

### II. 根据词语之间的搭配关系，在句子空格处填入恰当的介词。

#### A 介词+名词的搭配

1. He works best \_\_\_\_\_ pressure.
2. Life, to be worthy of a rational being, must be always \_\_\_\_\_ progression.
3. Every man is a poet when he is \_\_\_\_\_ love.
4. There is no exact definition of the word happiness. Happy people are happy \_\_\_\_\_ all sorts of reasons.
5. Putting things \_\_\_\_\_ perspective can ease your impatience.

#### B 名词+介词的搭配

1. For those who will fight bravely and not yield, there is triumphant victory \_\_\_\_\_ all the dark things of life.
2. If you must bury something, let it be my faults, my weaknesses and all my prejudice \_\_\_\_\_ my fellow men.
3. I feel nothing but contempt \_\_\_\_\_ such dishonest behavior.
4. A successful marriage demands divorce: a divorce \_\_\_\_\_ your own self-love.
5. The power of mind \_\_\_\_\_ body is no doubt great.

### C 动词+介词的搭配

1. We have the desire to break \_\_\_\_\_normal routines.
2. Let's congratulate \_\_\_\_\_your decision to start your own business.
3. I told my doctor, "I am choosing to live. Operate \_\_\_\_\_me as if I am alive, not dead."
4. Adversity makes men acquaint \_\_\_\_\_strange bedfellows.
5. A garden must be cared for with love. It seems to me that this applies \_\_\_\_\_our lives as well.
6. They do not depend \_\_\_\_\_the book or the teacher; they discover their own way to learn.
7. I believe \_\_\_\_\_democracy because it releases the energies of every human being.
8. Many benefited \_\_\_\_\_Helen Keller's unique insights and courage.
9. We have to adjust \_\_\_\_\_all kinds of stress.
10. Winners are not afraid to go \_\_\_\_\_what they want, but they do so in proper ways.

### D 动词+宾语+介词的搭配

1. The purpose of educating children is to fit them \_\_\_\_\_life.
2. Man will reduce himself \_\_\_\_\_a shadow if for only one second of his life he can close his eyes to the hideousness of reality.
3. His rude manners subject him \_\_\_\_\_frequent rebuffs.
4. Your life is limited \_\_\_\_\_your vision.
5. If one does not understand a person, one tends to regard him \_\_\_\_\_a fool.
6. He tries to avoid using sexist language wherever possible, such as substituting the term "humankind" \_\_\_\_\_"mankind".
7. When you argue with your inferiors, you convince them \_\_\_\_\_only one thing: they are as clever as you.
8. Success demands strange sacrifices \_\_\_\_\_those who worship her.
9. Failure teaches you something about your strengths and acquaints you \_\_\_\_\_your limitations.
10. The only duty we owe \_\_\_\_\_history is to rewrite it.

### E 形容词+介词的搭配

1. If knowledge is the same thing \_\_\_\_\_ wisdom, there are many “wise” men who are really fools.
2. At last the king was sure \_\_\_\_\_ Gulliver’s true friendship and set him free.
3. Prior \_\_\_\_\_ the Revolutionary War, the United States was an English colony.
4. His courage and confidence were based \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge.
5. There is usually something wrong \_\_\_\_\_ writers the young like.
6. To be ignorant \_\_\_\_\_ one’s ignorance is the malady of the ignorant.
7. Human life is full \_\_\_\_\_ ups and downs.
8. We are so fond \_\_\_\_\_ one another, because our ailments are the same.
9. Carol was employed as an interpreter because he was proficient \_\_\_\_\_ three languages.
10. Poverty is not a shame, but being ashamed \_\_\_\_\_ it is.

### III. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. The conflict in 【A】 a story must first be obvious importance 【B】 to 【C】 the characters involved 【D】.
2. It is dangerous to abandon oneself with 【A】 the luxury of grief: it deprives one of 【B】 courage, and even of 【C】 the wish for 【D】 recovery.
3. If you are indifferent at 【A】 other people’s misery, you will never 【B】 be worthy of 【C】 the name of 【D】 a human being.
4. Animals become indifferent to 【A】 their young as soon as their young can look after 【B】 themselves, but human beings, owing for 【C】 the length of infancy 【D】, find this less easy.
5. Columbus’ greatness for 【A】 an explorer lay more in 【B】 his faith and persistence than in 【C】 the originality of 【D】 his geographical conceptions.
6. Love of 【A】 a mate provides us with 【B】 another soul to feel kinship, with someone to share life with 【C】, someone to be loved, in spite 【D】 shortcomings and human frailties.

7. We must deal with 【A】 pleasure as we do with 【B】 honey, only touch it with 【C】 the tip of the finger, and not the whole hand with fear of 【D】 surfeit.

8. Anyone can become angry—that is easy. But to be angry with 【A】 the right person, on 【B】 the right degree, at 【C】 the right time, for 【D】 the right purpose, and in the right way; this is not easy.

9. She succeeded 【A】, to 【B】 my mind, in 【C】 living up of 【D】 her extraordinary reputation.

10. The traditional view of motivation in language learning 【A】 is to equate human motivation with that 【B】 of the donkey, desire for 【C】 the carrot or fear of the stick; low motivation implies lack interest 【D】 or laziness.

11. Although they have equal degrees of 【A】 health and wealth, one becomes happy, but the other becomes miserable. This arises in 【B】 their different ways in which 【C】 they consider things, persons and events, and the resulting effects upon 【D】 their minds.

12. In 【A】 going out from 【B】 home, take a look at 【C】 the color of 【D】 the sky.

13. I show my love at 【A】 the man that can smile in trouble 【B】, that can gather strength from distress 【C】 and grow brave by reflection 【D】.

14. Since 【A】 our research so far has not produced any 【B】 answers to 【C】 this problem, we need to adopt a different approach of 【D】 it.

15. Selfish love makes a man care only of 【A】 his own happiness without 【B】 having any regard for 【C】 the feelings of 【D】 the beloved.

#### IV. 将下列带有介词的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. I believe in heaven and hell on earth.

2. Confidence in yourself is the first step on the road to success.

3. Without danger we cannot get beyond danger.

4. The price of wisdom is above gold.
5. Sickness comes in haste and goes at leisure.
6. You should try to seek every opportunity instead of just waiting quietly for its visit.
7. Once you are in touch with your true nature, then nothing is beyond your means.
8. In any walk of life, disappointments will go before success.
9. Winners are a part of the team, while losers are apart from the team.
10. The sun does not shine on both sides of the hedge at once.

V. 将每句中汉语部分翻译成英文。

1. She's the kind of woman who delights \_\_\_\_\_(指出别人的错误).
2. The very highest pleasure in life \_\_\_\_\_(在于工作).
3. Her enthusiasm \_\_\_\_\_(弥补了经验的缺乏).
4. I'm fed up hearing Jan \_\_\_\_\_(吹嘘她的新工作).
5. His behavior reflects \_\_\_\_\_(他对待工作懒散的态度).

VI. 使用所提供的介词或带介词的短语，将下列汉语句子的翻译成英文。

1. 赞扬对人的精神而言，就像阳光。(like)
2. 我们可以享受宁静，而忽略外在的条件。(regardless of)
3. 没有什么事情完全出于巧合而发生，所以每件事情的发生都有原因。(by chance)
4. 幸福在于欣赏你所拥有的东西。(consist in)
5. 教师必须具备极大的耐心。(capable of)



6. 有所成就的人很少提及失败。(refer to)
7. 什么也不能让我背叛祖国。(turn against)
8. 伟人不会虚度人生。(in vain)
9. 才智的增长源自休闲。(arise from)
10. 伟人从不抱怨缺少机会。(complain of)

VII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. All alone in a foreign land, I am twice as homesick \_\_\_\_\_this special day.  
A. at B. on C. in D. within
2. We have removed some obstacles to the championship, but the race is \_\_\_\_\_won.  
A. apart from B. something of  
C. rather than D. far from
3. Scott was very appreciative \_\_\_\_\_the help from his teacher.  
A. of B. in C. at D. on
4. He was encouraged by none when he entered \_\_\_\_\_his work.  
A. in B. into C. upon D. within
5. A word spoken is \_\_\_\_\_recalling.  
A. at B. on C. past D. over
6. He is sometimes bad-tempered but he is a good fellow \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. at heart B. in heart C. with heart D. by heart
7. In today's fast-paced world, the quest to raise a moral child \_\_\_\_\_new urgency.  
A. puts on B. takes on C. turns on D. depends on
8. Happiness is found \_\_\_\_\_the way—not \_\_\_\_\_the end of the road.  
A. along; at B. in; at C. on; in D. on; at
9. Mankind differs from animals only \_\_\_\_\_a little, and most people throw that away.  
A. in B. at C. to D. by
10. His ambition and courage are based \_\_\_\_\_his knowledge of the truth.

A. of B. to C. on D. for

11. He is quite inconsiderate, for very seldom can he \_\_\_\_\_ other people's troubles.

A. agree with B. interfere with

C. identify with D. rest with

12. He was praised \_\_\_\_\_ his sense of duty.

A. about B. by C. for D. of

13. Those whose work is their pleasure are those who most need the means of banishing it \_\_\_\_\_ from their minds.

A. at leisure B. at liberty

C. at intervals D. at odds

14. The increased self-esteem results \_\_\_\_\_ doing something you know is good for you.

A. to B. in C. from D. on

15. Because Edgar was convinced of the accuracy of this fact, he \_\_\_\_\_ his opinion.

A. stuck to B. strove for C. struck at D. stood for

## 第8章 连词

连词是指用来连接单词、短语或句子的词。按照性质，连词可划分为并列连词和从属连词。并列连词连接的是彼此平等的并列分句，而从属连词连接的是主句和从句。

### 8.1 并列连词

并列连词包括四种，分别是累积连词、因果连词、转折连词和选择连词。

#### 8.1.1 累积连词

and, both...and, not only...but also为累积连词。

a and

表示并列或者附加，理解为“和”、“而且”、“以及”等。

Live as though you intended to live forever, *and* work as though your strength were limitless.

生活要有永生的气概，工作起来要仿佛力量无限。

A dream gives us hope for the future, *and* it also brings us power in the present.

梦想使我们对未来有了希望，对现在有了力量。

表示“然后”。

I will set my goal *and* work toward it.

我要确立目标，然后为此而努力。

表示对比关系，理解为“但是”。

Idleness is sweet, *and* its consequences are cruel.

懒惰是甜蜜的，但结果是残酷的。

表示结果，理解为“则”、“那么”。

Cease to struggle *and* you cease to live.

停止奋斗，则终止了生命。

Ask, *and* you will receive; seek, *and* you will find; knock, *and* it will be opened to you.

去要求，你会有所获得。去寻找，你会有所发现。去叩门，门会为你敞开。

表示强调，理解为“且”、“而且”。

Knowledge, *and* only knowledge, can make one free and great.

知识，只有知识，可以使一个人自由和伟大。

b both...and

表示“两者都”、“既.....又”。

To go far, you need *both* a dream *and* a positive attitude.

要成功，你需要梦想和积极的态度。

You can't expect to be *both* great *and* comfortable.

你不能指望既生活得伟大又生活得舒适。

c not only...but also

表示“不仅.....而且”。but also可以省略其中一个词或全部省略；not only可以由not merely代替。

A nation reveals itself *not only* by the men it produces, *but also* by the men it honors, the men it remembers.

一个民族不仅通过自己所造就的人，而且通过自己所尊崇的人，所铭记的人来展现自己。

The world is moved *not only* by the mighty muscles of our heroes *but also* by the tiny pushes of each honest worker.

世界不仅由英雄的强大力量所驱动，也受到每一位正直的劳动者微小力量的推动。

Competition is *not only* good in itself, it is the means by which other basic values are promoted.

竞争不仅本身有其好处，而且是其他基本价值观念得以促进的手段。

Life is *not merely* being alive, *but* being well.

生活不仅是活着，而且要活得好。

A loser repeats *not only* his own mistakes, *but* those of his family and culture.

失败者不仅重复自己的错误，而且重复其家族和文化的错误。

### 8.1.2 因果连词

for, so为因果连词。

a for

表示“因为”。

I am not afraid of tomorrow *for* I have seen yesterday and I love today.

我不害怕明天，因为我已经历过昨天，而且我热爱今天。

Every human being must be viewed according to what he is good for, *for* none of us is perfect.

须按照其优点来看待每个人，因为我们没有完人。

b so

表示“因此”、“所以”。

The road of glory is narrow, so one can only go forward.

荣誉之路是狭窄的，所以只能向前。

The world is made up of people, so everybody has to learn to interact effectively with others.

世界由人组成，因此每个人必须学会和别人有效地交往。

### 8.1.3 转折连词

but, yet, while, whereas为转折连词。

a but

表示“但是”、“而是”。

We make a living by what we get, *but* we make a life by what we give.

我们靠获取而谋生，但我们靠给予而成就人生。

Everyone thinks of changing the world, *but* no one thinks of changing himself.

每个人都想改变世界，但没有人想过改变自己。

The great end of life is not knowledge *but* action.

生活的伟大目标不是知识，而是行动。

b yet

表示“然而”、“但是”。

A smile remains the most inexpensive gift I can bestow on others, *yet* its power can vanquish kingdoms.

微笑是我能给予他人最廉价的礼物，然而它的力量却可以征服王国。

Happiness may not be the fruit plucked by my action *yet* without action all fruit will die on the vine.

幸福也许并非我的行动所采摘的果实，然而没有行动，所有果实都将在藤上枯萎。

I may still encounter failure at the thousandth step, *yet* success hides behind the next bend in the road.

或许迈出第一千步我仍然遭遇失败，然而成功就躲藏在路的下一个拐弯处。

c while

表示对比关系，理解为“而”、“然而”。

My life is limited *while* knowledge is limitless.

我生有涯而知识无限。

Knowledge makes one gentle, *while* association makes one perfect.

知识使人优雅，而交往使人完美。

Happy families are alike *while* unhappy families are unhappy in different ways.

幸福的家庭是相似的，而不幸的家庭则各有自己的不幸。

d *whereas*

也表示对比关系，理解为“而”、“然而”。

Wise men love truth, *whereas* fools shun it.

智者爱真理，愚者躲真理。

To waste time is to idle away one's life, *whereas* to make good use of time is to live.

浪费时间就是荒废生命，而充分利用时间则是生活。

#### 8.1.4 选择连词

or, either...or, neither...nor为选择连词。

a or

表示选择关系，理解为“或”、“或者”。

You can make your world *or* break your world by your thinking.

思维可以成就你的世界，也可以毁灭你的世界。

You can make your interaction with a store clerk a miserable experience, *or* you can get him to smile.

你可以让自己和商店售货员的交往成为不愉快的经历，也可以让对方微笑。

表示“否则”。

Now *or* never.

机不可失，时不再来。

Give me liberty *or* give me death.

不自由，勿宁死。

Have an aim in life, *or* your energies will all be wasted.

人生应有目标，否则一切努力都将落空。

用于否定句，表示“也不”。

Never give up efforts *or* complain about life.

决不要放弃努力，也不要抱怨生活。

b either...or

表示“或者……或者”。

*Either* I will find a way, *or* I will make one.

我要么找到一条路，要么闯出一条路。

Life is *either* a daring adventure *or* nothing.

人生要么是无畏的历险，要么无所成就。

Life is a horse, and *either* you ride it *or* it rides you.

生活是马匹，你不驾驭它，它就驾驭你。

By your choices, your life can be *either* boring *or* outstanding.

靠自己的选择，你的生活可以枯燥乏味，也可以卓尔不群。

c neither...nor

表示“既不.....也不”。

*Neither* praise *nor* dispraise yourself; your actions serve the turn.

不要自我吹嘘，也不要妄自菲薄；你的行动可以扭转局面。

*Neither* be daunted with poverty *nor* be lifted up with riches.

穷不要气馁，富不可骄横。

## 8.2 从属连词

从属连词包括九种，分别表示时间、地点、条件、原因、目的、方式、结果、让步和比较。详细内容请参见《状语从句》一章，此处仅举数例说明。

### 8.2.1 引导时间状语从句的连词

有when (当.....时候), as (当.....时候；随着), while (当.....时候，表示主句、从句的动作同时发生), before (在.....之前), after (在.....之后), once (一旦), since (自从), till或until (直到.....为止)，as soon as (一.....就)等。

Faith is the bird that feels the light *when* the dawn is still dark.

信念是当黎明时分天色尚黑时就感觉到光明的鸟。

Stick with it *till* your new habit becomes part of your everyday behavior.

坚持下去，直到新的习惯成为自己日常行为的一部分。

Nothing will change *until* you act.

不行动，什么也改变不了。

### 8.2.2 引导地点状语从句的连词

有where (在.....地方), no matter where或wherever(无论在哪里)等。

The hopeful man sees success *where* others see failure, sunshine *where* others see shadows and storm.

充满希望的人在别人看到失败的地方看到成功，在别人看到阴影和风暴的地方看到阳光。

*Where* unconditional love exists, fear has no place.

有了无条件的爱，恐惧就没有了立足之地。

### 8.2.3 引导条件状语从句的连词

有if (如果), unless (除非, 如果不), provided或providing (如果), as long as (只要)等。

It is hard to let go of the past *if* you have not learned from the past.

如果不从过去吸取教训, 就难以摆脱过去。

Man cannot discover new oceans *unless* he has courage to lose sight of the shore.

如果没有告别海岸的勇气就不能发现新的海洋。

*Provided* we succeed in winning the world cup, what would our next objective be?

如果我们赢得世界杯, 我们的下一个目标是什么?

The second chance is everywhere in life *as long as* you can find it and try boldly.

生活中第二次机会比比皆是, 只要能够找到并大胆尝试。

### 8.2.4 引导原因状语从句的连词

有because (因为), as (因为), since (既然), now that (既然)等。

A good reputation exists *because* it is a reflection of a person's character.

好的名声之所以存在是因为它是一个人品性的反映。

Health is certainly more valuable than money, *as* it is by health that money is obtained.

健康当然比金钱更有价值, 因为金钱可以通过健康获得。

### 8.2.5 引导目的状语从句的连词

有so that (为了), in order that (为了), lest (以防), in case (以防), for fear that (以防)等。

Take time when time comes *lest* time should steal away.

当时机来临时要抓住时机, 以防它偷偷溜走。

*For fear that* they should fail, the committee prepared their Olympic bid in the fullest possible detail.

该委员会为申奥做了最细致的准备, 以防失败。

### 8.2.6 引导方式状语从句的连词

有as (以.....方式), as if或as though (好像)等。

When in Rome, do *as* the Romans do.

入乡随俗。



You should look into the eyes of your audience, one person at a time, just *as if* you were having private conversations with each.

你应该直视听众的双眼，每次一个人，就如同你在和每个人私下交谈一样。

### 8.2.7 引导结果状语从句的连词

有so...that (如此.....以至于), such...that (如此.....以至于), so that (以至于)等。

Charles Darwin wrote so persuasively *that* his theory of evolution won widespread support.

查尔斯·达尔文写得如此令人信服，以至于他的进化论赢得了广泛的支持。

Accept the challenges, *so that* you may feel the pleasure of victory.

接受挑战，你才能感受到胜利的快乐。

### 8.2.8 引导让步状语从句的连词

有although或though (尽管), while (尽管), as (尽管), that (尽管), even if (即使), even though (即使), whether (不管), no matter (what, who, when, where, how) 或 whatever, whoever, whenever, wherever, however(无论什么，无论是谁，无论何时，无论何地，无论如何)等。

*Whatever* you do, you need courage.

不论你做什么，都需要勇气。

Beggars do not envy millionaires, *though* of course they will envy other beggars who are more successful.

乞丐并不羡慕百万富翁，尽管他们羡慕其他比自己讨饭多的乞丐。

*Even though* the doctor does not give you a year, even if he hesitates about a month, make one brave push and see what can be accomplished in a week.

即使医生并没有给你活一年的希望，即使医生连一个月都不能肯定，也要勇敢地搏上一次，看一周里能取得什么成绩。

*Even if* you've passed some of your prime, you still have other prime years to experience in the future.

即使你已经度过了一些黄金期，在未来仍然会经历其他的黄金期。

*While* a life bent on instant pleasures offers some degree of happiness, it is ultimately unsatisfying on its own.

尽管一心追求及时行乐的生活能带来某种程度的幸福，但是这种生活本身最终却是令人不满意的。

*Whether* it is a great matter or a small one, attention to detail is vital to success.

事情不论大小，注重细节对于成功至关重要。

The day will come *no matter how* long the night is.

不管黑夜有多长，白昼终会到来。

*No matter how* successful you are now, you should still have dreams and goals.

不论你现在多么成功，你仍然要有梦想和目标。

### 8.2.9 引导比较状语从句的连词

有 *than* (比), *as* (像.....一样), *as...as* (和.....一样), *not as*(或*so*)...*as*(不如), *the more...the more*(越....., 就越.....)等。

Don't try to look bigger and better *than* you really are.

不要努力让自己表面看上去比实际情况更加高大和完美。

Men fear death, *as* children fear to go in the dark.

人惧怕死亡，就像孩子惧怕在黑暗中走路一样。

Young men are apt to think themselves wise enough, *as* drunken men are apt to think themselves sober enough.

年轻人容易自以为聪明，正如醉汉容易自以为清醒一样。

No person is ever so much deceived by another *as* by himself.

一个人受自己的欺骗最深。

One is never *as* happy or *as* unhappy *as* one thinks.

一个人没有自己认为的那么幸福，也没有自己认为的那么不幸。

*The harder* you fall, *the higher* you bounce.

跌得越重，奋起得就越高。

*The brighter* you are, *the more* you have to learn.

越是聪明，就越得学习。

*The darker* the shadow of sorrow becomes, *the more* brightly the lamp of love shines.

悲伤的阴影越是黑暗，爱心之灯的光芒就越发闪亮。

## 第9章 动词概论

动词是表示动作或状态的词。

### 9.1 动词的种类

9.1.1 按照用法，动词可分为及物动词和不及物动词。

a 及物动词是指其后能直接跟宾语的动词，如：

No problem *affects* my entire life.

没有什么问题影响我的全部人生。

I *see* an opportunity in every challenge.

在每一次挑战中我都看到了机会。

Life *has* its ups and downs.

人生有起有落。

*Take* full responsibility for your life.

要为自己的人生负全责。

Correct focus *requires* a clear definition of purpose.

有的放矢需要对目标有明确的界定。

b 不及物动词是指其后不能直接跟宾语的动词，如：

Face problems when they *arise*.

当问题出现时要正视它。

Your words and action must *match*.

言行必须一致。

Health *varies* according to the amount of laughter.

笑的多少不同，健康状况就有所差异。

不及物动词之后跟宾语时，须用介词连接，如：

Don't *wait* for ideal circumstances.

不要等待最佳条件的出现。

*Talk* about your own mistakes before criticizing the other person.

在批评别人之前先谈自己的错误。

c 有些动词既可以作及物动词，也可以作不及物动词。有的作及物动词和不及物动词时，意义保持基本一致，也有的意义完全不同。

作及物动词和不及物动词时，意义保持基本一致的动词，如：

You've got to learn to *survive* a defeat.

你必须学会在失败中生存。（及物动词）

Only the courageous can *survive*.

只有勇者能够生存。（不及物动词）

*Change* your way of thinking if necessary.

必要的时候要改变自己的思维方式。（及物动词）

We must always *change*.

我们必须一直改变着。（不及物动词）

You *lose* nothing when you are polite.

礼貌待人不会失去什么。（及物动词）

One never *loses* by doing a good turn.

做好事永远不吃亏。（不及物动词）

A mighty flame *follows* a tiny spark.

星星火花继之以熊熊烈焰。（及物动词）

When you work hard, fortune *follows*.

勤奋工作，好运随之而来。（不及物动词）

作及物动词和不及物动词时，意义完全不同的动词，如：

Love can *work* wonders.

爱可以创造奇迹。（*work*是及物动词，表示“创造”）

Work while you *work*; play while you *play*.

工作时就要工作；放松时就要放松。（*work*是不及物动词，表示“工作”）

*Live* what you teach.

要实践自己教的东西。（*live*是及物动词，表示“实践”）

A light heart *lives* long.

心情轻松人长寿。（*live*是不及物动词，表示“生活”）

Don't *count* your chickens before they're hatched.

蛋未孵化，不要数鸡。（*count*是及物动词，表示“数清”）

Every second *counts*.

每一秒钟都很重要。（*count*是不及物动词，表示“有重要意义”）

Sadness and gladness *succeed* each other.

悲喜相互交替。(succeed 是及物动词，表示“接替”)

You can *succeed* if you are determined to.

如果你下定决心就可以成功。(succeed 是不及物动词，表示“成功”)

有些不及物动词，与同源名词作动宾搭配时，转化为及物动词，意义保持不变，如：

We have every right to *dream* heroic dreams.

我们完全有权力去做英雄的梦想。

You *live* several lives while reading a great book.

在阅读一本好书时，你可以经历不同人的生活。

If you realize how powerful your thoughts are, you will never *think* a negative thought.

假如你意识到自己思想的力量，你就不会有消极的想法。

这样的动词还包括 breathe, die, laugh, sleep, smile 和 think 等，如 breathe a deep breath (深吸一口气)，die a miserable death (死得悲惨)，sleep a sound sleep(熟睡)。

9.1.2 按照本身意义，动词可分为实义动词、系动词、助动词和情态动词。

a 实义动词是指表达动作或状态主要意义的动词，可以在句中单独作谓语。在这四类动词中，实义动词的数量占了绝大多数。

*Plan* while others are *playing*.

别人娱乐时你要做计划。

*Study* while others are *sleeping*.

别人熟睡时你要学习。

*Decide* while others are *delaying*.

别人拖延时你要做出决定。

*Work* while others are *wishing*.

别人期望时你要工作。

b 系动词是指连接主语和表语的动词。系动词中最常见的为be，其他还有很多，详见《系动词和情态动词》一章。

Today *is* our only sure possession.

今天是我们唯一可靠的财产。

Life *is* a battle.

人生是一场战斗。

When your will *is* ready, your feet *are* light.

意志坚决，脚步轻快。

Whatever happens, *stay* calm.

不论发生什么，都要保持平静。

c 助动词是指与实义动词连用，表示各种时态、语态、否定和疑问，其本身没有实际含义。助动词主要有三个，分别是：be, do和have (除了作助动词外，be还可以作系动词，do和have还可以作实义动词)。

A.助动词be

助动词be有is, am, are, was, were, been和being等形式，在句中可以和实义动词一起构成进行时态和被动语态，如：

be构成进行时态

Still I *am* learning.

我仍在学习。

Believe that pleasantness *is* coming.

相信吧，愉快的日子正在来临。

A learning organization is a group of people who *are* continually enhancing their capability to create their future.

学习型组织是一群不断加强自身能力、创造未来的人。

be构成被动语态

A hero cannot *be* judged by success and failure.

不能以成败论英雄。

Character *is* made in the small moments of our lives.

性格是在我们人生的各种无关紧要的时刻形成的。

Life *is* truly known to those who endure adversity.

忍受苦难的人真正了解生活。

B. 助动词do

助动词do有do, does和did三种形式，在句中可以和实义动词一起构成否定和疑问，也可以用于对动词的强调以及代替前面出现过的动词以避免重复。

do构成否定

*Don't* value money for its own sake, but for what you can do with it.

不要看重金钱本身，而是看重它的应用价值。

The past *doesn't* equal the future.

过去不等同于未来。

If you *don't* learn how to use pain and pleasure, life controls you.

假如学不会如何利用痛苦和快乐，你就只能任由生活摆布。

do构成疑问句

*Do* you believe that you will succeed by luck?

你相信自己会凭运气成功吗？

*Does he believe in himself?*

他相信自己吗？

*Why do many of us struggle with work?*

为什么我们有很多人工作起来勉为其难呢？

do用于代替前面出现过的动词以避免重复

*Difficulties strengthen the mind, as labor does the body.*

困难磨练意志，劳动增强体质。（does 代替strengthens）

*When you expect things to happen, often they do.*

你期望事情的发生，往往事情就会发生。（do 代替happen）

*It takes less time to make a better decision than it does to correct a poor decision.* (does 代替takes)

做出更好的决定所用的时间比改正糟糕的决定所用的时间少。

### C. 助动词have

助动词have有has, have和had三种形式，和实义动词一起构成完成时态。

*He has achieved success who has lived well, laughed often, and loved much.*

善于生活，时常欢笑，充满爱心的人已经取得了成功。

*If you have made mistakes, there is always another chance for you.*

即使你犯了错误，你总还有机会。

*Once we have clearly defined our thoughts, resources come to us.*

一旦我们对想法有了明确的界定，资源就会出现。

*By that time, the biggest lesson they had learned was the importance of thinking.*

到那时为止，他们最大的收获就是明白了思考的重要性。

此外，will, shall, would和should也可以作助动词，表示将来时态，详见《动词时态》一章。

d 情态动词是指表达说话者的情绪或者态度的词。情态动词本身有一定的含义，但需要和实义动词一起使用才能表达完整的意义。

情态动词一般没有人称和单复数的变化，大部分也没有时态变化。情态动词之后跟动词原形。

情态动词包括can, may, must, need, should, dare等，详见《系动词和情态动词》一章。以下仅举数例说明。

*You can do it if you believe you can.*

如果你相信自己能做到你就能做到。

*One must never keep a dream waiting.*

一个人决不要让梦想等候。

A man *may* die, nations *may* fall, but an idea lives on.

人可能会死亡，国家可能会衰亡，但思想永存。

### 9.1.3 按照在句中的语法功能，动词可以分为限定动词和非限定动词两类。

a 限定动词用作句子的谓语，在形态变化方面受主语的限制。

限定动词有人称变化和单复数变化，如：

I *am* the captain of my soul.

我是自己灵魂的主宰。

Man's greatest gift *is* his thinking mind.

人最伟大的天赋是他有思考的大脑。

Humans *are* the only thinking creatures.

人是唯一会思考的生物。

Strength and struggle *go* hand in hand.

力量和奋斗紧密相联。

b 非限定动词不作句子的谓语，在形态变化方面不受主语的限制。

非限定动词包括动名词、不定式、现在分词和过去分词，详见相关各章，此处仅举数例说明。

When we pursue what we want, we often miss *getting* what we really need.

当我们追求我们希望之物时，我们往往错过真正需要之物。（动名词）

For it *to be* useful in achieving your success, faith must be active.

信念必须积极才能促成成功。（不定式）

Achieving success is a never-ending process.

取得成功是一个永无止境的过程。（现在分词）

If life cheats you, don't be *disappointed* and *worried*.

假如生活欺骗了你，不要悲伤，不要忧虑。（过去分词）

## 9.2 动词的时态

描述在不同时间发生的动作或存在的状态，动词相应地需使用不同的形式，这种语法现象就是时态。时间可以分为四种：现在、过去、将来和过去将来。动作状态也有四类：一般、进行、完成和完成进行。因此，时间和动作状态可以组合而成英语中的十六种时态，分别为：



一般现在时 一般过去时 一般将来时 过去将来时  
现在进行时 过去进行时 将来进行时 过去将来进行时  
现在完成时 过去完成时 将来完成时 过去将来完成时  
现在完成进行时 过去完成进行时 将来完成进行时 过去将来完成进行时  
(现在的动作状态) (过去的动作状态) (将来的动作状态) (过去将来的动作状态)

时态虽然有十六种，但常用的只有十二种，将来完成进行时、过去将来进行时、过去将来完成时和过去将来完成进行时四种时态在实际使用中并不多见。详见《动词时态》一章，此处仅举数例说明。

You *have* choices. There is a better way to live.

你有选择。有更好的生活方式。（一般现在时）

Believe while others *are doubting*.

别人疑惑时你要坚信。（现在进行时）

We are what we are because we *have first dreamed* it.

因为我们做什么样的梦，所以我们成为什么样的人。（现在完成时）

There *was* never a night that *had* no morning.

从来没有不见清晨的夜晚。（一般过去时）

The defeat that seems to break your heart today *will be* but a ripple among the waves of other experiences in the ocean of your life further ahead.

今天似乎令你伤心欲碎的失败只不过是未来人生大海其他经历之波的一丝涟漪。（一般将来时）

## 9.3 动词的语态

动词的语态有两种：主动语态和被动语态。

### 9.3.1 主动语态表示动词和主语是主动关系，主语是施动者。

Love can do anything.

爱可以做到一切。

Everyone wants to feel worthwhile.

每个人都希望感觉有价值。

We should use whatever life gives us.

生活给我们什么就应利用什么。

You can make your own trail.

你可以开辟自己的蹊径。

### 9.3.2 被动语态表示动词和主语是被动关系，主语是受动者。

Love can't be sold.

爱情是不能买卖的。

Calmness is needed in sad days.

阴郁的日子需要镇静。

A good marriage must be created.

美好的婚姻是创造出来的。

## 9.4 动词的语气

动词的语气表示说话者对所讲内容的态度，包括四种：陈述语气、疑问语气、祈使语气和虚拟语气。在不同的语气中，动词的形式不同。

### 9.4.1 陈述语气

体现在陈述句或疑问句中，动词有各种时态变化。

Life means struggle.

人生意味着奋斗。

Kind words are the music of the world.

善言善语是世界的音乐。

Every life is a boat and the ideal is its sail.

每个人的生命都是一只小船，理想是小船的风帆。

### 9.4.2 疑问语气

体现在疑问句中，动词有各种时态变化。

What is genius? Lifelong efforts make genius.

什么是天才？终生努力，便成天才。

What motive inspires you to give your best?

是什么动机激励你尽力而为？

How am I going to live today in order to create tomorrow?

我今天将怎样生活才能创造明天呢？

### 9.4.3 祈使语气

体现在祈使句中，表达请求、要求、命令、建议等，动词使用原形。

Just do what you love and believe in.

做自己所爱和坚信的事情。

Do not pray for easy lives. Pray to be stronger men!

不要祈求安逸的生活。祈求成为更坚强的人吧！

Act in the living present.

趁着现在的时光行动起来。

#### 9.4.4 虚拟语气

体现在虚拟语气的句子中，表达非真实的情况，动词按照语法规则的特殊要求，使用特定的形式，详见《虚拟语气》一章。

If there were no clouds, we should not enjoy the sun.

如果没有乌云，我们就不会享受阳光。

If we had no winter, the spring would not be so pleasant.

如果没有冬天，春天就不会如此宜人。

If we all did the things we are capable of doing, we would astound ourselves.

假如我们全都完成自己能够做的事情，我们会令自己惊讶不已。

Many would be wise if they did not think themselves wise.

假如他们不自以为聪明，很多人会变得聪明。

### 9.5 动词的基本形式

动词的基本形式包括：动词原形、第三人称单数形式、现在分词、过去式和过去分词形式。以下探讨动词的后四种形式。

#### 9.5.1 动词的第三人称单数形式

在一般现在时中，当主语是第三人称单数时，动词应使用第三人称单数形式，具体的变化规则为：

a 多数动词在词尾加-s。如：

defeat 打败 → defeats fall 下降 → falls

hope 希望 → hopes make 制作 → makes

rise 上升 → rises run 奔跑 → runs

succeed 成功 → succeeds walk 走路 → walks

b 以o, s, x, ch, sh结尾的动词，在词尾加-es。如：

do 做 → does    echo 发出回声 → echoes  
go 去 → goes    veto 否决 → vetoes  
dress 穿衣 → dresses    express 表达 → expresses  
guess 猜测 → guesses    kiss 吻 → kisses  
fix 固定 → fixes    mix 混合 → mixes  
relax 放松 → relaxes    tax 征税 → taxes  
reach 到达 → reaches    search 搜寻 → searches  
teach 教会 → teaches    touch 触摸 → touches  
finish 结束 → finishes    punish 惩罚 → punishes  
wash 清洗 → washes    wish 希望 → wishes

c 以辅音字母+y结尾的动词，变y为i，再加-es。如：

carry 携带 → carries    deny 否认 → denies  
envy 妒忌 → envies    reply 回答 → replies  
supply 供应 → supplies    try 尝试 → tries  
vary 有差异 → varies    worry 担心 → worries

d 动词be和have的第三人称单数形式分别为is和has。

### 9.5.2 动词的现在分词形式

a 一般情况下，在动词词尾直接加-ing。如：

build 建立 → building    earn 赚钱 → earning  
grow 成长 → growing    repeat 重复 → repeating  
speak 说话 → speaking    start 开始 → starting  
train 训练 → training    work 工作 → working

b 以不发音的e结尾的动词，去掉e，再加-ing。如：

achieve 取得 → achieving    change 改变 → changing  
continue 继续 → continuing    leave 离开 → leaving  
move 移动 → moving    organize 组织 → organizing  
prepare 准备 → preparing    reduce 减少 → reducing

c 单音节，且以元音字母+辅音字母结尾的动词，要双写最后的辅音字母，再加-ing。如：

drop 掉落 → dropping    get 得到 → getting

plan 计划 → planning run 奔跑 → running  
set 确定 → setting sit 坐下 → sitting  
stir 搅动 → stirring swim 游泳 → swimming

但以x结尾的动词除外，如：

fix 安装 → fixing mix 混合 → mixing

d 重音在最后一个音节，且结尾是辅音字母的动词，要双写最后的辅音字母，再加-ing。如：

begin 开始 → beginning compel 强迫 → compelling  
forget 忘记 → forgetting occur 发生 → occurring  
omit 遗漏 → omitting refer 提到 → referring  
regret 懊悔 → regretting transfer 转移 → transferring

但以x结尾的动词除外。如：

relax 放松 → relaxing perplex 使困惑 → perplexing

e 以字母c结尾的动词，加-king。这样的动词包括：

bivouac 露宿 → bivouacking havoc 严重破坏 → havocking  
mimic 模仿 → mimicking panic 恐慌 → panicking  
picnic 野餐 → picnicking traffic 非法贩卖 → trafficking

f 以-ie结尾的动词，变-ie为-y, 再加-ing。这样的动词包括：

die 死亡 → dying lie 躺；撒谎 → lying  
tie 捆绑 → tying vie 竞争 → vying

g 以l, m, p结尾的有些动词，不论是否为单音节或者重音在最后一个音节，变现在分词时最后一个字母可以双写，也可以不双写（英国英语双写，美国英语单写）。这样的动词包括：

cancel 取消 → cancel(l)ing dial 拨号 → dial(l)ing  
equal 等同 → equal(l)ing label 加标签 → label(l)ing  
marvel 惊讶 → marvel(l)ing model 模仿 → model(l)ing  
program 编程 → program(m)ing quarrel 争吵 → quarrel(l)ing  
rival 竞争 → rival(l)ing travel 旅行 → travel(l)ing  
worship 崇拜 → worship(p)ing

h 有些以s结尾的动词，变现在分词时，s可以双写，也可以不双写。这样的动词包括：

bias 使有偏见 → bias(s)ing bus 乘公交车 → bus(s)ing  
focus 聚焦 → focus(s)ing nonplus 困惑 → nonplus(s)ing

### 9.5.3 动词的过去式和过去分词形式

大部分动词的过去式和过去分词形式完全相同。

a 规则变化

- A. 一般情况下，在动词词尾直接加-ed。如：  
broaden 开阔 → broadened develop 发展 → developed  
enjoy 享受 → enjoyed obey 遵守 → obeyed  
prompt 推动 → prompted respect 尊敬 → respected  
watch 观察 → watched wish 希望 → wished
- B. 以字母e结尾的动词，直接加-d。  
believe 相信 → believed complete 完成 → completed  
judge 判断 → judged love 爱 → loved  
place 放置 → placed refuse 拒绝 → refused  
rule 统治 → ruled urge 催促 → urged
- C. 以辅音字母+y结尾的动词，变y为i，再加-ed。  
carry 携带 → carried deny 否认 → denied  
envy 妒忌 → envied reply 回答 → replied  
supply 供应 → supplied try 尝试 → tried  
vary 有差异 → varied worry 担心 → worried
- D. 单音节，且以元音字母+辅音字母结尾的动词，要双写最后的辅音字母，再加-ed (大部分和现在分词变化中的动词相同，但少量有不规则变化，如get, run, set, sit, swim等)。如：  
ban 禁止 → banned beg 乞求 → begged  
drop 掉落 → dropped plan 计划 → planned  
rob 抢劫 → robbed scan 审视 → scanned  
stir 搅动 → stirred stop 停止 → stopped
- 但以x结尾的动词除外。如：  
fix 安装 → fixed mix 混合 → mixed
- E. 重音在最后一个音节，且结尾是辅音字母的动词，要双写最后的辅音字母，再加-ed (大部分和现在分词变化中的动词相同，但少量有不规则变化，如begin, forget等)。如：  
admit 承认 → admitted compel 强迫 → compelled  
occur 发生 → occurred omit 遗漏 → omitted  
prefer 偏爱 → preferred rebel 反叛 → rebelled  
regret 懊悔 → regretted transfer 转移 → transferred
- 但以x结尾的动词除外。如：  
relax 放松 → relaxed perplex 使困惑 → perplexed
- F. 以字母c结尾的动词，加-ked。这样的动词包括：  
bivouac 露宿 → bivouacked havoc 严重破坏 → havocked  
mimic 模仿 → mimicked panic 恐慌 → panicked  
picnic 野餐 → picnicked traffic 非法贩卖 → trafficked

G. 以l, m, p结尾的有些动词，不论是否为单音节或者重音在最后一个音节，变过去式和过去分词时最后一个字母可以双写，也可以不双写（英国英语双写，美国英语单写）。这样的动词包括：

cancel 取消 → cancel(l)ed    dial 拨号 → dial(l)ed  
equal 等同 → equal(l)ed    label 加标签 → label(l)ed  
marvel 惊讶 → marvel(l)ed    model 模仿 → model(l)ed  
program 编程 → program(m)ed    quarrel 争吵 → quarrel(l)ed  
rival 竞争 → rival(l)ed    travel 旅行 → travel(l)ed  
worship 崇拜 → worship(p)ed

H. 有些以s结尾的动词，变过去式和过去分词时，s可以双写，也可以不双写。这样的动词包括：

bias 使有偏见 → bias(s)ed    bus 乘公交车 → bus(s)ed  
focus 聚焦 → focus(s)ed    nonplus 困惑 → nonplus(s)ed

b 不规则变化

A. 过去式、过去分词皆为动词原形

动词原形    基本词义    过去式    过去分词

beset 困扰；围绕；围攻    beset    beset

bet 打赌    bet    bet

broadcast 广播    broadcast    broadcast

burst 爆裂；迸发    burst    burst

bust 打碎    bust (或busted)    bust (或busted)

cast 扔    cast    cast

cost 花费    cost    cost

cut 切割    cut    cut

forecast 预报    forecast    forecast

hit 打击    hit    hit

hurt 伤害    hurt    hurt

input 输入    input    input

inset 嵌入    inset    inset

knit 编织    knit(或knitted)    knit(或knitted)

let 容许    let    let

mishit 误击    mishit    mishit

misread 读错    misread    misread

offset 抵销    offset    offset

outbid 出价高过    outbid    outbid

output 输出    output    output

overcast 变阴；沮丧    overcast    overcast

proofread 校对 proofread proofread  
put 放置 put put  
quit 放弃 quit quit  
read 阅读 read read  
recast 改造 recast recast  
reset 重新设置 reset reset  
rid 去除 rid rid  
set 设置 set set  
shut 关闭 shut shut  
slit 撕开 slit slit  
split 分裂 split split  
spread 展开 spread spread  
thrust 猛推 thrust thrust  
underbid 出价低于 underbid underbid  
(或underbidden)  
upset 使烦乱 upset upset  
wed 与.....结婚 wed (或wedded) wed (或wedded)  
wet 弄湿 wet (或wetted) wet (或wetted)

B. 过去式、过去分词不同于动词原形，但两者变化相同

动词原形 基本词义 过去式 过去分词  
abide 居住 abode abode  
(或abided) (或abided)  
behold 看见 beheld beheld  
bend 弯曲 bent bent  
bereave 使丧失亲人 bereft bereft  
(或bereaved) (或bereaved)  
beseech 恳求 besought besought  
(或beseeched) (或beseeched)  
bind 捆绑 bound bound  
bleed 流血 bled bled  
bless 保佑 blest (或blessed) blest (或blessed)  
breed 养育 bred bred  
bring 带来 brought brought  
build 建造 built built  
burn 燃烧 burnt (或burned) burnt (或burned)  
buy 购买 bought bought



can 能够 could could  
catch 捕捉 caught caught  
cleave 劈开 cleft (或clove) cleft (或cloven)  
cling 抓紧 clung clung  
creep 爬行 crept crept  
deal 处理 dealt dealt  
dig 挖掘 dug dug  
dream 梦想 dreamt dreamt  
(或dreamed) (或dreamed)  
dwell 居住 dwelt (或dwelled) dwelt (或dwelled)  
feed 喂养 fed fed  
feel 感觉 felt felt  
fight 战斗 fought fought  
find 发现 found found  
flee 逃走 fled fled  
fling 扔 flung flung  
foretell 预言 foretold foretold  
get 得到 got got (或gotten)  
gird 围绕 girt (或girded) girt (或girded)  
grind 磨碎 ground ground  
hang 悬挂 hung hung  
have 拥有 had had  
hear 听见 heard heard  
heave 拉起 hove (或heaved) hove (或heaved)  
hold 拿着 held held  
inlay 嵌入 inlaid inlaid  
keep 保存 kept kept  
kneel 跪倒 knelt (或kneeled) knelt (或kneeled)  
lay 放置 laid laid  
lead 引导 led led  
lean 倾斜 leant (或leaned) leant (或leaned)  
leap 跳跃 leapt (或leaped) leapt  
learn 学会 learnt learnt  
(或learned) (或learned)  
leave 离开 ; 留下 left left  
lend 借出 lent lent  
light 点燃 ; 照亮 lit (或lighted) lit (或lighted)

lose 失去 lost lost  
make 制作 made made  
may 可能 might might  
mean 意味着；打算 meant meant  
meet 遇见 met met  
mishear 听错 misheard misheard  
mislay 放错地方 mislaid mislaid  
mislead 误导 misled misled  
misspell 拼错 misspelt misspelt  
(或misspelled) (或misspelled)  
misunderstand 误解 misunderstood misunderstood  
outshine 比.....更亮； outshone outshone  
比.....更出色  
overfeed 喂食过多 overfed overfed  
overhang 悬于.....之上 overhung overhung  
overhear 无意中听到 overheard overheard  
overpay 给.....过高报酬 overpaid overpaid  
oversleep 睡过头 overslept overslept  
overspend 花钱过多 overspent overspent  
pay 支付 paid paid  
rebind 重新捆绑 rebound rebound  
rebuild 重建 rebuilt rebuilt  
relay 重新铺设 relaid relaid  
remake 改造 remade remade  
rend 分裂 rent rent  
repay 回报 repaid repaid  
resell 转售 resold resold  
resit 重考 resat resat  
retell 复述 retold retold  
rewind 倒回 rewound rewound  
say 说话 said said  
seek 寻找 sought sought  
sell 出售 sold sold  
send 发送 sent sent  
shine 发光 shone (或shined) shone (或shined)  
shoe 给.....穿鞋； shod shod  
给马钉蹄铁 (或shoed) (或shoed, shodden)

shoot 射击 shot shot  
sit 坐 sat sat  
sleep 睡觉 slept slept  
slide 滑行 slid slid  
sling 扔 slung slung  
smell 闻, 嗅 smelt (或smelled) smelt (或smelled)  
speed 迅速行进 sped (或speeded) sped (或speeded)  
spell 拼写 spelt (或spelled) spelt (或spelled)  
spend 花费 spent spent  
spill 溢出 spilt (或spilled) spilt (或spilled)  
spin 旋转; 纺线 spun (或span) spun  
spit 吐出 spat (或spit) spat (或spit)  
spoil 破坏 spoilt (或spoiled) spoilt (或spoiled)  
stand 站立 stood stood  
stick 粘住; 坚持 stuck stuck  
sting 螫; 叮 stung stung  
strike 打击 struck struck  
sweep 清扫 swept swept  
swing 摇摆 swung swung  
teach 教 taught taught  
tell 告诉 told told  
think 思考 thought thought  
unbend 弄直; 放松 unbent unbent  
unbind 解开 unbound unbound  
underpay 支付过低报酬 underpaid underpaid  
undersell 以低于他人的 价格出售 undersold undersold  
understand 理解 understood understood  
unwind 解开 unwound unwound  
uphold 高举 upheld upheld  
waylay 拦截 waylaid waylaid  
weep 哭泣 wept wept  
win 获胜 won won  
wind 缠绕; 蜿蜒 wound wound  
withhold 阻挡; 拒给 withheld withheld  
withstand 经受; 抵挡 withstood withstood  
wring 拧; 紧握 wrung wrung

C. 过去式、过去分词变化不同

动词原形 基本词义 过去式 过去分词

arise 出现, 发生 arose arisen

awake 睡醒; 唤醒 awoke awoken  
(或awaked) (或awaked)

be 是 was (单数) been  
were (复数)

bear 承受; 忍受 bore borne

beat 击打; 击败 beat beaten

become 成为 became become

befall 发生在.....身上 befell befallen

beget 生育; 引起 begot begotten

begin 开始 began begun

bid 命令; 吩咐 bade (或bid) bidden (或bid)

bite 咬 bit bitten

blow 吹 blew blown

break 打破 broke broken

browbeat 威逼, 吓唬 browbeat browbeaten

choose 选择 chose chosen

come 来 came come

chide 责备 chid chidden  
(或chided) (或chided, chid)

dive 潜水, 跳水 dove (或dived) dived

do 做 did done

draw 画 drew drawn

drink 喝 drank drunk

drive 驾驶 drove driven

eat 吃 ate eaten

fall 降落; 跌倒 fell fallen

fly 飞 flew flown

forbid 禁止 forbade (或forbad) forbidden

forbear 克制 forbore forborne

foreknow 预知 foreknew foreknown

foresee 预见 foresaw foreseen

forget 忘记 forgot forgotten

forgive 原谅 forgave forgiven

forgo 放弃 forwent forgone  
forsake 抛弃 forsook forsaken  
forswear 坚决放弃 forswore forsworn  
freeze 冻结 froze frozen  
give 给予 gave given  
go 去 went gone  
grow 成长 grew grown  
hew 砍, 劈 hewed hewn (或hewed)  
hide 躲藏 hid hidden (或hid)  
interweave 交织 interwove interwoven  
(或interweaved) (或interweaved)  
know 知道 knew known  
lie 躺; 位于 lay lain  
melt 融化; 熔化 melted molten (或melted)  
mistake 误解; 误认 mistook mistaken  
mow 割(草、庄稼等) mowed mown (或mowed)  
outdo 比.....做得更好 outdid outdone  
outgrow 长得比.....快 outgrew outgrown  
outrun 跑得比.....快 outran outrun  
overbear 制服 overbore overborne  
overcome 克服; 征服 overcame overcome  
overdo 做得过分; overdid overdone  
饭做得过了火候  
overdraw 透支 overdrew overdrawn  
overeat 吃得过饱 overate overeaten  
override 无视; 使无效 overrode overridden  
oversee 监督 oversaw overseen  
overtake 超过 overtook overtaken  
overthrow 推翻 overthrew overthrown  
overwrite 写得过多 overwrote overwritten  
partake 参与; 分享 partook partaken  
prove 证明 proved proven (或proved)  
redo 重做 redid redone  
rerun 再播放 reran rerun  
retake 重录; 重拍; 夺回 retook retaken  
rewrite 重写 rewrote rewritten  
ride 骑 rode ridden

ring 铃响；打电话 rang rung  
rise 升起 rose risen  
run 奔跑 ran run  
saw 锯 sawed sawn (或sawed)  
see 看到 saw seen  
sew 缝 sewed sewn (或sewed)  
shake 抖动 shook shaken  
shear 剪 sheared shorn (或sheared)  
show 出示；表明 showed shown (或showed)  
shrink 收缩；畏缩 shrank shrunk  
sing 歌唱 sang sung  
sink 下沉 sank sunk  
slay 杀死 slew slain  
smite 猛击 smote smitten  
sow 播种 sowed sown (或sowed)  
speak 说话 spoke spoken  
spring 跳；涌现 sprang sprung  
steal 偷窃 stole stolen  
strew 散播 strewed strewn (或strewed)  
stride 阔步行走；跨越 strode stridden (或strid)  
strive 努力 strove (或strived) striven (或strived)  
swear 发誓；咒骂 swore sworn  
swell 膨胀 swelled swollen (或swelled)  
swim 游泳 swam swum  
take 拿走 took taken  
tear 撕碎 tore torn  
throw 扔 threw thrown  
tread 践踏；走 trod trodden (或trod)  
undergo 经受；接受 underwent undergone  
underlie 位于.....之下； underlay underlain  
构成.....的基础  
undertake 从事 undertook undertaken  
underwrite 签署 underwrote underwritten  
undo 解开 undid undone  
unfreeze 解冻；取消限制 unfroze unfrozen  
wake 睡醒 woke (或waked) woken (或waked)  
wear 穿戴 wore worn

weave 编织 wove woven

withdraw 收回；提取；撤退 withdrew withdrawn

write 写 wrote written

## 第10章 系动词和情态动词

系动词是连接主语和表语的动词。系动词中最常见的是be，除此之外，还有其他一些。根据意义，系动词可以划分为三大类：表示状态的保持、表示状态的转变、表示感官。

### 10.1 表示状态保持的系动词

包括be (是), continue (维持), go (处于), keep (保持), lie (处于), remain (保持), rest (保持), stand (处于), stay (保持)等。例：

I *am* the source of all my emotions.

我是自己一切情感的来源。

No problem *is* permanent.

没有永久的问题。

When you *are* an accurate thinker, you *are* the master, not the slave, of your emotions.

当你思考正确的时候，你就是自己情感的主人，而不是情感的奴隶。

It's especially rewarding to give praise in areas where effort generally *goes* unnoticed.

对于通常不为人们注意的努力加以赞扬是特别有益的。

I will talk when the failure *keeps* silent.

当失败缄口不言时我将高谈阔论。

The seed of success *lies* wrapped up in the little things of life.

成功的种子蕴藏在生活的小事之中。

He who does not look ahead *remains* behind.

不向前看的人永远落在后面。

He *remained* calm in an emergency situation.

他在危急情况下镇定自若。

When you are faced with a difficult challenge, *stay* positive.

面对艰难的挑战，要保持积极。

关于此类系动词的常见表达有：

go astray 迷路；走失 go unanswered 没有得到回答

go unnoticed 没有受到注意 go unpunished 没有受到惩罚

go unsettled 没有得到解决 keep fit 保持健康

keep quiet 保持安静 keep silent 保持沉默



keep in touch 保持联系 lie awake 没有睡着  
rest assured 放心 rest content 心满意足  
rest easy 放心 rest satisfied 心满意足  
stand firm 坚定不移 stand idle 闲置不用  
stand opposed 反对 stand ready 做好准备  
stand still 静止不动 stay awake 醒着  
stay calm 保持镇静 stay healthy 保持健康

## 10.2 表示状态转变的系动词

包括become (成为), come (成为), fall (变成), get (变得), grow (变得), prove (原来是, 结果是), run (变得), turn (变得)。例:

Life will *become* better as long as you try.

只要努力, 生活会变得更美好。

A lack of planning is the most common reason we *fall* short of our dreams and our goals.

缺少计划是我们的梦想和目标落空的最普遍原因。

Even if you happen to *get* lucky, your luck can run out.

即使碰巧走运, 运气也会用光。

Don't *grow* old; grow up.

不要变老; 要成长。(第一个grow为系动词, 而第二个grow为实义动词)

An action that *proves* successful today will be unworkable tomorrow.

今天能取得成功的行动到明天也许就会不切实际。

关于此类系动词的常见表达有:

come alive 活跃起来 come loose 松脱

come awake 醒来 come open 开了

come true 实现 fall apart 散架; 崩溃

fall asleep 入睡 fall dead 死亡

fall behind 落在后面 fall flat 完全失败

fall heir 成为继承人 fall ill 生病

fall in love 坠入爱河 fall short 达不到标准; 不足

fall unconscious 失去知觉 fall victim 成为受害者

go bankrupt 破产 go blind 失明

go insane 发疯 go mad 发疯

run dry 干涸 run high 上涨; 激昂

run short 缺乏 run wild 失去控制; 变得荒芜

## 10.3 表示感官的系动词

包括appear (看上去), feel (感觉), look (看上去), ring (听起来), seem (似乎), sound (听起来), taste (尝起来)等。如：

Some things may first *appear* hopeless, but they are only the test of people's will.

有些事情最初似乎没有希望，但不过是对人们意志的考验。

When people *feel* good about you, then your level of influence increases.

当人们对你感觉不错的时候，那么你的影响程度就有了提高。

Don't try to *look* bigger than you are.

不要试图显得比自己的实际情况有所夸大。

One is more likely to *ring* convincing when telling the truth.

一个人在讲真话时听上去更有可能令人信服。

What *seems* impossible can be made possible.

似乎不可能的事情也一样可以实现。

Setting goals *sounds* fairly easy, but actually it isn't.

确定目标听起来相当容易，但其实不然。

A good medicine *tastes* bitter.

良药苦口。

情态动词表达说话者的情绪或者态度。情态动词包括can, could, dare, may, might, must, need, shall, should, will, would, had better, ought to, have to, would rather, used to等。

情态动词除have to之外，没有第三人称单数形式；can, dare, may, shall和will有过去式，分别为could, dared, might, should和would。除have to之外，情态动词的否定形式不用助动词do，而是将否定词直接置于情态动词之后。

在一般情况下，情态动词之后跟动词原形。

## 10.4 情态动词的意义

### 10.4.1 can

a 表示能力

You *can* change your attitude.

你可以改变自己的态度。

A light spirit *can* bear a heavy fate.

精神轻松能担负沉重的命运。

You *can* do it if you believe you *can*.

如果你相信自己有能力，你就能做到。

b 表示可能性

Losing *can* be a real beginning.

失败可以成为真正的开始。

You *can't* step into the same river twice.

你不可能两次踏进同一条河流。

Bad listening habits *can* hurt you a lot in your daily life.

在日常生活中坏的倾听习惯会给你造成很大伤害。

If winter comes, *can* spring be far behind?

冬天来了，春天还会远吗？

c 表示允许

You *can't* benefit from others' losses.

你不能从他人的损失中获利。

could是can的过去式，用法同can。

As long as he *could* work, he did work.

只要他能够工作，他就工作。

### 10.4.2 dare

dare表示“敢于”，作助动词时主要用于否定句、条件句和疑问句。

The weak *dare* not challenge life.

弱者不敢向生活提出挑战。

If you *dare* take the first step, the rest will be easy.

如果你敢于迈出第一步，其余的就容易了。

I *dare* not linger, for my long walk is not yet ended.

我不敢徘徊，因为长路还没有结束。

*Dare* you be the first to eat oysters?

你敢做第一个吃牡蛎的人吗？

在肯定句中，dare作实义动词，后接不定式。

A man who *dares* to waste one hour of life has not discovered the value of life.

敢于浪费一小时生命的人还没有发现生命的价值。

### 10.4.3 may

a 表示可能性

You *may* lead a horse to the water, but you cannot make him drink.

引马河边易，逼马饮水难。

Any man *may* become great by doing the commonplace things in life in a great spirit.

任何人以伟大的精神做生活中平淡无奇的事情，都可能变得伟大。

Even when the experts all agree, they *may* be mistaken.

即使所有专家都看法一致，他们也可能错了。

Our problems are man-made, so they *may* be solved by man.

我们的问题是人为的，因此它们可以由人解决。

The man who is above his business *may* one day find his business above him.

一个不屑于自己工作的人终有一天会发现他不配干自己的工作。

*may*经常和副词*well*一起使用，表示“很可能”，*well*用于加强语气。

You *may well* surprise yourself at what strengths you have.

你很可能对自己拥有的力量感到惊讶。

b 表示允许

You *may* do whatever you like only if you do no harm to anyone else.

只要无害于任何人，你就可以做任何自己喜欢的事情。

Your mind *may* be free no matter where you are.

不管身处何地，你的思想是可以无拘无束的。

*might*是*may*的过去式，用法同*may*。除此之外，*might*也可以用于现在时，表达的语气较轻或较为婉转。如：

Misfortune *might* be a blessing in disguise.

不幸可能是披着伪装的好事。

#### 10.4.4 must

a 表示“必须”。

One *must* do the thing which he thinks he cannot do.

一个人必须做他认为自己不能做的事情。

In order to succeed, you *must* have a long-term focus.

为了成功，必须有长远的中心目标。

A definite objective *must* be established if we are to accomplish anything in a big way.

如果我们要彻底完成什么事情，就必须确立一个明确的目标。

When we want to have more roses, we *must* plant trees.

想要更多的玫瑰，我们必须栽植玫瑰树。

b 表示推测，理解为“一定”。

In unity there *must* be strength.

团结一定会有力量。

One who has time *must* have everything.

有时间就一定会有一切。

Take away the cause and the effect *must* cease.

去除根源，其结果一定会消失。

c 在否定意义中表示“一定不能”，“决不能”。

One *must* never keep dream waiting.

一个人决不能让梦想等候。

This is an opportunity that comes once in a lifetime. We *mustn't* let it pass.

这是一生一次的机会。我们一定不能让它溜走。

We must accept finite disappointment, but we *must* never lose infinite hope.

我们必须接受有限的失望，但是千万不可丧失无限的希望。

#### 10.4.5 need

need表示“需要”、“必须”。作情态动词的need主要用于否定句和疑问句。

He who labors diligently *need* never despair.

勤奋劳动的人不必绝望。

You *needn't* believe that a man can become happy through the unhappiness of another.

你不要认为一个人可以通过他人的不幸而变得幸福。

*Need* everyone feel valued?

每个人都需要被人重视吗？

*Need* all of us, at certain moments of our lives, take advice and receive help from other people?

我们所有人，在人生的某些时刻，都需要接受他人的建议和帮助吗？

在肯定句中，need为实义动词，后面的动词使用不定式的形式。

Teachers *need* to learn how to bring out the best in every student.

教师们需要学会如何让每个学生最好的潜质得到发挥。

#### 10.4.6 shall

shall主要用作助动词，用于第一人称，和实义动词一起构成将来时态。当shall用作情态动词时，用于第二和第三人称，表示许诺、命令、告诫等。

You *shall* get our help.

你会得到我们的帮助。

Man *shall* not live by bread alone.

人不能仅靠面包活着。

Government of the people, by the people, and for the people *shall* not perish from the earth.

民有，民治，民享的政府将永世长存。

#### 10.4.7 should

##### a 表示“应该”

Everyone *should* participate in life in a meaningful way.

每个人都应该以一种有意义的方式参与生活。

You *should* try to seek every opportunity instead of just waiting quietly for its visit.

你应该努力寻找每次机会，而不是静候机会的到来。

Your attention *should* focus on four areas: confidence, understanding, fairness, courage.

你的注意力应聚焦于四个领域：信心、理解、公正、勇气。

##### b 表示可能性

Everyone *should* be wiser today than yesterday.

每个人在今天都可能比昨天更聪明。

##### c 表示惊奇，理解为“竟然会”

It is incredible that we *should* hate and destroy one another.

我们竟然彼此仇视，互相残杀，真是令人难以置信。

It is wonderful that you *should* have achieved so much in these years.

这些年你竟然取得了这么大成绩，真了不起。

It is the common wonder of all men how among so many millions of faces, there *should* be none alike.

在如此众多的面孔之中，竟没有任何人相同，这是人类的共同奇迹。

#### 10.4.8 will

will主要用作助动词，和实义动词一起构成将来时态。当will用作情态动词时，表示意愿和习惯等。

Today I *will* be master of my emotions.

今天我要做自己情感的主人。

You can if you *will*.

如果你愿意，你就能。

You can always find the sun within yourself if you *will* search.

如果愿意找寻，你总能在内心找到阳光。

Heaven never helps the man who *will* not act.

上天绝不会帮助不愿行动的人。

#### 10.4.9 had better

had better表示劝告或者委婉的命令，理解为“应该”，“最好”，“还是……为好”。

Whatever we are going to do, we *had better* get on with it.

不论要做什么，我们最好坚持下去。

We'd *better* struggle for the future rather than regret for the past.

我们应该为未来而奋斗，而不是为过去而懊悔。

#### 10.4.10 ought to

ought to表示“应该”，义同should。

Man *ought to* have something that he prefers to life.

人应该拥有其喜爱程度胜过生命的东西。

We *ought not to* look back unless it is to derive useful lessons from past errors and profit from experience.

我们不应该往回看，除非从过去的错误中汲取有用的教训，以及从经验中受益。

#### 10.4.11 have to

have to表示“必须”，“不得不”。

To make a lasting marriage we *have to* overcome self-centeredness.

我们必须克服以自我为中心才能创造持久的婚姻。

You *have to* thank your lucky stars about what goes right on a daily basis.

你必须每天为顺利进展的事情感谢自己的幸运之星。

Those who think they have no time for bodily exercise will sooner or later *have to* find time for illness.

认为没有时间锻炼身体的人迟早必须找出时间看病。

have to还常采取have got to的形式。

You *have got to* like what you do.

你必须喜欢自己所做的事情。

You've *got to* believe deep inside yourself that you're destined to do great things.

你必须在内心深处相信，你注定要成就大事。

*You've got to learn to survive a defeat.*

你必须学会在失败中求得生存。

*You've got to be in a determined state in order to succeed.*

为了成功，你必须心态坚定。

#### 10.4.12 would rather (或would sooner)

would rather (或would sooner)表示“宁愿”。

*I would rather (或would sooner) begin at the bottom and climb to the top.*

我宁愿从底部开始爬到顶点。

*In order to pursue light and heat, people would rather (或would sooner) lose their lives.*

为了追求光和热，人宁愿舍弃自己的生命。

would rather(或would sooner)经常和than搭配使用，基本表达为would rather do sth. than do sth. else, 表示“宁愿.....而不愿”。

*I would rather (或would sooner) pursue my future on my own than beg help from the powerful.*

我宁愿靠自己追求未来，而不愿向权势者乞求帮助。

*We would rather (或would sooner) die on our feet than live on our knees.*

我们宁愿站着死，也不愿跪着生。

*We would rather (或would sooner) do and not promise than promise and not do.*

我们宁愿只做而不许诺，也不愿只许诺而不做。

*Sometimes I would rather (或would sooner) have people take away years of my life than take away a moment.*

有时我宁愿人们占用我生命的几年光阴，也不愿人们占用我的某一时刻。

#### 10.4.13 used to

used to表示过去的事实或状态，而且暗示现在已经不再如此。

*I used to be a coward, but now I'm not.*

我过去是个懦夫，但现在不是了。

*My father used to say, "It is important to learn from your mistakes."*

父亲过去常说：“从过去的错误中学习很重要。”



He *used to* smoke, but knowing what a bad habit it is, he stopped three years ago.

他过去常吸烟，但是了解到这是一个坏习惯之后，在三年前就戒了。

## 10.5 情态动词+现在完成时的用法

很多时候，情态动词之后跟现在完成时，表示对过去事情的猜测或思考等。情态动词之后的现在完成时其基本表达为have done，其中的have没有人称和数的变化。如：

I *can* (或*could*) *have made* it, but I didn't try my best, so I feel regretful.  
我本可以成功的，但我当时并没有尽力，所以我感到懊悔。（can或could+现在完成时表示“本可以做某事”，而实际上当时并没有做）

No matter what a person's past *may* (*might*) *have been*, his future is spotless.

不管一个人过去可能曾是什么样子，他的未来是一尘不染的。  
（may或might+现在完成时表示“可能做过某事”，是对过去的猜测）

God *must have made* every human being with a different intention.  
上帝创造每个人一定是出于不同的目的。（must+现在完成时表示“一定做过某事”，是对过去语气非常肯定的猜测）

She *can't* (或*couldn't*) *have succeeded* by luck because she made every effort possible.

她是不可能靠运气成功的，因为她付出了全部努力。（can't或couldn't+现在完成时表示“不可能做过某事”，是must+现在完成时的否定表达。注意：英语中不使用must not+现在完成时）

How I regretted the hours wasted in the woods and fields, the days when I had played and *should*(或*ought to*) *have studied*.

我多么后悔浪费在树林和田野里的时光，那些我本该读书却只顾玩耍的日子。（should或ought to+现在完成时表示“本该做某事”，而实际上当时没有做）

If you doubt his ability, you *shouldn't* (或*ought not to*) *have hired* him in the first place.

如果你怀疑他的能力，你最初本不该雇用他。（should not或ought not to+现在完成时表示“本不该做某事”，而实际上当时做过）

Often when you look back, you feel that you *needn't have worried* so much because a lot of things really didn't matter.

往往当你回首往事时，你会感到自己本来不必忧心忡忡，因为很多事情实际上无关紧要。（need not + 现在完成时表示“本来不必做某事”，而实际上做过）

## 实践演练

### I. 按照汉语提示写出对应的情态动词。

1. Reading \_\_\_\_\_(应该) be enjoyable.
2. Real wealth is being able to avoid doing what one \_\_\_\_\_(宁愿) not.
3. A great book \_\_\_\_\_(不必) even be a best seller in its own day.
4. Whoever battles with a monster \_\_\_\_\_(最好) see that it does not turn him into a monster.
5. Men \_\_\_\_\_(可能) doubt what you say, but they will believe what you do.
6. A strong man \_\_\_\_\_(愿意)struggle with storms of fate.
7. He was willing to work in the humblest department of the trade so that his family \_\_\_\_\_(可能) be supported.
8. His sublime life proved that even physical weakness \_\_\_\_\_(能够) remove the mountains in the pursuit of an end recommended by duty.

### II. 在各句空白处填入恰当的情态动词。

1. One \_\_\_\_\_live as a conqueror, a king or a magistrate, but he \_\_\_\_\_die as man.
2. At the age of sixty, I decided to return to college and graduate, several decades later than I \_\_\_\_\_have.
3. Everything comes if a man \_\_\_\_\_only wait.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_be very careless, but now he has made progress.
5. A fox \_\_\_\_\_turn gray, but never kind.
6. Surely we \_\_\_\_\_to hold fast to life, for it is wondrous.
7. If wrinkles \_\_\_\_\_be written upon our brows, let them not be written upon the heart.
8. No one will hand you anything. You \_\_\_\_\_work for it.
9. If we encounter a man of rare intellect, we \_\_\_\_\_ask him what books he reads.

10. Someone said to the boy, "You \_\_\_\_\_ have run a little faster. You have just missed it." "No, " the boy said, "I ran as fast as I \_\_\_\_\_. It wasn't that I didn't run fast. I just didn't start early enough."

### III. 将下列带有情态动词的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. Of all sad words of tongue or pen, the saddest are these: "It might have been!"
2. Even though a man should for a time be unsuccessful, still he must be honest.
3. He is a fool who cannot be angry; he is a wise man who will not.
4. To the world you may be one person, but to one person you may be the world.
5. As you grew and became socialized in this world, you might have come to believe that there were boundaries that prevented you from reaching your goal.
6. Mary could have given in to the life she was born into. Instead, however, she took responsibility for herself and created a life of which she can be proud.

### IV. 将下列汉语句子的翻译成英文，注意情态动词的使用。

1. 我们宁愿站着死也不愿跪着生。
2. 哈姆雷特的经历是不会发生在一名水管工人身上的。
3. 如果你想改变你的生活，你就必须改变你对生活的看法。
4. 生活中你会输掉几次战斗，但你一定不能输掉这场战争。
5. 不敢冒险的人永远也不会在大海上航行。

6. 我的失望一定表现了出来。“每件事都会有个最好的结局,”妈妈提醒我说。

7. 不要躺在床上对自己说:“我那件事情做错了。”“我本应该做得更好。”

V. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. She tried it, and though she \_\_\_\_\_ it quite a bit harder than what she had been reading, finished it and liked it very much.

- A. had found    B. could have found  
C. must have found    D. should have found

2. Few among those who go to restaurants realize the man who first opened one \_\_\_\_\_ a man of genius and a profound observer.

- A. must have been    B. need have been  
C. should have been    D. would rather have been

3. He who does not need \_\_\_\_\_ is proud of not being a liar.

- A. lie    B. lying    C. to lie    D. have lied

4. Men \_\_\_\_\_ decide what is worth failing with us as well as what is worth succeeding in. They \_\_\_\_\_ consider both.

- A. may; must    B. need; may  
C. had better; have got to    D. would rather; should

5. Sometimes we don't overlook the things that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. ought overlook    B. ought to overlook  
C. ought be overlooked    D. ought to be overlooked

6. The discipline \_\_\_\_\_ hard, but it was wholesome.

- A. may be    B. may has been  
C. may have been    D. may have being

7. He made so many mistakes; he \_\_\_\_\_ have been more careful.

- A. must    B. may    C. ought to    D. could

8. I marvel at how much courage it \_\_\_\_\_ for him to subject himself to such indignity and stress. And I marvel at how he did it without bitterness or complaint.

- A. must have taken    B. need have taken  
C. should have taken    D. would rather have taken

9. Betty was concerned that her great social popularity \_\_\_\_\_ a discouraging effect on the man she wanted to marry.

A. should be   B. had been   C. will be   D. might be

10. The acts of parents live in children when all else which \_\_\_\_\_ through the ear has been forgotten.

A. may have been learned   B. must have been learned

C. would have been learned   D. had been learned

# 第11章 动词时态

## 11.1 一般现在时

系动词be的一般现在时形式包括is (当主语是第三人称单数时), am (当主语是I时)和are (当主语是you或复数概念时); 动词have的一般现在时形式有has (当主语是第三人称单数时)和have (当主语是I, you 或复数概念时); 其他动词一般现在时的第三人称单数形式为: 在词尾加-s或-es, 复数形式为动词原形。

以下探讨一般现在时的用法。

表示现在的情况或状态

I am a slow walker, but I never walk backwards.

我走得很慢, 但我从不后退。

You are an unrepeatable miracle.

你是一个无法重复的奇迹。

表示经常发生的动作或反复出现的情况

Winners often seek opportunity when losers want security.

当失败者寻求安全的时候成功者寻求机遇。

表示永恒真理或客观事实

The early bird catches the worm.

先出巢的鸟儿先得食。

Repetition is the mother of skill.

重复是技巧之母。

The sun rises and the sun sets. Stars glitter and stars vanish.

日升日落, 星闪星陨。

## 11.2 现在进行时

现在进行时的基本构成是: 系动词(is, am或are) + 动词的现在分词形式。

现在进行时表示现在正在进行的动作。

I am doing all I can to add value to the life of everyone I touch.

我在竭尽所能为我接触到的每个人的生活增加价值。

As long as you're green you're growing.

只要你生气勃勃, 你就在成长。

You cannot step twice into the same river, for other water is flowing on to you.

你无法两次踏入同一条河流，因为其它的河水不断向你流淌过来。

现在进行时常与always, constantly, continually, forever, all the time等表示频率的副词或状语连用。

Conditions are changing all the time.

情况一直在发生着改变。

Having a negative mental attitude means that you are constantly undermining your own efforts.

态度消极意味着你在不断地破坏自己的努力。

Losers are forever throwing back and forth an empty shuttle and the real web of their life is never woven.

失败者永远在来回抛空梭，而真正的生活之网从未编织。

### 11.3 现在完成时

现在完成时的基本构成是：has (have) +动词的过去分词形式。

现在完成时表示过去的动作对现在的影响。

We are what we are because we have first dreamed it.

我们成就自己是因为我们首先有梦想。

I have failed over and over again in my life. And that is why I succeed.

生活中我一次又一次地失败。这就是我为什么成功的原因。

Three passions have governed my life:the longing for love, the search for knowledge, and unbearable pity for the suffering of mankind.

有三种激情左右了我的一生：对爱的渴望、对知识的探索和对人类苦难的无限怜悯。

现在完成时强调动作的完成。

Failure doesn't mean you have accomplished nothing.

失败并不意味着你一无所成。

There is no happiness except in the realization that we have accomplished something.

如果意识不到我们有所成就就没有幸福可言。

After you have done what you need to do, you can do what you want.

在完成必须做的事情之后，你才能去做希望做的事情。

当since表示“自从.....以来”时，主句往往使用现在完成时。

He has become energetic since two years ago.

自从两年前以来，他变得朝气蓬勃。

Great changes have taken place in my life since I changed my negative attitude.

自从我改变了消极的态度以来，我的生活发生了巨大的变化。

现在完成时常用于下列句型：It (或 This, That) is the + 序数词 (或 last) + time (that) + 现在完成时，基本意义为“某人做某事是第……次了”。

I promise it is the last time I have made such a stupid mistake.

我保证，这是我最后一次犯这样的愚蠢错误。

This is the tenth time that I have tried, but I never lose heart.

这是我第十次尝试，但我从未丧失信心。

在该句型中，如果主句是一般将来时，从句仍使用现在完成时。

This will be the first time you have spoken in public, but there is nothing to worry about.

这将是你的第一次在公共场合讲话，但没什么可担心的。

## 11.4 现在完成进行时

现在完成进行时的基本构成是：has (have) been + 动词的现在分词形式。

现在完成进行时表示动作从过去某个时候开始，一直持续到当前。

Man has been trying to control nature.

人类一直在致力于控制自然。

If you haven't discovered your dream, probably you've been missing too much.

假如你还没有发现梦想，或许一直以来你失去的太多了。

Hello, Problem! Where have you been? I've been training for you all my life!

问题，你好！你去哪儿了？我一生都在为迎接你而做着训练。

## 11.5 一般过去时

一般过去时的基本构成是：规则动词在词尾加-ed。

一般过去时表示过去发生的动作或存在的状态。

Rome was not built in a day.

罗马不是一天建成的。

Nothing great was achieved without danger.

没有风险，什么大事也不曾做成过。

God never made an ordinary human being.



上帝从未创造过普通人。

I had the blues because I had no shoes until upon the street I met a man who had no feet.

我因为没有鞋而难过，直到在大街上我遇见一个没有双脚的人。

## 11.6 过去进行时

过去进行时的基本构成是：was (were) + 动词的现在分词形式。

过去进行时表示在过去的某个时间动作在进行之中。

He noticed it was growing dark.

他注意到天色渐渐暗下来。

Tears of joy were flowing down her cheeks as Hafid continued.

当哈菲得继续说下去的时候，快乐的泪水顺着她的脸颊流下来。

By the time he was eight, he was earning his own money for clothes.

八岁的时候，他在自己挣买衣服的钱。

## 11.7 过去完成时

过去完成时的基本构成是：had+动词的过去分词形式。

过去完成时表示到过去的某个时候为止，动作已经完成或者情况已经发生。过去完成时的突出特点是表示“过去的过去”。

He spoke of how his life had changed forever.

他谈到自己的生活是怎样永远地发生改变的。

Edison had spent only three months in grade school, and had supported himself for many years as a telegrapher, but he turned his life around through definiteness of purpose.

爱迪生只上过三个月的小学，做过多年的报务员，但他通过明确的目的改变了自己的人生。

过去完成时常用于下列句型：It (或This, That) was the + 序数词 (或last) + time (that) + 过去完成时。

That was the first time I had been in such a large event, so I was fully prepared.

我是第一次参加这样的大型活动，所以做好了充分的准备。

It wasn't the first time we had risen to the challenge of risk.

我们奋起应对危险局面不是第一次了。

It was the second time Ole had won over a skeptical audience.

这是第二次奥尔征服了持怀疑态度的听众。

## 11.8 过去完成进行时

过去完成进行时的基本构成是：had been + 动词的现在分词形式。

过去完成进行时表示过去某个时候之前一直在进行的动作。

I decided to change the way I had been doing things.

我决定改变我一直以来做事的方法。

He realized that he had been focusing on a wrong goal.

他意识到自己一直专注于一个错误的目标。

I came to realize that I had been living in a fool's paradise.

我逐渐意识到，自己一直生活在虚无缥缈的幸福之中。

I had been making twenty thousand dollars a year; but I was glad now to get a job for thirty dollars a week because I enjoyed it.

我以前一直每年赚到两万美元；但我现在得到了一份每周三十美元的工作却很高兴，因为我喜欢这份工作。

## 11.9 一般将来时

一般将来时的基本构成是：will(第一人称可以用shall) + 动词原形，否定形式为will not (第一人称可以用shall not) + 动词原形，will not可以缩写为won't，shall not可以缩写为shan't。

### 11.9.1 一般将来时的用法

a 一般将来时表示在将来出现的情况或者发生的动作。

No man living can possibly figure out what will happen in the future.

活在世上的人没有谁能清楚未来将发生什么。

Your habits will determine your future.

你的习惯将决定你的未来。

If we open a quarrel between the present and the past, we shall be in danger of losing the future.

假如我们在现在和过去之间展开争吵，我们将面临失去未来的危险。

b 一般将来时可以表示习惯或者倾向。

A small leak will sink a great ship.

小裂缝可以沉大船。

Health, learning and virtue will ensure your happiness.

健康、学识和美德会确保你的幸福。

Twice each day, in the morning and in the evening before I retire, I will read the words.

每天两次，早晨和晚上就寝之前，我都会阅读这些文字。

c 在时间和条件状语从句中，须用一般现在时代替will表示将来的意义。

When two rivals meet, the strong-minded one will win.

狭路相逢勇者胜。

As long as we are patient, misery will turn into joys.

只要我们忍耐，困苦将变为欢乐。

If you weep, my face will be wetted; if you grieve, my heart will ache.

如果你落泪，湿的总是我的脸；如果你伤心，痛的总是我的心。

d will用于条件状语从句时，不表示将来时，而表示意愿。

If I will prepare, someday my chance will come.

如果我做好准备，总有一天我的机会将来临。

If a man will not seek knowledge, it will not seek him.

如果一个人不去找知识，知识就不会来找他。

e 祈使句+ and +一般将来时

在该句型中，祈使句相当于条件或假设，连词and之后是相应的结果，在表示结果的部分，时态常用一般将来时。

Build people, and they will build the business for you.

让人们得到发展，他们会为你成就事业。

Keep your face to the sun, and you will never see the shadows.

面对太阳，你将永远看不到阴影。

### 11.9.2 一般将来时的其他构成

a is (am, are) going to +动词原形

表示近期打算去做的事情或者即将发生的情况。

A team that thinks it's going to lose is going to lose.

认为自己要输的队就会输。

I am going to challenge myself.

我即将挑战自我。

You can't build a reputation on what you are going to do.

不能靠自己要做的事情树立声望。

b is (am, are) to +动词原形

表示必须或者按照安排一定会发生的情况或者进行的动作。

I am to make real the goal of life.

我一定要实现人生的目标。

Some books are to be tasted.

有些书必须浅尝。

We should adopt the attitude that change is to be expected.  
我们应采取这样的态度，认为变化一定会出现。

## 11.10 将来进行时

将来进行时的基本构成是：will be + 动词的现在分词形式。

将来进行时表示在将来的某个时间点动作正在进行。

I believe that we will be celebrating our victory this time tomorrow.

我相信明天这个时候我们正在庆祝胜利。

Go for the moon. If you don't get it, you'll still be heading for a star.

奔向月亮吧。即使得不到它，你仍然在朝着星星的方向前进。

将来进行时也可以表示即将进行的动作。

I'll be visiting my grandparents this weekend, so I can take them good news of my promotion at work.

本周末我将去看望祖父母，这样我可以告诉他们我升职的好消息。

## 11.11 将来完成时

将来完成时的基本构成是：will have + 动词的过去分词形式。

将来完成时表示动作在将来的某个时间点已经完成。

The water you stepped into will have flowed away by the time you step into it again.

曾经踏入的水，当你再次踏入时将已经流走。

By the time they wake up from their dream, we shall have turned ours into a reality.

等他们从梦想中醒来的时候，我们已经实现了我们的梦想。

Victory is doing the best you can, and even if you lose, you will have learned something.

胜利就是全力以赴，即使输了，你也会学到东西。

## 11.12 过去将来时

过去将来时的基本构成是：would (should) + 动词原形。would 是will 的过去式，should 是shall 的过去式。

过去将来时表示过去某个时间即将发生的动作。

My decision was this: I should give up the work I loathed.

我的决定就是：放弃自己厌恶的工作。

As soon as I saw I was going the wrong way, I would turn around and change my direction.

一发现自己走错了路，我就转身改变方向。  
过去将来时可以表示过去的习惯或倾向。

At an age when most would be content to sit in the shade with their memories, the greatest salesman in the world embarked on a new career.  
在大多数人都会心安理得地坐在树荫下回忆过去的年纪，世界上最伟大的推销员开始了新的职业生涯。

## 实践演练

### I. 按照具体要求写出动词正确的时态形式。

1. They \_\_\_\_\_(fight) a hard battle. (一般过去时)
2. I \_\_\_\_\_(die) beyond my means. (现在进行时)
3. Success \_\_\_\_\_(ruin) many a man. (现在完成时)
4. It's good to have money and the things that money can buy but it's good to check up once in a while to make sure you \_\_\_\_\_(not lose) the things that money can't buy. (现在完成时)
5. Even when you \_\_\_\_\_(lie) by the swimming pool, that's leisure time—but it isn't free time. (现在进行时)
6. We're now trying what our forefathers \_\_\_\_\_(never try). (现在完成时)
7. The man who \_\_\_\_\_(make) up his mind to win will never say "impossible". (现在完成时)
8. He that is not sensible of his loss \_\_\_\_\_(lose) nothing. (现在完成时)
9. It's amazing how often the survivors of a disappointment say they ultimately \_\_\_\_\_(wind) up where they intended to be. (一般过去时)
10. One must wait until the evening to see how splendid the day \_\_\_\_\_(be). (现在完成时)

### II. 写出所提供动词的正确时态。

1. Don't cry because it is over; smile because it \_\_\_\_\_(happen).
2. A man is not old as long as he \_\_\_\_\_(seek) something.
3. God \_\_\_\_\_(create) man in his own image.
4. If you carry on, one day something good \_\_\_\_\_(happen).
5. If I help the world to grow in wisdom and in grace, then, I shall feel that I \_\_\_\_\_(win) and I have filled my place.
6. He was a bold man that first \_\_\_\_\_(eat) an oyster.

7. Two roads diverged in the wood, and I \_\_\_\_\_(take) the one less traveled by, and that has made all the difference.
8. Time \_\_\_\_\_(fly).
9. I have a dream that the river of friendship \_\_\_\_\_(flow) to every corner of the world.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_(only just begin). The best is yet to come.

III. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. I often will hear 【A】 grown-up people say, "I could not fix my attention on the lecture or book, although I wished 【B】 to do so, " and the reason is 【C】 that the habit was 【D】 not formed in youth.
2. As I laid 【A】 on the ground, I remembered 【B】 that I had 【C】 two choices: I could choose to live or I could choose to die. I chose 【D】 to live.
3. The overall situation looked 【A】 hopeful as I approached 【B】 my senior year as long as I could 【C】 make as much money as I have 【D】 the previous summer.
4. Following one of Paderewski's performances, a fan said 【A】 to him, "I would give 【B】 my life to play like that." The brilliant pianist replied 【C】, "I do 【D】."
5. If you consciously increase 【A】 your vocabulary you will unconsciously raise 【B】 yourself to a more important station in life, and the new and higher position you has won 【C】 will 【D】, in turn, give you a better opportunity for further enriching your vocabulary.
6. Whenever he was 【A】 discouraged, he would 【B】 take out an imaginary kiss and remember 【C】 the love of the child who has put 【D】 it there.
7. "Tomorrow I will live 【A】, " the fool does say 【B】. Today itself is 【C】 too late; the wise had lived 【D】 yesterday.
8. One day I was wandering 【A】 under the streetlights. Filled with despair, I cried 【B】 like a baby. Now I found 【C】 my way, all my despair is gone and hope comes 【D】 along.

9. Once I thought 【A】 love means 【B】 flowers, gifts and sweet kisses. But from this experience, I understand 【C】 that love is 【D】 just a thread in the quilt of our life. Love is inside, making life strong and warm.

10. He resolved 【A】, when he began 【B】 to read law, to make everything he would acquire 【C】 perfectly his own, and never to go to a second thing till he had accomplished 【D】 the first.

#### IV. 将下列英文翻译成汉语，并体会动词时态的用法。

1. It is better to be a has-been than a never-was.
2. Loneliness is and always has been the central and inevitable experience of every man.
3. The family you came from isn't as important as the family you're going to have.
4. If you are getting the most out of a book, you will feel a capacity for doing things which you never felt before.
5. When you were born, you were crying and everyone around you was smiling. Live your life so that when you die, you're the one who is smiling and everyone around you is crying.

#### V. 将下列汉语翻译成英文，注意使用恰当的时态。

1. 在你死后，你将是出生前的你。
2. 如果你是一个成功的语言学习者，你也许一直在主动地学习。
3. 我的父母永远都将宠爱、支持并尽其所能地教育我。
4. 当我抓紧自己的梦想时，甚至在最艰难的时期，奇迹真的发生了。
5. 如果我们在年轻的时候不栽种知识，将来老了知识它就不会为我们提供纳凉之地。

VI. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. If we are open to the unexpected and are alert and adaptable, life \_\_\_\_\_ a wonderful journey.  
A. will become    B. will have become  
C. became    D. had become
2. By his own strength he \_\_\_\_\_ from that position, and achieved the highest eminence as an artist.  
A. risen    B. rose  
C. would rise    D. had rose
3. Do not seek to follow in the footsteps of the old; seek what they \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. seek    B. sought  
C. will seek    D. are seeking
4. They, while their companions slept, \_\_\_\_\_ upward in the night.  
A. were toiling    B. had toiled  
C. would toil    D. has toiled
5. The wisdom consists not only in seeing what is before your eyes, but in foreseeing what \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. comes    B. has come  
C. would come    D. is to come
6. His father forgot his anger and said, "George, I am glad that you \_\_\_\_\_ me about it. I would rather lose a dozen cherry trees than that you should tell one falsehood."  
A. tell    B. told  
C. will tell    D. would tell
7. If the Creator had a purpose in equipping us with a neck, he surely \_\_\_\_\_ us to stick it out.  
A. meant    B. means  
C. meant    D. had meant
8. Man was created a little lower than the angels, and he \_\_\_\_\_ a little lower ever since.  
A. got    B. has got  
C. is getting    D. has been getting
9. The fair breeze \_\_\_\_\_, the white foam \_\_\_\_\_, the furrow followed free; we were the first that ever \_\_\_\_\_ into that silent sea.  
A. blowed; flied; bursted    B. blew; flied; bursted  
C. blowed; flew; burst    D. blew; flew; burst



10. Man's real life is happy, chiefly because he is ever expecting that it soon \_\_\_\_\_so.

A. is    B. will have been

C. will be    D. would be

## 第12章 被动语态

被动语态表示主语是谓语动词的动作承受者，两者之间是被动关系。因为在被动语态中，主语相当于谓语动词的逻辑宾语，所以只有及物动词可以用被动语态，而不及物动词不能使用被动语态。

被动语态的构成为：主语+系动词+动词的过去分词形式，如果需要说明施动者，则由介词by引出，置于动词的过去分词之后。

You are not beaten until you give up.

只要不放弃你就没有被击败。

All the significant battles are waged within the self.

一切重大斗争都是在自我内部展开的。

Darkness is dispelled by a simple light.

黑暗由一点灯光驱散。

A burning desire is accompanied by deep emotional feeling.

迫切的愿望伴随有深切的情感。

### 12.1 被动语态的一般用法

当施动者不明确或不必要指明时，用被动语态。

Even the right decision is the wrong decision if it is made too late.

如果做出得太晚，即使正确的决定也会变成错误的决定。

Anger can't be an effective tool unless it is justified.

如果怒火毫无道理，就不能成为有效的工具。

If you command wisely, you'll be obeyed cheerfully.

指挥有方，则手下乐从。

为了突出受动者，使用被动语态。

Love cannot be compelled.

爱情是不能被强迫的。

A hero is distinguished in difficult circumstances.

困境之中显英雄。

Truth is placed above anything.

真理高于一切。

### 12.2 用于各种时态的被动语态

常见的包括以下九种。

### 12.2.1 一般现在时的被动语态

基本模式为is (am, are) +动词的过去分词形式。

All human activity is prompted by desire.

人类的一切行为都是受愿望的激励。

I don't know who my grandfather was. I'm much more concerned to know what his grandson will be.

我不知道我的爷爷是什么人。我更关心的是他的孙子会成为什么样的人。

You are ruled by your habits.

你受自己习惯的左右。

### 12.2.2 一般过去时的被动语态

基本模式为was (were) +动词的过去分词形式。

Nothing great was ever achieved without enthusiasm.

没有热情就从来也取得不了伟大的成就。

We were taught how to respond to adversity.

我们当时被教会如何去应付逆境。

Because of friends I met along the way, my journey was kept alive.

因为我在旅途上遇到的朋友，所以一路并不寂寞。

### 12.2.3 一般将来时的被动语态

基本模式为will (shall) be +动词的过去分词形式。

Today's work will be surpassed tomorrow.

今天的工作明天将被超越。

Our future will be determined by our goals and by the struggle to make them real.

我们的未来取决于我们的目标以及为实现目标而付出的奋斗。

As a leader, I shall be watched closely.

作为一位领导者，我将受到严格监督。

### 12.2.4 现在进行时的被动语态

基本模式为is (am, are) being +动词的过去分词形式。

The most important thing in communication is to hear what isn't being said.

交流中最重要的是听出言外之意。

I am always being urged by my purpose.

我总是受到使命的敦促。

We're being judged by a new yardstick: not just by how smart we are, but also by how well we handle ourselves and each other.

我们正受到一种新型标准的衡量：我们不仅要聪明，而且要善于把握自己和彼此。

### 12.2.5 过去进行时的被动语态

基本模式为was (were) being +动词的过去分词形式。

His horizon of life was being broadened.

他的人生视野正在被扩展。

They felt new passions were being born.

他们感到新的激情正在产生。

### 12.2.6 现在完成时的被动语态

基本模式为has (have) been +动词的过去分词形式。

No good thing has been enjoyed by us without having first cost labor.

不先付出劳动我们就享受不到美好的事物。

My defeats of the past have already been forgotten.

我以往的失败已经被忘掉。

### 12.2.7 过去完成时的被动语态

基本模式为had been +动词的过去分词形式。

Eric had not been born with a special talent, but he later became a success.

埃里克生来并没有特殊天分，但是后来他成功了。

I was glad that my worries had been successfully got rid of.

我高兴的是自己的担心已经被成功地消除。

### 12.2.8 将来完成时的被动语态

基本模式为will have been +动词的过去分词形式。

Your character will have been completed by the time your life comes to an end.

当生命走到尽头的时候，你的人格才变得完全。

### 12.2.9 过去将来时的被动语态

基本模式为would be +动词的过去分词形式。

He said he would be loved if he loved others.

他说只要他爱别人，自己就会被爱。

## 12.3 被动语态的特殊用法

被动语态可以用于不定式、动名词之中和情态动词之后。

### 12.3.1 不定式之中的被动语态

基本模式为to be +动词的过去分词形式。

If you want to be respected, you must respect yourself.

如果你希望受人尊重，你必须尊重自己。

I never met a person who didn't want to be appreciated.

我从未见过不希望受到欣赏的人。

To be prepared for war is one of the most effectual means of preserving peace.

为战争做好准备是保全和平最为有效的手段之一。

### 12.3.2 动名词之中的被动语态

基本模式为being +动词的过去分词形式。

Everyone appreciates being appreciated.

每个人都喜欢得到欣赏。

He who fears being conquered is sure of defeat.

害怕被征服的人一定会失败。

### 12.3.3 情态动词之后的被动语态

基本模式为情态动词+be +动词的过去分词形式。

Character cannot be developed in ease.

性格在安逸中得不到发展。

The most beautiful things in the world cannot be seen. They must be felt.

世上最美的事物是看不到的。它们一定是被感觉到的。

Life can only be understood backwards, but it must be lived forwards.

只有向后看才能理解生活，但是要生活好，则必须向前看。

## 12.4 It is done that...句型

这是涉及被动语态的一个常用句型。代词it作形式主语，that引导的主语从句置于句末。

It is said that you can never go back.

人们说，决不能走回头路。

It is believed that without health, all the riches in the world are worth nothing.

人们认为，没有健康，世上的一切财富则一文不值。

It is commonly found that ability consists mainly in a high degree of seriousness.

人们普遍发现，能力主要在于高度的认真。

It should be noted that the games of children are not games, and must be considered as their most serious actions.

应该指出的是，孩子们的游戏并不是游戏，而必须被看作对他们来说最认真的行为。

常用于该句型的动词包括：

acknowledge 承认 admit 承认 advise 建议

agree 同意 allege 宣称 announce 宣布

anticipate 预期 arrange 安排；商定 assume 以为

believe 认为 calculate 推测 claim 声称

consider 认为 decide 决定 declare 宣称

demand 要求 desire 希望 discover 发现

estimate 估计 expect 希望 find 发现

hold 认为 hope 希望 imagine 想象

know 了解 note 指明 observe 注意到

order 命令 predict 预言 presume 假定

propose 建议 prove 证明 recognize 公认

recommend 建议 report 报道 request 请求

require 要求 say 说 show 表明

stipulate 规定 suggest 建议 suppose 推测

think 认为 understand 理解

## 12.5 Sth. (Sb.) is done to...句型

以上单词也经常用于Sth. (Sb.) is done to... 句型，不定式作主语补足语。

Competition is believed to strengthen the ideal of equality of opportunity.

有人认为竞争可以加强机会平等的理念。

Reading is thought to be a kind of conversation between the reader and the text.

阅读被认为是读者和文章之间的一种对话。

## 实践演练

### I. 按照具体要求，将所提供动词变为被动语态的形式。

1. What is learned in the cradle \_\_\_\_\_(carry) to the grave. (一般现在时)
2. If you think you \_\_\_\_\_(beat), you are. (一般现在时)
3. Good things \_\_\_\_\_(wrap) in small parcels. (一般现在时)
4. If you \_\_\_\_\_(bite) by a snake, you're afraid of an eel. (现在完成时)
5. Culture is to know the best that \_\_\_\_\_(say and think) in the world. (现在完成时)
6. It can be a great learning lesson to figure out what part of the person \_\_\_\_\_(reflect) in you. (现在进行时)
7. The things we know best are the things we \_\_\_\_\_(not teach). (现在完成时)
8. He that makes himself a sheep \_\_\_\_\_(eat) by the wolf. (一般将来时)
9. Good \_\_\_\_\_(reward) with good, and evil with evil. (一般将来时)
10. If you shut your door to all errors, truth \_\_\_\_\_(shut) out. (一般将来时)
11. Fifteen minutes a day devoted to self-improvement \_\_\_\_\_(feel) at the end of the year. (一般将来时)

### II. 将所提供动词变为被动语态的形式。

1. Lovers' quarrels \_\_\_\_\_(soon mend).
2. Nothing \_\_\_\_\_(do) if a person only wishes.
3. Don't count your chickens before they \_\_\_\_\_(hatch).
4. Most vices may \_\_\_\_\_(commit) very genteelly.
5. All that is said in the kitchen should not \_\_\_\_\_(hear) in the hall.
6. Whenever a doctor cannot do good, he must \_\_\_\_\_(keep) from doing harm.
7. Great works \_\_\_\_\_(perform) not by strength but by perseverance.
8. We refuse praise from a desire \_\_\_\_\_(praise) twice.
9. Gold \_\_\_\_\_(try) in the fire.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_(often remind) that the path to progress is not victory but compromise.
11. All truths must not \_\_\_\_\_(tell).
12. The man who leads an army cannot succeed unless his whole mind \_\_\_\_\_(throw) into his work.
13. Money is man's servant, and it \_\_\_\_\_(must make) to serve him well.

### III. 将下列带有被动表达的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. The story is told of her phenomenal success in Australia.
2. Those who do not feel pain seldom think that it is felt.
3. Talents are best nurtured in solitude; character is best formed in the stormy billows of the world.
4. Wisdom is fortified, not destroyed, by understanding its limitations.
5. Communication is valued when both parties, the sender and the receiver, are respected.
6. Nothing will ever be attempted if all possible objections must be first overcome.
7. The “love bandit” was only taking what was waiting to be taken, what wanted to be taken.
8. Praises to the unworthy are felt by ardent minds as robberies of the deserving.
9. The voice of intelligence is drowned out by the roar of fear. Most of all, it is silenced by ignorance.
10. Real knowledge, like everything else of value, is not to be obtained easily; it must be worked for, studied for, thought for, and more than all, must be prayed for.

### IV. 将下列汉语句子的翻译成英文，要求使用被动语态。

1. 爱是无法隐藏的。
2. 成功是用多种方式衡量的。
3. 要使生活幸福，并不需要太多的东西。



4. 不是眼前的每件事情都能改变，但如果不直面则什么也改变不了。
5. 人生中最伟大的成果通常是凭借简单的手段和普通的素质取得的。
6. 从细微之处可以看出一个人的品格。

V. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. I think that, from a biological standpoint, human life almost \_\_\_\_\_ like a poem. It has its own rhythm and beat, its internal cycles of growth and decay.  
A. reads    B. is read  
C. will be read    D. is reading
2. It is too late to shut the stable door when the horse \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. has stolen    B. has stole  
C. is stealed    D. is stolen
3. Speak when you \_\_\_\_\_.; come when you are called.  
A. are spoken    B. are spoken to  
C. spoken    D. spoken to
4. Harvard University, which \_\_\_\_\_ in 1636, is one of the oldest universities in the United States of America.  
A. found    B. founded  
C. was found    D. was founded
5. The pains of the past should now \_\_\_\_\_ behind us.  
A. put    B. be put  
C. be putted    D. have put
6. We remember with pain that we did not see that beauty when it flowered, that we failed to respond with love when it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. tendered    B. had tendered  
C. has tendered    D. was tendered
7. Six times his men \_\_\_\_\_, until finally they were driven into flight. At last the army was entirely scattered. He called his men together, and a seventh battle was fought. This time he won.  
A. were beat    B. were beated  
C. has been beated    D. had been beaten

8. Quite a few people used to believe that disaster \_\_\_\_\_if a mirror was broken.

A. was sure of striking B. was sure of having struck

C. was sure to be struck D. was sure to strike

9. \_\_\_\_\_the help which we derive from others in the journey of life is of very great importance.

A. It must be acknowledged that B. This must be acknowledge that

C. That must be acknowledged that D. What must be acknowledged that

10. He was a man who \_\_\_\_\_cool and act responsibly in a crisis.

A. could trust to keep B. could trust to be kept

C. could be trusted to keep D. could be trusted keep

## 第13章 动名词和不定式

动名词是由动词转化而成的名词，兼有动词和名词的双重特点，在句中作名词使用，但本身又具有动词的一些特征，如可以有宾语和状语，可以有完成式和被动式。动名词的形式为：一般情况下在动词末尾加-ing，和现在分词的变化规则完全一样。

### 13.1 动名词的语法功能

动名词在句中主要作主语、宾语、表语、定语等。

#### 13.1.1 动名词作主语

*Losing* can be a real beginning.

失败可以成为真正的开始。

*Having intimate friends* is happiness in itself.

拥有知己这本身就是幸福。

While *winning* is not everything, *trying to win* is everything.

尽管取胜并不重要，但努力去赢得胜利却是重要的。

*Constant dripping* wears away a stone.

滴水穿石。

有时，将作主语的动名词置于句尾，用代词it作形式主语，这种情况多见于It is no use(或good) doing sth.句型，表示“做某事是没有用的”。

It is no use *crying over spilt milk*.

牛奶已洒，哭也无用。

It is no use *pumping a dry well*.

枯井打水，徒劳无益。

It is no use *thinking about one's lost youth*.

追忆逝去的青春是没有用的。

#### 13.1.2 动名词作宾语

动名词可以作动词和介词的宾语。

a 作动词的宾语

有些特定动词要求其后作宾语的动词用动名词形式。

Genius means *working hard all one's life*.

天才意味着终生努力。

As long as you live, keep *learning how to live*.

只要活着，就要不断地学习如何生活。

You are never a loser until you quit *trying*.

只要不放弃努力，你就绝不是失败者。

You are not here merely to make *a living*. You are here to enable the world to live more amply.

你来到世上不仅仅为了谋生。你来到世上是为了让世界生活得更富庶。

#### b 作介词的宾语

动词在介词后面只能用动名词形式作宾语。

Life consists not in *holding good cards*, but in *playing well those you hold*.

人生并不在于抓到好牌，而在于打好手中的牌。

Keep on *learning as long as you live*.

活到老，学到老。

The secret of happiness is to admire without *desiring*.

幸福的秘诀在于欣赏但不希冀。

### 13.1.3 动名词作表语

Courage is *doing what you're afraid to do*.

勇气就是去做自己害怕去做的事情。

Life is *painting a picture, not doing a sum*.

人生是画一幅图画，而不是做一道算术题。

The ultimate goal should be *doing your best and enjoying it*.

最终目标应该是竭尽全力，乐此不疲。

The greatest pleasure in life is *doing what others say you cannot do*.

人生的最大乐趣就是去做别人说你做不了的事情。

Education is not *the filling of a pail, but the lighting of a fire*.

教育并非注满一桶水，而是点燃一把火。

### 13.1.4 动名词作定语

动名词可以作定语，修饰另一个名词，往往表示所修饰名词的功能或用途。如下列词组：

chewing gum 口香糖 dining hall 餐厅

dividing line 分界线 drawing board 画板

dressng table 梳妆台 drinking water 饮用水

driving license 驾驶执照 filling station 加油站

living standard 生活水平 looking glass 镜子

magnifying glass 放大镜 marketing manager 销售经理

operating room 手术室 playing ground 运动场

racing car 赛车 reading room 阅览室

resting place 休息处 sitting room 客厅

sleeping pill 安眠药 starting point 起点

stepping stone 踏脚石 stumbling block 绊脚石

swimming pool 游泳池 walking stick 手杖

warning sign 预警迹象 washing machine 洗衣机

working conditions 工作条件 writing desk 写字台

Failure is a *learning* experience.

失败是一种学习经历。

Fame is a *magnifying* glass.

名声是放大镜。

The *starting* point of all achievements is desire.

一切成就的起点都是愿望。

Every failure can be a *stepping* stone to something better.

每一次失败都可以成为通向更美好事物的踏脚石。

One of the secrets of life is to make *stepping* stones out of *stumbling* blocks.

人生的秘诀之一就是要把绊脚石变为踏脚石。

The world is a *looking* glass, and gives back to every man the reflection of his own face.

世界是一面镜子，反映出每个人的面孔。

## 13.2 只能接动名词作宾语的动词

有些动词，如果其后直接是动词作宾语，要求只能用动名词的形式，这类动词包括：

acknowledge 承认 admit 承认 advocate 主张

allow 允许 anticipate 期望 appreciate 感谢；欣赏

avoid 避免 complete 完成 consider 考虑

contemplate 考虑 delay 推迟 deny 否认

discuss 讨论 enjoy 喜欢 escape 逃避

excuse 原谅 fancy 想象；喜欢 finish 完成

forbid 禁止 imagine 想象 include 包括

involve 涉及 justify 证明.....正当 keep 保持

mind 介意 miss 错过 permit 允许

postpone 推迟 practice 练习 quit 放弃

recommend 建议 require 要求；需要 resent 怀恨

resist 抵制 resume 恢复 risk 冒险

shun 避开 suggest 建议 can't help 忍不住

give up 放弃 put off 推迟

We make mistakes. The key is to *keep* living, *keep* loving, and *keep* trying.

我们会犯错误。关键在于继续生活，继续热爱，继续努力。

One *can't help* being old, but one can *resist* being aged.

一个人无法不变老，但却可以抵制老朽。

Never *consider* relying on other people's money to make you rich.

决不要考虑依赖别人的钱使自己富有。

A successful marriage *requires* falling in love many times, always with the same person.

一桩成功的婚姻需要多次堕入爱河，而且总是和同一个人。

### 13.3 既可接动名词，又可接不定式作宾语的动词

有些动词，如果其后直接是动词作宾语，既可接动名词，又可接不定式的形式，但有的意义基本没有差别，而有的意义则差别很大。

#### 13.3.1 接动名词或不定式作宾语皆可，并且意义基本没有差别的动词

bear 忍受 begin 开始 bother 费心

cease 停止 continue 继续 dislike 不喜欢

endure 忍受 hate 不喜欢 intend 打算

like 喜欢 love 喜欢 prefer 更喜欢

neglect 忽略 omit 忘记 propose 建议

start 开始

When pleasure is the business of life, it *ceases* to be (或being) pleasure.

当快乐成为人生的主要事务，就不再是快乐了。

*Start* making (或to make) changes today that will get you to where you want to be tomorrow.

今天就开始做出使你明天达到理想目标的改变。

注意下面三个动词的用法：need, require, want。在表示“某个事物需要被……”时，三个词的意义和用法完全相同，基本结构为Sth. needs (或requires, wants) doing，也可以是Sth. needs (或requires, wants) to be done. 如：

Your goals *need* supporting (或to be supported).

你的目标需要支持。

Do whatever *requires* doing (或to be done) to realize your dream.

为了实现梦想，要尽一切必须的努力。

A clean hand *wants* no washing (或doesn't *want* to be washed).

洁净的手不需清洗。

Natural abilities, like natural plants, *need* pruning (或to be pruned) by study.

天赋，如同自然生长的植物，需要学习的修剪。

Pleasant pills don't *want* gilding (或to be gilded).

味道好的药丸不需裹糖衣。

The biggest mistake leaders make is that they know something *requires* doing (或to be done), but there's a long time before they do it.

领导者所犯的最大错误就是他们清楚需要做事，但拖延很久才去做。

### 13.3.2 接动名词或不定式作宾语皆可，但意义差别很大的动词试对比：

a. forget doing sth. 忘记做过某事

forget to do sth. 忘记去做某事

b. go on doing sth. 继续做同一件事

go on to do sth. 接下去做另一件事

c. mean doing sth. 意味着做某事

mean to do sth. 打算做某事

d. regret to say(或tell, inform) 遗憾地说(或告诉、通知)

regret doing sth. 后悔做过某事

e. remember doing sth. 记得做过某事

remember to do sth. 记着去做某事

f. stop doing sth. 停止做某事

stop to do sth. 停下来去做另一件事

g. try doing sth. 试探着做某事

try to do sth. 努力做某事

动词 forget, regret, remember后跟doing和having done含义相同。

We never *regret* having eaten too little.

我们从不后悔曾忍饥挨饿。

We *regret* to say that you have fallen short of our expectations.

我们很遗憾，你辜负了我们的期望。

I *remember* losing my keys on a regular basis.

我记得曾经常常丢失钥匙。

*Remember* to picture your desired goals as if you had already attained them.

记住将你希望达到的目标想象成似乎你已经达到了。

You make the failure complete when you *stop* trying.

当你停止努力的时候，你就完全失败了。

While we *stop* to think, we often miss our opportunity.

当我们停下来思考时，我们往往错过了机会。

If you can't think up a new idea, *try* finding a way to make better use of an old idea.

如果想不出新观点，试着找出一个方法更好地利用老的观点。

*Try* to be a man of value.

努力做一个有价值的人。

## 13.4 动名词的复合结构

很多时候，动名词带有行为主体，从而构成复合结构。如果动名词作主语，表示行为主体的名词或代词用主格或所有格；如果动名词作宾语或表语，表示行为主体的名词或代词用宾格或所有格。

It is no use *your* (或*you*) *trying* to shift the blame on to anybody else.

你试图把责任推给别人是徒劳的。

He would imagine *himself* *winning* before each game.

在每次比赛之前他都想象自己获胜的情景。(反身代词不用所有格)

How many opportunities present themselves without *us* (或*our*) *noticing* them!

有多少机遇出现在眼前而我们却视而不见啊！

Time cannot be lengthened by man's subjective will, but it can be shortened by *his* (或*him*) *wasting* it.

时间不会因人的主观意志而延长，但却会因人为的浪费而缩短。

Everything starts with *you* (或*your*) *making* up your mind what you're going to do with your life.

一切事情皆开始于下定决心如何对待人生。



## 13.5 动名词的被动式和完成式

动名词的被动式其基本形式为being +动词的过去分词，完成式其基本形式为having +动词的过去分词。

### 13.5.1 动名词的被动式

A thing is bigger for *being shared*.

一个事物因分享而更有价值。

We get pleasure from loving and *being loved*.

我们从爱和被爱中得到快乐。

I am always ready to learn, but I do not always like *being taught*.

我总是乐于学习，但我并不总是喜欢被人指教。

### 13.5.2 动名词的完成式

No good thing has been, or can be enjoyed by us, without *having first cost labor*.

不首先付出辛劳，我们不曾享受，现在也不能享受任何美好的事物。

I have sometimes asked myself whether my country is the better for *my having lived at all*.

我有时间问过自己，我的国家是否因为我的存在而变得更加美好。

I have the consolation of *having added nothing to my private fortune during my public service*.

我感到慰藉的是，在我做公职期间，没有过中饱私囊。

## 13.6 动名词的习惯表达

### 13.6.1 do接动名词

表示做笼统的一类事情，如：

do reading 看书 do washing 洗衣服

do shopping 买东西 do banking 办理银行业务

动名词前可以有some, any, the, 或物主代词。

Don't *do all the talking*; be willing to listen.

不要只顾自己讲；要愿意倾听。

If you *do the convincing*, you must believe what you're saying.

如果你说服别人，就必须相信自己说的话。

A winner is not afraid to *do his own thinking* and to use his own knowledge.

胜者不怕独立思考，不怕运用自己的知识。

### 13.6.2 No接动名词

用于警戒语，表示“严禁做某事”。如：

No burning. 严禁烟火。 No dumping. 严禁乱倒垃圾。

No parking. 严禁停车。 No smoking. 严禁吸烟。

No spitting. 严禁吐痰。 No trespassing. 不得擅自进入。

No cheating on the exam. 考试不得作弊。

No scribbling on the wall. 不得在墙上乱涂乱画。

No soliciting is allowed in this building. 本楼内禁止兜售。

### 13.6.3 There is no接动名词

该句型相当于It is impossible to do sth.

There is no turning back.

永不回头。（相当于It is impossible to turn back.）

There is no holding back the wheel of history.

历史的车轮不能倒转。（相当于It is impossible to hold back the wheel of history.）

There is no going to heaven in a sedan.

坐轿不可能上天堂。（相当于It is impossible to go to heaven in a sedan.）

When people have hope, there is no telling how far they can go.

当人们有了希望，他们的成功就不可估量。（相当于When people have hope, it is impossible to tell how far they can go.）

It is often wrongly held that there is no escaping from fate.

人们往往错误地以为命运是无法摆脱的。（相当于It is often wrongly held that it is impossible to escape from fate.）

动词不定式是由不定式符号to后接动词原形构成，也有个别情况不带to，只用动词原形。不定式在句中不能作谓语动词，所以属于非谓语动词的范畴。不定式可以行使名词、形容词和副词的功能。

## 13.7 不定式的语法功能

不定式在句中可以作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、同位语、补语等。

### 13.7.1 不定式作主语

不定式在句中可以直接作主语。当动词处于句子主语的位置时，很多情况下，用不定式或动名词皆可，二者任择其一。但是，当主语表示一般的、抽象的动作时，多用动名词；而当主语表示一次的、具体的动作时，多用不定式。

*To make your children capable of honesty is the beginning of education.*

让自己的孩子诚实是教育的开端。

*To err is human; to forgive, divine.*

犯错人皆难免；宽恕则属圣贤。

*To love is the most beautiful verb in the world.*

爱是世上最美的动词。

当不定式作主语时，经常置于句末，而用it作形式主语，置于句首，尤其当不定式较长时。此时，不定式一般不能用动名词替换，除非特殊句型。

*It pays to be polite.*

礼貌待人不会吃亏。

*It is shameful to hold back in face of danger.*

在危险面前退缩是可耻的。

*It is better to light a candle than to curse the darkness.*

诅咒黑暗不如点亮一支蜡烛。

### 13.7.2 不定式作宾语

有些动词，要求其后作宾语的动词用不定式的形式。

*He who scatters his efforts cannot hope to succeed.*

精力分散无法指望成功。

*We resolve to make a dull job interesting.*

我们决心使枯燥无味的工作变得趣味盎然。

*Even if you happen to get lucky, your luck can run out.*

即使你碰巧走了运，运气也会用光的。

*Only those who dare to fail greatly can ever achieve greatly.*

只有敢于承受重大失败的人才能成就伟大事业。

后接不定式作宾语的动词包括：

afford 买得起；担负得起 agree 同意 aim 目的在于

ask 请求，要求 aspire 渴望 attempt 试图

beg 恳求 begin 开始 bother 费心  
care 愿意 choose 情愿 claim 声称  
consent 同意 continue 继续 dare 敢于  
decide 决定 decline 拒绝 demand 要求  
deserve 应受，应得 desire 渴望 determine 决心  
endeavor 力图 expect 期待 fail 未能  
fear 担心 forget 忘记 happen 碰巧；偶然  
help 帮助 hesitate 犹豫 hope 希望  
intend 打算 learn 学会 long 渴望  
manage 设法做到 mean 打算 need 需要  
neglect 漏做 offer 表示愿意 plan 计划  
pledge 保证 plot 打算；策划 pray 恳求  
prepare 准备 pretend 假装 proceed 开始  
promise 承诺 refuse 拒绝 remember 记住  
resolve 决心 seek 试图 swear 发誓要  
start 开始 strive 努力 struggle 竭力  
tend 往往会 threaten 威胁 try 努力  
undertake 争取 venture 敢于 volunteer 自愿  
vow 发誓 wait 等待 want 希望  
wish 希望

如果作动词宾语的不定式带有补语，则不定式应置于补语之后，而用it作形式宾语，直接跟在动词之后。

If you lack self-confidence, you'll find it difficult *to become successful*.

如果缺乏自信，你会觉得难以成功。

I have found it advisable *not to give too much heed to what people say when I am trying to accomplish something of consequence*.

我觉得当我正在努力完成某项重要的事情的时候，最好不要过多在意人们说什么。

### 13.7.3 不定式作表语

The proper function of man is *to live, not to exist*.

人的正当职责是生活，而不是生存。

Faith is *to believe what you do not yet see*; the reward for this faith is *to see what you believe*.

信念就是相信你还没有看到的東西；对信念的报偿就是看到你相信的东西。

The secret of being miserable is *to bother about whether you are happy or not.*

痛苦的根源在于，劳神费心地去想自己是否幸福。

The only way to make the future better than the present is *to plan for it.*

让未来好于现在的唯一方法就是为未来做好筹划。

不定式和动名词都能作表语，很多时候没有差别，但在某些特定情况下，则只能用不定式：当主语是 purpose, aim, object, goal, function, plan, hope, wish 等词时，用不定式作表语，表示具体的或将来的动作；当表语表示抽象动作时多用动名词。在主系表结构的句子中，当主语和表语都是动词时，可以都用不定式（也可以都用动名词）形成前后对称；不可以一个用不定式，另一个用动名词，如 *To see is to believe.* 和 *Seeing is believing.* 皆可，但 *To see is believing.* 或 *Seeing is to believe.* 则不可。

*To choose time is to save time.*

选择时间就是节省时间。

*To change your attitude is to change your life.*

改变态度就是改变人生。

*To live in an illusion is to live with a constant dull pain.*

生活在幻想中就是生活带有永恒的隐痛。

如果主语以 all, what, the...thing 等开头，并且其中含有动词 do 的某种形式，则表语中的 to 可以省略，可以直接用动词原形作表语。

*All I need to do is (to) strengthen my faith.*

我必须做的就是增强自己的信念。

*Everybody has a key to his or her life. All you need to do is (to) find it.*

每个人的生活都有一把钥匙。你必须做的就是找到它。

*What I need to do is (to) be certain that I am complimenting with a sincere voice.*

我必须去做的就是确保赞美别人要语气真诚。

*What you need to do is (to) keep your ears and eyes open, and ask a few questions.*

你必须做的就是眼睛注意观察，耳朵注意倾听，并提出一些问题。

*Sometimes the most urgent and vital thing you can possibly do is (to) take a complete rest.*

有时你能做的最紧迫、最重要的事情就是彻底休息。

#### 13.7.4 不定式作定语

有些名词要求用动词的不定式作其定语。

The only way *to overcome fears* is to confront them.

战胜恐惧的唯一方法就是面对恐惧。

Those who have courage *to master their lives* are heroes.

有勇气掌握自己人生的人就是英雄。

We have no right *to enjoy happiness* without producing it.

不创造幸福我们就无权享受幸福。

The greatest power that a person possesses is the power *to choose*.

一个人所拥有的最大权力就是选择的权力。

The important thing in life is the determination *to attain a great aim*.

人生的重要之处在于要有达到伟大目标的决心。

The roots of true achievement lie in the will *to become the best that you can become*.

真正的成就其根源在于竭尽全力的意志。

其后要求接不定式作定语的名词包括：

ability 能力 agreement 同意 ambition 雄心

anxiety 急切 attempt 尝试 capacity 能力

chance 机会 claim 宣称 courage 勇气

decision 决定 demand 要求 desire 渴望

determination 决心 eagerness 渴望 effort 努力

failure 没做到 hope 希望 inclination 趋势；倾向

intention 意图 need 需要 offer 意图的表示

opportunity 机会 plan 计划 refusal 拒绝

reluctance 不愿 request 请求 resolution 决心

resolve 决心 right 权力 tendency 趋势

way 方法 will 意志 willingness 意愿

不定式在something to do这一基本表达模式中作定语，动词的逻辑宾语就是它所修饰的名词或代词。

There is *something to gain* and *nothing to lose* by asking.

开口询问有所得而无所失。

The dwarf sees farther than the giant when he has *the giant's shoulder to mount on*.

当矮人爬上巨人的肩膀时比巨人看得更远。

Beliefs are like the foundation of a building, and they are *the foundation to build your life upon*.

犹如高楼的地基，信念是构建人生的基础。

There is a great deal of difference between the eager man who wants to read a book, and the tired man who wants *a book to read*.

想读书的求知者和想有书读的消遣者之间相去甚远。  
不定式修饰only, first, next, last或带有这些词的名词。

He loves work; he is always *the first to come* and *the last to leave*.

他热爱工作；他总是第一个来，却是最后一个走。

Pay attention to your enemies, for they are *the first to discover your mistakes*.

注意你的敌人，因为他们首先发现你的错误。

The memory of my mother and her teachings were *the only capital I had to start life with*.

对母亲的记忆以及她的教导是我人生起步的唯一资本。

*Next to think about* was the question of how to balance personal goals with those of society.

下一个要考虑的是如何将个人的目标和社会的目标加以平衡。

Our boss is always *the last to criticize* and *the first to praise*. His constructive suggestions are really helpful.

我们的老板总是最后批评而最先表扬别人的人。他的建设性意见很有帮助。

### 13.7.5 不定式作状语

不定式在句中常作目的状语和结果状语。

#### a 不定式作目的状语

*To associate with friends*, we should be honest and open.

与朋友交往，我们应开诚布公。

*To achieve happiness*, we should make certain that we are never without an important goal.

为了得到幸福，我们应树立一个重要目标。

A winner does what he can *to make the world a better place*.

胜者尽其所能使世界更加美好。

当不定式表示目的时，也可以用in order to或so as to，只是so as to不能位于句首。

*In order to preserve tomorrow*, we must act today.

为了保全明天，我们必须今天就行动。

We are working hard and overcoming difficulties *in order to* (或*so as to*) *turn our dreams into a reality*.

我们在努力工作，克服困难，为的是把梦想变为现实。

#### b 不定式作结果状语

常见的表达模式为too...to (太.....以至于不能), enough to (足以), only to (结果却), so...as to (如此.....以至于)等。

too...to

It is never *too late to learn*.

学习从不嫌晚。

Life is *too short to constantly worry about everything*.

人生短促，不能总是事事忧心。

enough to

No one is rich *enough to buy back his past*.

再富有也买不回自己的过去。

The arms of friendship are long *enough to stretch from one end of the world to the other*.

友谊的手臂很长，足以伸到天涯海角。

only to

Do not lift a stone *only to drop it on your own feet*.

不要搬起石头砸自己的脚。

We solve one problem *only to find another cropping up*.

我们解决了一个问题结果却发现另一个问题的显露。

so...as to

Is life so dear or peace so sweet *as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery?*

难道生命就这样宝贵，和平就如此可爱，以至于要以枷锁和奴役为代价去换取吗？

### 13.7.6 不定式作补语

不定式可以作主语补足语和宾语补足语。

不定式作主语补足语，多出现在被动语态之后。

Time is often said *to be money*, but it is more—it is life.

人们往往说时间是金钱，但时间不止于此——它是生命。

Music is well said *to be the speech of angels*.

有人将音乐恰当地称为天使的语言。

不定式作宾语补足语

We hold these truths *to be self-evident*, that all men are created equal.

我们认为这些真理不言而喻，人人生而平等。

The fool thinks himself *to be wise*, but the wise man knows himself *to be a fool*.



愚者自以为智，智者自知其愚。

## 13.8 后接不定式的形容词

这类形容词包括：

able 有能力的 about 即将  
afraid 害怕的 amazed 惊奇的  
anxious 急切的 apt 有.....倾向的  
ashamed 羞愧的 astonished 惊讶的  
careful 谨慎的 certain 肯定的  
content 满足的 curious 好奇的  
delighted 高兴的 desirous 渴望的  
determined 下定决心的 disappointed 失望的  
eager 急切的 fortunate 幸运的  
free 自由的 glad 高兴的  
happy 高兴的 hesitant 犹豫不决的  
impatient 迫不及待的 likely 可能的  
lucky 幸运的 pleased 高兴的  
prepared 做好准备的 proud 自豪的  
quick 迅速的；灵敏的 ready 准备就绪的；愿意的  
relieved 宽慰的 slow 迟钝的；不轻易的  
sorry 难过的 stunned 震惊的  
sure 一定 surprised 吃惊的  
upset 烦恼的 unable 不能够的  
unwilling 不愿意的 willing 愿意的  
worthwhile 值得的

A man *apt* to promise is *apt* to forget.  
容易许诺的人也容易把诺言抛于脑后。

Be *slow* to promise and *quick* to perform.  
许诺宜缓，履行宜速。

A great man is always *willing* to be little.  
伟大的人物总是情愿当小人物。

Those who look only to the past or the present are *certain* to miss the future.

只着眼于过去或现在的人一定会失去未来。

## 13.9 可接名词或代词再加不定式的动词

有些动词，当其宾语为名词或代词时，还可以接不定式作宾语的补足语。这类动词包括：

advise 建议 allow 允许 ask 要求  
beg 恳求 cause 导致 challenge 挑战  
command 要求 compel 迫使 empower 授权；使能够  
enable 使能够 encourage 鼓励 entitle 使有权；使有资格  
expect 期待 forbid 禁止 force 强迫  
get 说服 help 帮助 implore 恳求  
incite 激励 induce 引诱；劝使 instruct 嘱咐  
invite 邀请 lead 引导 like 喜欢；希望  
oblige 迫使 order 命令 permit 允许  
persuade 说服 require 要求 request 请求  
recommend 建议 remind 提醒 teach 教  
tell 告诉 tempt 诱惑 train 训练  
trouble 麻烦 urge 力劝；催促 want 希望  
warn 警告 wish 希望

Dreams *force* us to aim high.

梦想让我们树立了远大的目标。

Difficulties *train* you to be great.

困难成就了你的伟大。

Motive is that which *incites* a person to take action.

动机是激励一个人行动的东西。

Leadership is the expression of courage that *compels* people to do the right thing.

领导才能表现的是迫使人们正确而为的勇气。

When you *want* the present to be better than the past, it is time to learn from the past.

当你希望现在比过去美好的时候，就应该从过去中学习。

## 13.10 for+名词(或代词)+不定式的复合结构

在不定式中，当需要出现不定式动词的施动者时，用介词for引出，置于不定式之前，构成一种复合结构。在句中同样可以作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语等。

### 13.10.1 不定式复合结构作主语

用it作形式主语较多，也可以用不定式复合结构直接作主语。

*It is good for one to have self-knowledge.*

人贵有自知之明。

*It is hard for a person to recognize opportunities if he stays in one place.*

一个人如果只是原地踏步，就很难发现机遇。

*It is a challenge for us to find a better way on our own.*

我们自己寻找到更好的方法，这是一种挑战。

*It is hard for an empty sack to stand upright.*

空洞的麻袋难以直立。

### 13.10.2 不定式复合结构作宾语

不定式复合结构作宾语时，一般带有补语，而且用it作形式宾语，复合结构置于补语之后。

*Confidence makes it easy for us to achieve our goals.*

自信使我们容易达到目标。

*Inaction renders it impossible for you to fulfil your dreams.*

懒散倦怠使你不可能实现梦想。

### 13.10.3 不定式复合结构作表语

*The secret of success in life is for a man to be ready for his opportunity when it comes.*

人生成功的秘诀在于，当机遇来临时，要有所准备。

### 13.10.4 不定式复合结构作定语

*All adversity is really an opportunity for our souls to grow.*

一切逆境实际上是我们灵魂得以成长的机会。

*If I were given the opportunity to present a gift to the next generation, it would be the ability for each individual to learn to laugh at himself.*

假如我有机会送下一代一件礼物，那会是让每个人都有自嘲的能力。

### 13.10.5 不定式复合结构作状语

*For things to change, you've got to change.*

为了让情况发生改变，你必须做出改变。

*Don't wait for opportunity to knock.*

不要坐等机遇的到来。

Each frown I meet only prepares me *for the smile to come*.

我遇到的每一次皱眉都让我做好迎接微笑的准备。

Consideration is needed *for friendship to last*.

友谊的持久需要关心体贴。

### 13.11 代词、副词和不定式的搭配使用

连接代词、连接副词、关系代词、关系副词经常和不定式一起使用，相当于名词从句或定语从句的省略形式。这些连接代词或连接副词包括：who, what, which, when, where, how, whether等。

*How to act in this changing world* presents a real challenge.

在这个变化不定的世界中如何行动才是真正的挑战。

Experience tells you *what to do*; confidence allows you to do it.

经验告诉你做什么，而信心让你去做这件事。

The key to closing a sale is to know *when to stop selling*.

完成一项销售的关键在于，知道何时停止推销。

We can make the world a better place *in which to live*.

我们可以让世界变成一个更美好的生活所在。

Give me one firm spot *on which to stand*, and I will move the earth.

给我一个支点，我会撬动整个地球。

Those who say that we are in a time when there are no heroes just don't know *where to look*.

声称我们的时代没有英雄的人只是不知道到哪里去寻找英雄。

When considering *whether to risk something difficult*, consider what you risk by not trying.

当考虑是否要冒风险去做困难的事情时，要考虑如果不尝试你会有失去什么的风险。

### 13.12 不定式中的被动语态和完成式

在不定式中，被动语态的基本表达形式为to be +动词的过去分词；完成式的基本表达形式为to have+动词的过去分词。

不定式中的被动语态

*To be loved* is to be fortunate.

被爱是一种幸运。

Don't wait *to be loved* to love.

不要等到被爱的时候再去爱。

The deepest yearning of human nature is the craving *to be appreciated*.

人性中最深切的渴望是得到他人的欣赏。  
不定式中的完成式

The reward of a thing well done is *to have done it*.

一件事做得出色，其报偿就是已经做了这件事。

It is hard to fail, but it is worse *never to have tried to succeed*.

失败固然痛苦，但更糟糕的是从未做任何尝试去取得成功。

Government should do for a community of people whatever they need *to have done* but cannot do at all.

政府应该为一个群体的民众去做他们本来需要做到，但却不能做到的事情。

### 13.13 不定式习语

不定式构成的习语，在句中作独立成分。这样的习语有：

to begin with 首先 to start with 首先

to sum up 概括地讲 to conclude 总而言之

to illustrate 举例来说 to be brief 简而言之

to be fair 说句公道话 to be frank 坦率地讲

to be honest 老实说 to be exact 确切地说

to be sure 诚然 needless to say 不用说

sad to say 很遗憾 strange to say 说来奇怪

so to speak 打个比喻 to tell the truth 说实话

to say nothing of... 更不用说 to say the least 至少可以说

that is to say 也就是说 not to mention... 更不用说

to make matters worse 更糟糕的是

*To be sure*, leadership does demand a certain toughness.

诚然，领导者们的确需要一定的坚韧性格。

Diligence will greatly enrich your mind, body and spirit, *not to mention* your bank account.

勤奋能大大地充实你的思想，身体和精神，更不用说存款了。

*Sad to say*, honesty no longer appears to be the norm.

很遗憾，诚信似乎不再是行动的准则。

### 13.14 不带to的不定式

在以下多种情况下，不定式不带to，即用动词原形。

### 13.14.1 感官动词之后作宾语补足语

感官动词之后的动词原形作宾语补足语，表示动作的全部过程。

Every bird loves to hear himself *sing*.

每只鸟都喜欢听自己鸣唱。

There's nothing worse than seeing my friends *succeed*. This is unhappy people's attitude.

没有什么比看到朋友成功更糟糕的了。这是不幸福者的态度。

It is heartening to see millions who had nothing but a record of misery and hunger *have the chance to improve their life*.

看到无数曾经饥寒交迫的人有机会改善他们的生活，这是令人鼓舞的。

### 13.14.2 使役动词之后作宾语补足语

相关的使役动词为let, make和have。

Let the past *bury its dead*.

让已逝的过去永远埋葬。

Take your way. Let the world *talk*.

走自己的路。让别人去说吧。

Let me *win*, but if I cannot win, let me *be brave in the attempt*.

让我获胜吧，但如果我不能获胜，让我勇敢地去尝试吧。

Never let problems *get in your way*.

决不要让问题挡住去路。

When you make others *feel special*, people like you.

当你让他人感到与众不同的时候，人们就会喜欢你。

The only thing wealth does for some people is to make them *worry about losing it*.

对于有些人来说，财富带给他们的唯一东西就是他们对失去财富的担心。

If you want to have another *keep a secret*, keep it first yourself.

如果希望他人保守秘密，首先自己要保守秘密。

### 13.14.3 动词help之后作宾语补足语

作help的宾语补足语，不定式中的to可有可无。

Working can help you *(to) create a rich, balanced life*.

工作有助于创造丰富而平衡的生活。

You cannot teach a man anything. You can only help him *(to) discover it within himself*.

你无法教会一个人任何东西。你只能帮助他在自身内部发现它。

#### 13.14.4 用于why或why not+动词原形的问句

*Why not commit to excellence?*

为什么不去追求卓越呢？

*Why wait? Start now!*

为什么等待？马上行动！

*Each day is a new start. Why waste it on self-pity?*

每一天都是一个新的起点。为什么要自怜自哀而浪费光阴呢？

*I have one life and it's short enough; why waste it on things I don't want most?*

我只有一次生命，而且相当短暂；为什么要把生命浪费在我最不喜欢的事情上呢？

*Why settle for so little in life when you can have so much just by daring to be different in your thinking?*

当你可以通过大胆地转变思维而获得很多时，为什么要满足于生活中的些微所得呢？

## 实践演练

I. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. We all have 【A】 hidden treasures. All we need doing 【B】 is bring 【C】 them to the surface and use 【D】 them.

2. Courage is getting 【A】 in the habit of looking 【B】 inward and go 【C】 with your highest feeling 【D】 of what is true and what feels right for you.

3. He felt hampered by his ignorance of the art of reading, so he ceased attending 【A】 the drawing 【B】 class and devoted himself to learn 【C】 reading and writing 【D】 at home.

4. You can't afford letting 【A】 the situation get wors 【B】. You must take 【C】 steps to put 【D】 it right.

5. The art of living 【A】 is to know 【B】 when to hold 【C】 fast and when to let to go 【D】.

6. Working 【A】 long hours did a lot molding 【B】 my character and helped me learn 【C】 the value of a dollar. It also made me learn 【D】 how to craft creative solutions to difficult dilemmas.

7. I try to reason 【A】 with pain, and I end up feeling 【B】 miserable. I cannot help but thinking 【C】 about you, who had so much to give and share 【D】 with me.

8. The secret of life is not to do 【A】 what one likes, but to try 【B】 liking 【C】 what one has to do 【D】.

## II. 使用动词的正确形式填空。

1. The unexamined life is not worth \_\_\_\_\_(live).
2. We are confident of \_\_\_\_\_(overcome) the difficulties.
3. \_\_\_\_\_(lie) and stealing live next door to each other.
4. Constant \_\_\_\_\_(drip) wears away a stone.
5. Complaining leads to people \_\_\_\_\_(become) unhappy.
6. Why should our days leave us, never \_\_\_\_\_(return)?
7. \_\_\_\_\_(let) go is the inner action that releases the fear and upset.
8. Acceptance of what has happened is the first step to \_\_\_\_\_(overcome) the consequences of any misfortune.
9. Do not regret \_\_\_\_\_(grow) older; it's a privilege denied to many.
10. Never invest in anything that needs \_\_\_\_\_(repair).
11. To be genius, one cannot avoid \_\_\_\_\_(overcome) obstacles, for obstacles can create geniuses.
12. Some people use one half their ingenuity to get into debt, and the other half to avoid \_\_\_\_\_(pay) it.
13. Only those who will risk \_\_\_\_\_(go) too far can possibly find out how far one can go.
14. I could not help \_\_\_\_\_(sigh) with emotion: the course of life never runs smooth, for there are so many ups and downs, twists and turns.
15. It is no use blaming the \_\_\_\_\_(look) glass if your face is awry.
16. Each bird loves to hear himself \_\_\_\_\_(sing).
17. One is never too young nor too old \_\_\_\_\_(change) his self-image and thereby start to live a new life.
18. Let me \_\_\_\_\_(work); this is the only thing which is entertaining.
19. The strongest are those who renounce their own times and become a living part of those yet \_\_\_\_\_(come).



20. I do not mind \_\_\_\_\_(lie), but I hate inaccuracy.

### III. 英译汉

A 将下列带有动名词的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. The hand is the cutting edge of the mind.
2. There is pain in getting, care in keeping, and grief in losing riches.
3. At that moment I learned the difference between having money and truly being wealthy.
4. The best horse needs breaking, and the aptest child needs teaching.
5. Learning something without putting it into practice is like ploughing the land without growing anything in it.

B 将下列带有不定式的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. Silence is one of the hardest things to refute.
2. The shortest way to do many things is to do only one thing at once.
3. I choose to rise above my personality problems to recognize the magnificence of my being.
4. Unfortunately, man never gets too old or too experienced to be stupid in some new way.
5. The art of progress is to preserve order amid change and to preserve change amid order.

### IV. 汉译英

A 将下列各句中的汉语部分翻译成英文，要求使用动名词或不定式。

1. John was relying on \_\_\_\_\_(再出现一次机会).
2. Many who \_\_\_\_\_(逃避学习), or abandon it, find that life is drained dry.
3. He held \_\_\_\_\_(诚实的劳动是最好的老师).

4. The important thing in life is to have a great aim, and \_\_\_\_\_(实现这一目标的决心).
5. The real happiness of this world is \_\_\_\_\_(不是获取，而是给予).
6. Success as well as failure will not cause \_\_\_\_\_(使他丧失理性).
7. The proper function of man is \_\_\_\_\_(生活，而不是生存).
8. Difficult is to take care of love \_\_\_\_\_(为了不失去它).
9. \_\_\_\_\_(充分认识自己) needs self-appreciation.
10. Their secret of success is their ability \_\_\_\_\_(专心致志，从而凭借最少的努力获得最多的成果).

B 将下列汉语翻译成英文，注意动名词的使用。

1. 事情如果值得一做，它就值得做好。(动名词作宾语)
2. 新的一年是人生旅途中的另一个起点。(动名词作定语)
3. 在生命的尽头，你会因为曾经不能与朋友、父母以及心爱的人共度时光而感到遗憾。(动名词作宾语)
4. 要不断鼓励自己冒一些必要的风险来增强信心。(动名词作宾语)
5. 坚持就是跌倒19次，第20次获得成功。(动名词作表语)

C 将下列汉语句子翻译成英文，注意不定式的使用。

1. 要成功，我们必须接受挑战。(不定式作状语)
2. 你有权表达你的观点。(不定式作定语)
3. 伟人有移山的信念。(不定式作定语)
4. 在任何领域取得成就都需要勇气、品格和自律。(不定式作主语)
5. 你有享受自己工作收益的自由。(不定式作定语)
6. 挑战在于要创造属于你自己的真实生活。(不定式作表语)
7. 学习者应该利用一切机会运用语言。(不定式作状语)

8. 最大的不幸是曾经幸福过。(不定式作表语)

V. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. I really appreciate \_\_\_\_\_ to help me, but I am sure that I will be able to manage by myself.

- A. you to offer    B. your offering  
C. that you offer    D. that you are offering

2. I cannot help but \_\_\_\_\_ the truth of your remarks, although they go against my interests.

- A. think    B. thinking  
C. thought    D. to think

3. What is the secret ingredient of tough people that enables them \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. succeed    B. succeeding  
C. to succeed    D. to succeeding

4. There is so much \_\_\_\_\_ in our beautiful world.

- A. to see    B. seen    C. being seen    D. to be seen

5. Even as a girl, \_\_\_\_\_ to be her life, and theater audiences were to be her best teachers.

- A. performing by Melissa were  
B. it was known that Melissa's performances were  
C. knowing that Melissa's performances were  
D. Melissa knew that performing was

6. There's one thing I dislike about him: he will never admit \_\_\_\_\_ a mistake.

- A. having made    B. to make  
C. being made    D. having been made

7. There are few women so perfect that their husbands do not at least once a day regret \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. having married them    B. to have married  
C. to marry    D. to marrying

8. Natural abilities are like natural plants that need \_\_\_\_\_ by study.

- A. pruning    B. to prune  
C. being pruning    D. pruned

9. \_\_\_\_\_, we must rely on ourselves.

- A. For gaining our happiness    B. Gaining our happiness  
C. In order for gaining our happiness    D. To gain our happiness

10. Paul doesn't have to be made \_\_\_\_\_. He always works hard.  
A. learn B. to learn C. learned D. learning
11. A sad thing in life is when you meet someone who means a lot to you, \_\_\_\_\_ in the end that it was never meant to be and you just have to let go.  
A. but find out B. to find out  
C. but to find out D. only to find out
12. If you want to be sure that you never forget your wife's birthday, just \_\_\_\_\_ it once.  
A. try forgetting B. try to forget  
C. try to have forgotten D. try having forgotten
13. The situation requires that we do more than \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. sitting and talking B. sit and talk  
C. to sit and talk D. to sit and to talk

## 第14章 动词分词

现在分词是非谓语动词的一种，规则动词的现在分词形式为动词词尾加-ing。现在分词可以行使动词、形容词或副词的某些功能。现在分词本身可以有宾语和状语。

### 14.1 现在分词的语法功能

现在分词可以作定语、表语、状语和补语等。

#### 14.1.1 现在分词作定语

现在分词可以作定语，相当于形容词，修饰名词，可以位于名词之前或之后，位于名词之前较多；但如果是现在分词短语作定语，则只能位于名词之后。

Life is an *exciting* business.

人生是激动人心的事业。

*Daring* ideas are like chessmen. They may be beaten, but they may start a winning game.

大胆的想法就像棋子。它们也许会被吃掉，但也可能打开获胜的棋局。

Love is a beautiful song, *floating over your soul and mine, bringing us wild joy and happiness.*

爱是一首美妙的歌，回荡在你我的心窝，让我们欣喜若狂，幸福欢畅。

#### 14.1.2 现在分词作表语

现在分词作表语时，相当于形容词的功能。

Appearances often are *deceiving*.

外表往往具有迷惑性。

When you are idle, you will feel something is *missing*.

当无所事事的时候，你会感到若有所失。

No matter what kind of work you do, it needs to be *fulfilling* and *satisfying*.

不论你做什么工作，都须要给自己带来成就感和满足感。

#### 14.1.3 现在分词作状语

现在分词作状语时，可以表示时间、条件、伴随、方式、原因、结果、让步、独立成分等。必要时要有连词以使意义明确。

a 作时间状语

Keep objective *when associating*.

为人处世要保持客观。

b 作条件状语

*Stopping your dedication*, you will begin to decline and fall.

如果停止奉献，就会开始走向衰亡。

*Lacking a clear world outlook*, life will become a kind of burden.

如果缺乏明确的世界观，人生就会变成一种负担。

c 作伴随状语

Seize the present day, *trusting tomorrow as little as may be*.

把握今天，尽量不要相信明天。

No one is born *hating another person because of the color of his skin, or his background*.

没有谁生来就因为肤色或背景而仇视另一个人。

d 作方式状语

Lincoln once began a letter *saying: "Everybody likes a compliment."*

林肯曾经在一封信的开头这样写道：“每个人都喜欢称赞之辞。”

We spend most of our waking hours *communicating*.

我们清醒时的大部分时间都在交流。

Carnegie began practicing, *lecturing the livestock in his father's barn for hours on the subjects of the day*.

卡耐基开始训练，给父亲牲口棚里的牲畜做有关日常话题的演讲，一讲就是几个小时。

e 作原因状语

Bad books are poison, *doing harm to your heart and soul*.

坏书是毒药，危害心神。

Life is like running water, *flowing away never to return*.

生命如流水，往而不返。

With this faith, we will be able to walk together and to struggle together, *knowing that we will be free one day*.

怀着这个信念，我们就能够一同工作，一起斗争，因为我们知道总有一天我们将获得自由。

Those who take the long view are patient with difficulties, *knowing that time often makes the impossible possible*.

目光长远的人对困难泰然处之，因为他们知道时间往往使不可能的事情成为可能。

f 作结果状语

They began to build their dreams, *eventually making them a reality*.

他们开始构建梦想，最终将梦想变为现实。

g 作让步状语

Those who persist in doing good deeds *though being criticized* are true fighters.

坚持行善事的人尽管受到责难，也是真正的斗士。

h 作独立成分

Man is, *properly speaking*, based upon hope.

恰当地说，人靠希望而生。

#### 14.1.4 现在分词作补语

现在分词可以作主语补足语和宾语补足语，表示状态或正在进行的动作。

a 作主语补足语

An undeserved success is like a medal that is found *lying in the street*.

有名无实的成功就像在大街上拾到的奖章。

b 作宾语补足语

现在分词作感观动词的宾语补足语，表示正在进行的动作。

Man can only receive what he sees himself *receiving*.

人类所能得到的不过是他看到自己正在得到的东西。

Without goals, you find yourself *hoping things will happen*.

没有目标，你会发现自己只能期待事情的实现。

动词leave之后也常接现在分词作宾语补足语，表示“使……处于某种状态”。

A taste of power left him *desiring more power*.

尝到权力的甜头使他希冀更多的权力。

### 14.2 现在分词的完成式和被动式

现在分词的完成式基本形式为having +动词的过去分词，表示该动作已经完成；现在分词的被动式基本形式为being +动词的过去分词，表示被动关系。

现在分词的完成式：

*Having identified goals*, you can translate each goal to a specific day of the week.

确定目标之后，你可以在一周具体的每一天将每个目标付诸实现。

The person *having experienced various difficulties of life* will not be discouraged easily.

体验过人生各种艰辛的人不会轻易气馁沮丧。

现在分词的被动式：

The first step *being taken*, the rest is easy.

迈出第一步之后，其余的就可以迎刃而解。

### 14.3 现在分词的独立结构

有些情况下，现在分词的逻辑主语并非句子的主语，需要在分词前加上其逻辑主语，构成独立结构，也称为独立主格结构。独立结构在句中作状语。现在分词的独立结构和作状语的现在分词用法相同，只是多了逻辑主语。

Time slips by, *one season following another*.

时光荏苒，季节更迭。（相当于Time slips by, and one season follows another.）

*The world being hard*, struggle is the only way out.

世道艰难，奋斗是唯一出路。（相当于Because the world is hard, struggle is the only way out.）

*Life being very short*, we ought not to waste time in reading valueless books.

人生短促，我们不应浪费时间去阅读没有价值的书。（相当于Because life is very short, we ought not to waste time in reading valueless books.）

*All things being equal*, people will do business with people they like.

如果所有条件相同，人们愿意和自己喜欢的人打交道。（相当于If all things are equal, people will do business with people they like.）

We are a constellation of individuals, *each holding our own place in the cosmos*.

我们是一个由个人组成的星座，每个人都在宇宙中占据着自己的一席之地。（相当于We are a constellation of individuals, and each holds our own place in the cosmos.）

The Chinese word for crisis is divided into two characters, *one meaning danger and the other meaning opportunity*.

汉语中的“危机”分为两个汉字，一个意味着“危险”，另一个意味着“机遇”。（相当于The Chinese word for crisis is divided into two



characters, and one means danger and the other means opportunity. )  
In time, you develop the habit of winning over fear, *the smaller victories paving the way for the greater ones.*  
逐渐地你会培养起战胜恐惧的习惯，较小的胜利为更大的胜利铺平道路。（相当于In time, you develop the habit of winning over fear, and the smaller victories pave the way for the greater ones. ）

## 14.4 转化为形容词的现在分词

有相当一部分现在分词已经转化为独立存在的形容词，常见的有：

alarming 令人惊恐的 amazing 惊人的  
amusing 有趣的 annoying 恼人的  
astonishing 惊人的 boring 令人厌烦的  
challenging 挑战性的 charming 迷人的  
confusing 令人迷惑的 convincing 令人信服的  
cutting 锋利的 daring 大胆的  
demanding 要求苛刻的 disappointing 令人失望的  
depressing 令人沮丧的 developing 发展中的  
discouraging 令人泄气的 embarrassing 令人尴尬的  
encouraging 令人鼓舞的 entertaining 有趣的  
exciting 令人兴奋的 exhausting 令人疲惫不堪的  
existing 现有的 fascinating 迷人的  
frightening 令人害怕的 interesting 有趣的  
leading 主要的 loving 充满爱意的  
moving 感人的 outstanding 出众的  
pleasing 令人高兴的 promising 有希望的  
puzzling 令人困惑的 refreshing 提神的  
relaxing 令人轻松的 satisfying 令人满意的  
shocking 令人震惊的 startling 惊人的  
striking 显著的 stunning 令人震惊的  
surprising 惊人的 thrilling 令人激动的  
tiring 令人疲倦的 understanding 善解人意的  
upsetting 令人苦恼的 worrying 令人担心的  
Really great people will make you feel you are *outstanding*.  
真正伟大的人物会让你感到你是杰出的。  
The hand is the *cutting* edge of the mind.  
行动是思想的利刃。

Life is either a *daring* adventure or nothing.  
人生要么是一次无畏的历险，要么就是一无所成。

## 14.5 现在分词构成的合成形容词

现在分词常常和作其逻辑宾语的名词，有时也和形容词、副词等构成合成形容词。

all-conquering 战胜一切的 award-winning 获奖的  
body-building 增强体质的 breath-taking 惊人的  
close-fitting 紧身的 common-looking 相貌平平的  
earth-shaking 惊天动地的 easy-going 脾气随和的  
English-speaking 说英语的 epoch-making 划时代的  
ever-lasting 永恒的 eye-dazzling 令人眼花缭乱的  
fact-finding 实情调查的 far-reaching 深远的  
ground-breaking 开拓性的 hard-working 勤奋努力的  
heart-breaking 令人心碎的 high-achieving 成就高的  
labor-saving 省力的 law-abiding 遵纪守法的  
life-threatening 危及生命的 long-lasting 持续长久的  
peace-loving 爱好和平的 record-breaking 破记录的  
self-fulfilling 会自然实现的 thought-provoking 发人深省的  
time-consuming 耗时的 wide-ranging 广泛的

Life is a *self-fulfilling* prophecy.

生活是会自然实现的预言。

Force is *all-conquering*, but its victories are short-lived.

武力能战胜一切，但它的胜利为时不长。

Books are the *ever-burning* lamps of accumulated wisdom.

书籍是积累智慧的长明灯。

The Lord prefers *common-looking* people. That is the reason he makes so many of them.

主偏爱相貌平平的人，所以他创造了这么多普通人。

过去分词是非谓语动词的一种，规则动词的过去分词形式为动词词尾加-ed。过去分词可以行使动词、形容词或副词的某些功能。过去分词本身可以有状语。

## 14.6 过去分词的语法功能

过去分词可以作定语、表语、状语和补语等。

### 14.6.1 过去分词作定语

过去分词可以作定语，相当于形容词，修饰名词，可以位于名词之前或之后，位于名词之前较多；但如果是过去分词短语作定语，则只能位于名词之后。

Everyone has a *hidden* talent.

每个人都有潜在的天分。

Chance favors the *prepared* mind.

机遇垂青有准备的人。

Difficulties *mastered* are opportunities won.

驾驭困难就是赢得机会。

The soul that has no *established* aim loses itself.

没有明确目标的灵魂会迷失自我。

Money *spent on the brain* is never spent in vain.

智力投资绝不是白花钱。

Yesterday is a *canceled* check; tomorrow is a promissory note; today is the only cash you have.

昨天是一张作废的支票；明天是一张期票；今天是你拥有的唯一现金。

*Who Moved My Cheese?* shows a way out for people *trapped by fear of change*.

《谁动了我的奶酪》给惧怕变化并受其困扰的人指出了解决方法。

### 14.6.2 过去分词作表语

过去分词作表语时，相当于形容词的功能。

One can go a long way after one is *tired*.

一个人在感到疲惫之后仍可以走很长的路程。

A man is not *finished* when he is *defeated*. He is *finished* when he quits.

一个人不会毁于失败，而会毁于放弃。

The secret of a man who is universally interesting is that he is universally *interested*.

做一个大家都感兴趣的人的秘诀在于，他对大家都感兴趣。

When wealth is *lost*, nothing is *lost*; when health is *lost*, something is *lost*; when character is *lost*, all is *lost*.

失去财富，无所失去；失去健康，有所失去；失去人格，一切失去。

### 14.6.3 过去分词作状语

*United we stand; divided we fall.*

团结则存，分裂则亡。（相当于If we are united we stand; if we are divided we fall.）

*The smallest task, well done, becomes a miracle of achievement.*

最微不足道的事情，如果做好，也会成为奇迹般的成就。（相当于The smallest task, if it is well done, becomes a miracle of achievement.）

*Beauty, unaccompanied by virtue, is like a flower without perfume.*

美而无德，犹如花之无香。（相当于Beauty, if it is unaccompanied by virtue, is like a flower without perfume.）

*Simply stated, a habit is something you do so often that it becomes easy.*

简而言之，习惯是指经常做而变得简单的事情。（相当于If it is simply stated, a habit is something you do so often that it becomes easy.）

*Given a choice beyond love and physical attractiveness, I prefer to marry a woman of ability.*

如果除了爱和美貌之外我还有选择，我更愿意娶一个精明强干的女人为妻。（相当于If I am given a choice beyond love and physical attractiveness, I prefer to marry a woman of ability.）

有时，为了意义更为明确，可以在过去分词之前加上连词。

*Past experience, if not forgotten, is a guide for the future.*

前事不忘，后事之师。（相当于Past experience, if it is not forgotten, is a guide for the future.）

*When tempted to do anything in secret, ask yourself if you would do it in public.*

当受到诱惑去做一些见不得人的事情时要自问，这件事自己是否愿意公开去做。（相当于When you are tempted to do anything in secret, ask yourself if you would do it in public.）

*The difference between a winner and a loser is, when confronted with difficulties, the former never loses heart.*

胜利者和失败者之间的区别在于，当面对困难时，前者从不丧失信心。（分词部分相当于时间状语从句when they are confronted with difficulties）

#### 14.6.4 过去分词作补语

动词get, have, keep, leave, make, want等常接过去分词作宾语补足语。

When you work, work, and when you play, play. Don't get the two *mixed up*.

该工作就工作，该娱乐就娱乐。不要把两者混淆。

The greatest pleasure I know is to do a good action by stealth, and to have it *found out by accident*.

我认为最大的快乐就是悄悄地做一件好事，而意外地被人发现。

Mozart did not keep his money problems *hidden*; everyone knew about his difficulties. But they didn't stop him writing wonderful music.

莫扎特不掩饰自己的经济问题；大家都知道他的困难。但是这些困难并没能阻止他谱写出优美的音乐。

We should learn the art of getting things *done* and the art of leaving things *undone*.

我们应学会有所为，有所不为的技巧。

A liar cannot make himself *believed*.

惯于说谎的人无法让别人信任自己。

If you want a thing *well done*, do it yourself.

如果希望出色地完成一件事情，就要亲力亲为。

## 14.7 现在分词和过去分词的区别

两者之间的最显著区别在于主被动意义不同。现在分词具有主动意义，而过去分词具有被动意义。试比较：

boring performance 令人乏味的表演    bored child 感到乏味的孩子  
confusing explanation 令人困惑的解释    confused student 迷惑不解的学生

convincing evidence 令人信服的证据    convinced public 信服的公众  
encouraging words 激励人心的话语    encouraged listener 受到鼓舞的听者

frightening storm 可怕的风暴    frightened lady 被吓坏的女士

loving parents 疼爱子女的父母    loved ones 所爱的亲人

moving film 感人的影片    moved audience 被感动的观众

interesting story 充满趣味的故事    interested reader 兴致勃勃的读者

shocking news 令人震惊的消息    shocked people 感到震惊的人们

除此之外，两者有时还存在另一个区别。现在分词可以表示动作正在进行的意义，而过去分词则可以表示完成的意义。试比较：

burning factory 着火的工厂    burnt factory 烧毁的工厂

developing country 发展中国家    developed country 发达国家

escaping gas 正在泄漏的气体 escaped prisoner 已经越狱的囚徒  
exploding star 正在爆炸的恒星 exploded mine 已经爆炸的地雷  
fading memory 逐渐淡忘的往事 faded flower 已然凋谢的花朵  
falling rain 正在下着的雨 fallen leaves 落叶  
growing strength 日益增强的力量 grown son 长大成人的儿子  
drowning child 落水挣扎的儿童 drowned man 溺水身亡的男子  
returning traveler 踏上归途的旅人 returned people 归来的人们

## 14.8 过去分词的独立结构

过去分词的独立结构即过去分词的逻辑主语和句子主语不一致而带有逻辑主语。过去分词的独立结构和作状语的过去分词用法相同，只是多了逻辑主语。

*Everything considered*, work is less boring than amusing oneself.  
如果全面考虑，工作不如寻欢作乐令人乏味。（相当于If everything is considered, work is less boring than amusing oneself.）  
Hafid walked slowly to the table, *his hands extended*.  
哈菲德双手张开，缓慢地走向桌子。（相当于Hafid walked slowly to the table, and his hands were extended.）  
A solitary eagle circled slowly, *its wings fully extended*.  
一只孤鹰双翅完全展开，缓慢地盘旋着。（相当于A solitary eagle circled slowly, and its wings were fully extended.）  
*Head bowed*, in total defeat, I failed even to notice the bright star.  
我垂头丧气，甚至连这颗明亮的星星也没有注意到。（相当于My head was bowed, in total defeat, and I failed even to notice the bright star.）

## 14.9 转化为形容词的过去分词

有相当数量的过去分词本身已经成为独立的形容词，包括：

admitted 公认的 advanced 先进的  
alarmed 惊恐的 amazed 吃惊的  
amused 被逗乐的 annoyed 生气的  
astonished 吃惊的 bored 感到厌烦的  
convinced 信服的 confused 迷惑的  
developed 发达的 depressed 沮丧的

disappointed 失望的 discouraged 泄气的  
distinguished 杰出的 doomed 注定要灭亡或失败的  
drunk 喝醉的 embarrassed 感到尴尬的  
encouraged 受到鼓舞的 excited 激动的  
exhausted 筋疲力尽的 fascinated 被吸引住的  
finished 结束的 frightened 害怕的  
interested 感兴趣的 learned 博学的  
pleased 高兴的 puzzled 困惑的  
relaxed 感到放松的 repeated 反复的  
satisfied 感到满意的 shocked 感到震惊的  
startled 吃惊的 stunned 感到震惊的  
surprised 吃惊的 thrilled 兴奋的  
tired 疲惫的 worried 担心的

## 14.10 过去分词构成的合成形容词

过去分词常和名词、形容词、副词等构成合成形容词。

blood-shot 布满血丝的 clear-cut 清楚明确的  
duty-bound 责无旁贷的 far-fetched 遥不可及的  
far-flung 分布广泛的 frost-bitten 冻伤的  
half-baked 半生不熟的 hard-won 来之不易的  
heart-felt 衷心的 home-bound 困居家中的  
home-made 家制的 ill-bred 教养不好的  
custom-made 定做的 machine-made 机制的  
man-made 人工的 London-based 总部设在伦敦的  
mass-produced 大量生产的 new-born 新生的  
poverty-stricken 贫困的 quick-frozen 速冻的  
ready-made 现成的 self-made 自制的  
self-taught 自学成才的 short-lived 为时不长的  
snow-covered 被雪覆盖的 state-run 国营的  
sugar-coated 裹糖衣的 tear-stained 沾有泪痕的  
time-honored 传统的 tongue-tied 张口结舌的  
weather-beaten 饱经风霜的 well-dressed 衣冠楚楚的  
well-equipped 装备完善的 well-informed 消息灵通的  
well-known 著名的 well-prepared 准备充分的  
Most American millionaires are *self-made*.  
大多数美国富豪都是靠个人奋斗成功的。

A *well-spent* day brings happy sleep.

充实的一天带来甜美的睡眠。

It is in the love of one's family only that *heart-felt* happiness is known.

只有在家庭爱的怀抱里才能感受到由衷的幸福。

Our problems are *man-made*; therefore they may be solved by man.

我们的问题都是人为的，因此可以由人来解决。

A *well-prepared* mind hopes in adversity and fears in prosperity.

有充分准备的人在逆境中充满希望，在顺境中不忘担忧。

Words should be only the clothes, carefully *custom-made* to fit the thought.

语言只应是这样一种“衣服”，经过了认真的量身定做，和思想契合。

### 14.11 起转移修饰作用的过去分词

有时，修饰人的一些过去分词用来修饰事物，从而起到转移修饰的作用。表面看来，过去分词修饰事物，但实质上指的是与该事物有密切关系的人。如：

relaxed atmosphere 无拘无束的气氛   relaxed life 悠闲自在的生活

satisfied look 心满意足的神情   tired image 疲惫不堪的形象

worried wait 提心吊胆的等待

### 14.12 由不及物动词构成的过去分词

过去分词绝大部分由及物动词转化而来，从而具有被动意义，但也有个别的过去分词由不及物动词变化而来，具有完成意义而并无被动意味。这样的过去分词包括：

deceased 亡故的   escaped 逃脱的   failed 失败的

fallen 降落的   gone 离去的   grown 成熟的

retired 退休的   returned 归来的   risen 升起的

traveled 富有旅行经验的   vanished 消失的

True happiness is of a *retired* nature.

真正的幸福与世无争。

Man is a *fallen* god who remembers the heavens.

人是降在凡间，但仍向往天堂的神灵。

I am slave to my habits, as are all *grown* men.



我和所有成人一样，为自己的习惯所左右。

Youth is a brief dream; when you wake up, it is *gone*.

青春是一个短暂的梦；当你一觉醒来，已消失无踪。

## 实践演练

### I. 找出每题中的一处错误，并加以改正。

1. Words are unnecessary for heartfeeling wishes.
2. Send you a blade of maple leaf wishing you a year as flourished as it.
3. An individual human existence should be like a river—small at first, narrowly contains within its banks, and rushing passionately past boulders and over waterfalls.
4. Unlike those left on the beach, which melt in an instant into the sand with the washing of the tide, the footprints left on the paths we have taken remain forever like casted iron and carved stone.
5. It is a world so inanimate and silent, with the chilly and crisp air indicates that this season is not fit for fragile lives. However, there always seems to be some pleasant surprise lurking in the shade of despair. Look at that tiny white butterfly like a dancing snowflake: its tiny body whirling up and down, touching the grass lightly with a quick kiss.

### II. 使用所提供动词的正确形式填空。

1. The dead are indifferent to slander, but the \_\_\_\_\_(live) can die of it.
2. \_\_\_\_\_(arrive) at a decision, they immediately set to work.
3. We are too often indifferent to the loss of an hour or of a day, \_\_\_\_\_(forget) that our life is the sum total of the days and of the hours we live.
4. \_\_\_\_\_(rise) above the heads of the mass, there were always to be found a series of individuals \_\_\_\_\_(distinguish) beyond others.
5. Our faith, humor, and hope may be tested, but they are what keeps us \_\_\_\_\_(go) as we try to overcome the various obstacles.
6. \_\_\_\_\_(make) that decision, I was immediately tested.
7. From the time we are toddlers until the day we die, we are busy \_\_\_\_\_(struggle) to outdo others.
8. It is \_\_\_\_\_(discourage) to try to be a good neighbor in a bad neighborhood.

9. “If we fail to act now,” said the Gadfly, “we’ll find ourselves \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) for inaction later on.”
10. \_\_\_\_\_ (simplify) my life, I am enjoying living now, instead of just existing to make a living.
11. Fortune, \_\_\_\_\_ (see) that she could not make fools wise, has made them lucky.
12. I have spent some time \_\_\_\_\_ (study) biographies and autobiographies of great men and women and have found some common denominators among them all. I want to share some of them with you, \_\_\_\_\_ (hope) it will help you in your quest for success.
13. He turned his back on years of academic training and, \_\_\_\_\_ (forgo) financial security, began a career in the highly uncertain communications field.

### III. 将下列句子中的划线部分转换成分词形式。

1. A river that runs into many brooks becomes shallow.
2. When they have planted their acorn, they expected to see it grow into an oak at once.
3. People are not the captives or victims of others—they are free agents, who work out their own destinies for good or for ill.
4. People who lack genuine core value rely on external factors—their looks or status—in order to feel good about themselves.
5. When I put myself in his shoes, I realized that someday I too, could become dependent on the kindness of strangers.
6. He employed himself diligently in the practice of his art during the remaining years of his life, and lived in great simplicity and privacy.
7. Though they were cut off from all communication with their friends for months, and did not know whether the town was lost or held, they never ceased to have perfect faith in the courage and devotedness of their countrymen.

8. Fear, if it is left unchecked, can destroy our lives.

#### IV. 将下列句子中划线的分词部分转换成从句或分句。

1. One rotten apple corrupts all those apples lying near it.
2. An artist may be laboring truly in his vocation while designing a common teapot or water jug.
3. Haydn, speaking of his art, said, "It consists in taking up a subject and pursuing it."
4. He battled with hunger, thirst, privations and dangers of all kinds, still pursuing his mission of love.
5. Trials in life can be tragedies or triumphs, depending on how we handle them.
6. Upheld throughout by the victorious power of enthusiasm, he pursued his design with unsubdued energy.

#### V. 将下列带有动词分词的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. Life is made up of sobs, sniffles, and smiles, with sniffles predominating.
2. We do seem to be dedicated to the idea of buying our way to happiness.
3. Pride is a kind of pleasure produced by a man thinking too well of himself.
4. The second half of a man's life is made up of nothing but the habits acquired during the first half.
5. The brightest future will always be based on a forgotten past.

## VI. 根据汉语在空白处写出动词的分词形式。

1. It is \_\_\_\_\_(令人沮丧的) to think how many people are shocked by honesty and how few by deceit.
2. In autumn, the grassland turns into a world of silence. The ground is accumulated with \_\_\_\_\_(落下的) leaves.
3. Lifelong learning is a philosophy of life, \_\_\_\_\_(被激发的) by curiosity and passion.
4. A career is \_\_\_\_\_(富有刺激的).
5. Regret is a \_\_\_\_\_(惊人的) waste of energy.
6. Not \_\_\_\_\_(憧憬) for success and what is after, I only want to be summer green grass to greet the cloudy or sunny sky with the thick green.

## VII. 按照具体要求，将下列汉语句子翻译成英文。

1. 人生是在大海中航行的一叶小舟。(现在分词作定语)
2. 勤奋是通往幸福的道路。(现在分词作定语)
3. 让我们拼搏一生而无怨无悔。(现在分词作状语)
4. 青春什么都不在乎，仿佛拥有世界上一切宝藏。(现在分词作状语)
5. 在自律时，我们的身心会处于最佳状态。(过去分词作表语)
6. 心乱则眼盲。(过去分词作表语)
7. 分担友谊可以减轻失败的打击。(过去分词作定语)

## VIII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. Never \_\_\_\_\_ faith in himself, Watt went on with his experiment.  
A. losing B. to lose C. lost D. to be lost
2. \_\_\_\_\_ for many years, the novelist suddenly became famous.  
A. Having ignored him B. Having been ignored  
C. To have been ignored D. To be ignored
3. There are a lot of problems \_\_\_\_\_ us at the moment.  
A. faced B. facing C. to face D. to be faced

4. \_\_\_\_\_ words for people in despair can inspire them with \_\_\_\_\_ spirit.  
A. Encouraging; renewing B. Encouraged; renewed  
C. Encouraging; renewed D. Encouraged; renewing
5. Never allow yourself to \_\_\_\_\_ and think that your life is insignificant and cannot make a change.  
A. get discouraged B. get discouraging  
C. have discouraged D. get yourself discouraging
6. In humble life nothing can be more cheering and beautiful than to see a man \_\_\_\_\_ suffering by patience.  
A. combat B. combating C. combated D. to combat
7. The greatest difficulties could neither embarrass nor intimidate Wellington, his energy invariably \_\_\_\_\_ in proportion to the obstacles to be surmounted.  
A. rising B. rose C. would rise D. risen
8. Drive my dead thoughts over the universe \_\_\_\_\_ to quicken a new birth.  
A. like withering leaves B. like withered leaves  
C. like leaves to be withered D. like leaves being withered
9. If I correct someone, I will do it with as much good humor and self-restraint as if I were the one \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to correct B. correcting  
C. having corrected D. being corrected
10. Well \_\_\_\_\_ is half done.  
A. began B. begun C. beginning D. having begun

## 第15章 主谓一致

主谓一致是极为普遍的语法现象，具体指的是句子的谓语动词和主语须保持人称和数的一致。系动词be的各种人称形式包括am, is, was, are, were，前三者为单数，后两者为复数；动词have的现在时第三人称单数形式为has；其他动词的现在时第三人称单数形式是在词尾加-s或-es；除系动词be之外的动词复数形式并无特别标识。见下例：

Diligence is the mother of good fortune.

勤奋是好运之母。

Every man is the architect of his own fortune.

每个人都是自己命运的建筑师。

Beliefs have the power to create.

信念拥有创造力。

There are two sides to every question.

每个问题都有正反两面。

如果主语部分较长，要看核心部分以确定其单复数。如：

The qualities of a leader come from within.

领导者的品质来自内心。（主语核心词为qualities）

All efficient armies are well disciplined.

一切战斗力强的军队无不纪律严明。（主语核心词为armies）

The career of fruit is respectable; the career of flowers is sweet.

果实的事业是尊贵的；花儿的事业是甜蜜的。（两个分句的主语核心词皆为career）

The great difference between those who succeed and those who fail does not consist in the amount of work done by each but in the amount of intelligent work.

成功者和失败者之间的重大差异并不在于每个人所做工作的多少，而在于所做聪明工作的多少。（主语核心词为difference）

有很多时候，判断主语单复数较为复杂，需区别对待，具体情况遵循具体的规则。

### 15.1 and连接的并列成分作主语时

因为由and连接的并列主语在数量上超过一个，多数情况下应看作复数。

Passion and enthusiasm are the seeds of achievement.  
激情和热忱是成就的种子。

Sincerity and respect are the inner factors of polite speech.  
诚挚和敬意是礼貌言语的内在因素。

Growth and change are the law of all life.  
发展和变化是一切生命的法则。

Will and work are the cornerstones for success.  
意志和勤奋是成功的基石。

但是，当并列主语指的是同一事物时，或者被看作一个整体概念时，则谓语动词用单数。

Care and diligence brings luck.  
谨慎与勤奋带来运气。

Working and living with purpose is a practical approach.  
有目的的工作和生活是一种讲求实际的态度。

All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.  
只工作，不玩耍，聪明孩子也变傻。

There is a time and place for everything.  
万事万物各应其时，各有其所。

个别时候，两个形容词作并列主语，表示一个抽象概念，看作单数。

Soft and fair goes far.  
平心静气能够成功。

Slow and steady wins the race.  
稳扎稳打，方能取胜。

并列主语被看作一个整体概念的情况还包括：

bread and butter 面包和黄油

heart and soul 全部心神

knife and fork 一副刀叉

science and technology 科学技术

## 15.2 名词+介词短语作主语时

由于介词短语是起修饰作用的部分，故不是主语重心，主语的单复数取决于前面的名词。

One plus one equals three or more.  
一加一等于三或者更多。

Zeal without knowledge is fire without light.  
没有知识的热情如同没有光亮的火焰。

Cooperation, like love and friendship, is something you get by giving.  
像爱情和友谊一样，合作是通过给予而获得的东西。

A sound mind in a sound body is a short but full description of a happy state in this world.

健全的心智寓于健康的体魄是对世上一种幸福状态的简短但却完整的描述。

The fortune of our lives depends on employing well the short period of our youth.

人生的财富取决于充分利用青春的短暂时光。

### 15.3 集体名词作主语时

当集体名词表示整体概念时，应视为单数；当表示许多个体概念时，应看作复数。

A team that thinks it's going to lose is going to lose.

认为自己会输的团队就会输。

A group of individuals, no matter how gifted, is not a team at all.

一群个体，无论多么才华横溢，也根本不是一个团队。

The youth need to have ambition and dream.

青年人需要具有雄心和梦想。

Only a minority of people love their work.

只有少数人热爱自己的工作。

The majority see the obstacles; the few see the objectives.

大多数人看到的是障碍；极少数人看到的是目标。

常见的此类集体名词包括：

audience 观众 class 班级 committee 委员会

crew 全体工作人员 crowd 人群 family 家庭

group 小组 majority 大多数人 minority 少数人

personnel 全体工作人员 police 警方 public 公众

staff 全体工作人员 team 团队 youth 青年人

### 15.4 不定代词作主语时

有些不定代词的单复数意义较为明确，如：

One of our weaknesses is the habit of trying to reap before we have sown.



我们的一个弱点就是习惯于还没有播种就想收获。

One of the greatest aids to making good is the ability to put yourself in the other person's shoes in all situations.

成功最好的手段之一就是能够在所有情况下都设身处地进行换位思考。

Many of life's failures are people who did not realize how close they were to success when they gave up.

人生的许多失败者在他们放弃时并未意识到他们距成功仅咫尺之遥。

Many receive advice, but only those wise profit by it.

得建议者多，唯智者获益。

Everybody lives for something better to come.

每个人都为追求更美好的事物而生活。

No one remains quite what he was when he recognizes himself.

当一个人认清自己时，就不再是原来的自己了。

当all指人或指具体的可数事物时，看作复数；当all所指事物不明确或指不可数事物时，看作单数。

When a pickpocket meets a saint, all he sees are the pockets.

当扒手遇见圣人，他看到的只是圣人的口袋。

When character is lost, all is lost.

人格丧失，一切尽失。

All is not gold that glitters.

闪闪发光物，未必尽黄金。

All that is great comes through work.

一切伟大的事物都来自勤奋。

All appears to change when we change.

当我们做出改变的时候，一切似乎都会发生改变。

A smile can help one realize that all is not hopeless.

一个微笑可以帮助一个人认识到并非一切都失去了希望。

当neither或none作主语时，多用单数，但也可使用复数。

None is born a master.

谁生来也不是名家。

None of us is perfect.

人无完人。

None knows the weight of another's burden.

没有人知道别人肩上的担子有多重。

None of us are as smart as all of us.

没有哪个人能抵得上所有人的聪明。

## 15.5 数量词作主语时

当百分比、分数等作主语时，如果指可数名词，看作复数；如果指不可数名词，看作单数。

Only a small percentage of people are really independent.

只有一小部分是真正独立的。

Ninety-nine percent of failures come from people who have the habit of making excuses.

百分之九十九的失败者来自爱找借口的人。

Nine-tenths of wisdom consists in being wise in time.

十分之九的智慧在于聪明得及时。

当many a (许多)修饰名词作主语时，被修饰名词使用单数，谓语动词也用单数。

Many a true word is spoken in jest.

笑谈之中有至理。

Many a fine dish has nothing on it.

许多精美的盘子上空空如也。

Many a one says well that thinks ill.

许多人口蜜腹剑。

当a number of (一些)或a great (large) number of (大量)修饰名词作主语时，名词使用复数，谓语动词相应地也使用复数。

There are a great number of ways to create variety.

创造丰富多样的方法有很多。

A number of small streams converge into a vast ocean.

涓涓细流，汇成大海。

There are a number of things you can do to build bridges between work and home.

在工作和家庭之间搭建起桥梁，可以有一些办法。

A number of studies indicate that helplessness is taught to children early in life.

一些研究表明，孤立无助的情感在孩子年幼时就有了。

注意比较：当the number of (.....的数量)加名词复数作主语时，谓语动词使用单数，原因在于主语的核心词是the number。

The number of people who lack a strong sense of purpose is surprising.

缺乏强烈目的感的人其数量惊人。

## 15.6 表示度量衡的词作主语时

当主语表示时间、长度、距离、价值等度量衡时，往往视为整体概念，多看作单数。

The first 40 years of life gives us the text; the next 30 the commentary.

人生的头四十年给了我们课文；后三十年给了我们评论。

Even seven days is much too long for one to remain idle.

一个人如果无所事事，即使七天也太长。

To create the olive, king of all trees, a hundred years is required.

成就万树之王的橄榄树，需要一百年的时间。

Five thousand dollars a month doesn't seem attractive to me, but the value I find in the job does.

每月五千美元对我来说并没有吸引力，吸引我的是我在这份工作中发现的价值。

## 15.7 定冠词+形容词作主语时

定冠词the后接形容词作主语，表示一类人或事物时，应视作复数。

Only the educated are free.

只有受过教育的人才是自由的。

The rich are not always happy.

富有的人并不总是幸福的。

When the going gets tough, the tough get going.

道路艰难，唯勇者行。

The dead are only dead when they die in the thoughts of the living.

当死者在生者的心中死去的时候就的确死了。

The good are good in one way.

善良的人其善良都是一样的。

The jealous are troublesome to others, but a torment to themselves.

妒忌者对别人是烦恼，对自己却是折磨。

## 15.8 动名词、不定式、介词短语或从句作主语时

当上述四种成分作主语时，应看作单数。

### 15.8.1 动名词作主语

Setting goals is the first step in achieving success.

确立目标是取得成功的第一步。

Living your purpose requires a resolve to do whatever it takes.

实践目标需要不惜代价的决心。

Being a trustworthy person helps you with other people.

做一个值得信赖的人有助于和别人交往。

Assuming any other person cannot exist without you is arrogant.

认为没有你别人就活不了，这是狂妄自大。

Knowing you're blessed allows you to attain patience, understanding, and joy.

拥有幸福会让你变得耐心，体谅和快乐。

### 15.8.2 不定式作主语

To open a book brings profit.

开卷有益。

To accept good advice from others increases one's own ability.

从他人那里接受好的建议可以增长自己的才干。

To feel that one has a place in life solves half the problem of content.

一个人能在生活中有一席之地的时候就会对生活基本满意了。

### 15.8.3 介词短语作主语

多见于from...to结构。

From words to deeds is a great space.

语言和行动之间有着巨大差距。

From the sublime to the ridiculous is but a step.

从伟大到荒谬仅一步之遥。

### 15.8.4 从句作主语

Whatever you love and trust in this world loves you in return.

在这个世上你所爱和信任的事物也会相应地爱你。

Whether you fail or succeed is up to you.

成与败在乎个人。

As a rule, what is out of sight disturbs men's minds more seriously than what they see.

通常，看不见的东西对人思想的干扰比看得见的东西更严重。

How close parents are to their children has a strong influence on the development of the children's character.

父母和子女的亲密程度对孩子性格的发展有很大影响。

当一个以上动名词、不定式、从句作主语时，如果被看作一个整体概念，可以视为单数；如果被看作不同的事物，则视为复数。

Choosing a goal and sticking to it changes everything.

选定目标并坚持到底能改变一切。

To be what we are, and to become what we are capable of becoming, is the only end of life.

做我们自己，尽自己力量成就自我，是人生唯一的目标。

Saying and doing are two things.

说和做是两回事。

Seeing much, suffering much, and studying much are the three pillars of learning.

多观察，多磨砺，多研究是治学的三大支柱。

## 15.9 or,either...or,neither...nor或not only...but also连接主语时

当主语由这四个词其中之一连接时，往往遵循就近一致原则，即谓语的动词的单复数与最邻近的一个主语保持一致。

The only lack or limitation is in your own mind.

唯一的匮乏或局限在于你自己的思想。

The good or ill of man lies within his own will.

人的善恶在于自己的意志。

What you have or who you are doesn't make you happy or unhappy.

你的所有或者你的地位都不能使你幸福或者不幸。

Either your choices or your character determines your destiny.

选择或者性格决定命运。

Not only hard work but also a good plan contributes to your final success.

促进最终成功的不仅仅是勤奋，而且还有合理的计划。

## 实践演练

I. 判断每句空格处的系动词应为单数还是复数。

1. Bread and butter \_\_\_\_\_their daily food. (is/are)
2. All men are creative, but few \_\_\_\_\_artists. (is/are)
3. Sports \_\_\_\_\_good for health. (is/are)
4. Too much of a good thing \_\_\_\_\_good for nothing. (is/are)
5. A man's best fortune or his worst \_\_\_\_\_his wife. (is/are)
6. There \_\_\_\_\_a vast class of people who are cowardly. (is/are)
7. Toil and hardship \_\_\_\_\_the severe but noble teachers. (is/are)
8. To be poor and independent \_\_\_\_\_very nearly an impossibility. (is/are)
9. The range of experiences people define as watersheds \_\_\_\_\_considerable. (is/are)
10. From words to deeds \_\_\_\_\_a great space. (is/are)

## II. 使用括号中动词的单数或复数形式填空。

1. I, who \_\_\_\_\_(be) your friend, will try my best to help you.
2. The desire of knowledge, like the thirst of riches, \_\_\_\_\_(increase) ever with the acquisition of it.
3. Nine-tenths of the best poetry of the world \_\_\_\_\_(have) been written by poets less than thirty years old.
4. No road of flowers \_\_\_\_\_(lead) to glory.
5. Success or failure \_\_\_\_\_(lie) in conformity to the times.
6. Every man \_\_\_\_\_(have) his weak side.
7. None \_\_\_\_\_(know) the weight of another's burden.
8. Patience, time and effort \_\_\_\_\_(overcome) everything.
9. One pair of ears \_\_\_\_\_(draw) dry a hundred tongues.
10. Cathy is one of the few who \_\_\_\_\_(make) a conscious effort to act as a positive role model.

## III. 从每题的四个选项选择一个最佳答案。

1. Each and every difference \_\_\_\_\_contradiction.  
A. have contained    B. contain  
C. contains    D. will contain
2. The good news \_\_\_\_\_that by identifying and releasing the pattern, you actually learn how to change.  
A. is    B. are    C. have been    D. were
3. More than one war \_\_\_\_\_by a single word.  
A. are kindled    B. has been kindled  
C. kindle    D. were kindled

4. The surroundings in which a child grows up usually \_\_\_\_\_an effect on his development.

A. have B. had C. have had D. has

5. Chaos \_\_\_\_\_the score upon which reality is written.

A. be B. is C. are D. being

6. Ancient times \_\_\_\_\_the youth of the world.

A. was B. were C. would be D. had been

7. Time and tide \_\_\_\_\_for no man.

A. waits B. wait C. is waiting D. has waited

8. There \_\_\_\_\_a lot of difference between say-so and take-a-look.

A. is B. are C. has D. have

9. A doctor, together with two nurses, \_\_\_\_\_sent to a faraway mountain village to help the sick people.

A. have B. have been C. has D. has been

10. Trial and error \_\_\_\_\_the way to success.

A. is B. was C. are D. were

## 第16章 祈使句和疑问句

祈使句是指用于请求、劝告、叮嘱、建议、命令等语言功能的句子。在表达形式上，一般没有主语，动词使用原形，否定形式为do not (don't)或never +动词原形。Let's +动词原形也是祈使句的一种常见表达。

### 16.1 祈使句的肯定表达

Now go for it!

现在就行动！

Cherish your yesterday; dream your tomorrow; but live your today.

珍视昨天；向往明天；但要过好今天。

In order to try your best to play your role in life, please love life deeply.

为了在生活中尽力发挥自己的作用，请深爱生活吧。

Whenever you meet an enemy, conquer him with love.

每当遇见敌人，就用爱去征服他。

### 16.2 祈使句的否定表达

Don't look for heroes; be one.

不要寻找英雄；要做一位英雄。

Never trust a friend who deserts you in need.

绝不要信任在危难中弃你而去的朋友。

Never put off till tomorrow what can be done today.

今天能做的事，不要拖到明天。

有时，not位于动词之后，这种情况主要见于演说辞等。

Ask not what your country can do for you; ask what you can do for your country.

不要问国家能为你做什么；要问你能为国家做什么。

Fear not that your life will come to an end but that it will never have a beginning.

不要担心生活即将结束，而要担心生活从未开始。



## 16.3 使用Let's的祈使句

Let's... 表示“让我们……”。

Let's be frank with each other.

让我们彼此坦诚相待。

How good life is, so let's live a thousand times.

生活多么美好，所以让我们活上一千次吧。

If you and I are worried, let's remember that we can use good work as a medicine.

假如你我忧心忡忡，让我们记住，我们可以利用出色的工作作为医治的良药。

## 16.4 祈使句的特殊表达

有一种祈使句，句中不出现动词，基本表达模式为“副词(或其他状语)+with+名词或代词”，表示语气强烈的命令。该副词或其他状语多表示方向。

On with your clothes!

把衣服穿上！

Away with him!

把他带走！

To prison with him!

把他投入监狱！

Down with your guns!

把枪放下！

## 16.5 祈使句+and的句型

这是一种使用广泛的句型。祈使句形式其实表达的是一个条件或假设，由连词and引出结果，因此该祈使句的功能相当于if从句。

Give me a place to stand, and I will move the world.

给我一个支点，我会撬动整个世界。（相当于If I am given a place to stand, I will move the world.）

Laugh, and the world laughs with you; weep, and you weep alone.

乐时有众人同乐，而哀时唯一人独哀。（相当于If you laugh, the world laughs with you; if you weep, you weep alone.）

Give a man a fish and you feed him for a day. Teach him how to fish and you feed him for a lifetime.

授人以鱼，你只能养活他一天。授人以渔，你可以养活他一生。

(相当于If you give a man a fish, you feed him for a day. If you teach him how to fish, you feed him for a lifetime. )

Give people your trust and hope, and they will do everything they can to keep from letting you down.

给予人们以信任和希望，他们就竭尽所能不辜负你。(相当于If you give people your trust and hope, they will do everything they can to keep from letting you down. )

疑问句是用于提出问题的句子。疑问句有四种类型，分别为一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句和附加疑问句。

## 16.6 一般疑问句

一般疑问句是指可以用yes或no做出回答的句子，因此也可以称为是非疑问句。一般疑问句以助动词、系动词或情态动词开头，当句中没有这三类词时，需在句首添加助动态do (第三人称单数为does，过去时为did)。

Love is a naked child: do you think he has pockets for money?

爱情是赤身的孩子：你认为他有装钱的口袋吗？

Do you accept whatever life hands out without challenging it?

无论生活给予什么，你都接受而不提出质疑吗？

At the end of life, our questions are very simple: Did I live fully? Did I love well?

在生命的尽头，我们的问题很简单：我活得充实吗？我爱得彻底吗？

Is your mental attitude always positive?

你的态度总是积极的吗？

Are you ready to concentrate your attention on the task at hand?

你愿意专注于手头的工作吗？

Can you enjoy your life without paying the price for it?

不为生活付出代价你能享受生活吗？

有时，一般疑问句可以表示请求或建议，不需要做出直接回答。

May I have your attention?

您能听我说吗？

Can't you find something useful to do?

难道你不能找些有用的事情做吗？（意为：You should find something useful to do.）

Can't we give our love another try?

难道我们不能再给爱一次机会吗？（意为：We should give our love another try.）

一般疑问句还可以用作修辞手段，表达作者的观点，不需要做出直接回答。规则为：形式为肯定的问句，实则表达否定意义；而形式为否定的问句，实则表达肯定意义。

If winter comes, can spring be far behind?

冬天来了，春天还会远吗？（意为：If winter comes, spring can't be far behind.）

Don't new opportunities arise even if something is lost?

即使有所失去，难道新的机会没有出现吗？（意为：New opportunities arise even if something is lost.）

Isn't marriage a partnership?

难道婚姻不是一种合作关系吗？（意为：Marriage is a partnership.）

Do I not destroy my enemies when I make them my friends?

难道当我化敌为友时，我没有摧毁敌人吗？（意为：I destroy my enemies when I make them my friends.）

## 16.7 特殊疑问句

特殊疑问句是指以疑问代词或疑问副词开始的问句，其后语序和一般疑问句完全相同，即疑问代词或疑问副词之后是助动词、系动词或者情态动词。

What is the key to being successful?

成功的关键是什么呢？

What could you create using your unique talents?

利用自己独特的天分你能创造什么呢？

How can a person turn failure into success?

一个人怎样才能转败为胜呢？

Why do many of us struggle with work?

为什么我们这么多人工作起来勉为其难呢？

If the pleasure of learning is universal, why are there so many dull, incurious people in the world?

如果学习的快乐是普遍的，为什么世界上还有这么多麻木迟钝、毫无好奇心的人呢？

When can you use anger as a tool?

你什么时候可以把怒火当作工具来利用呢？

Where do I get the resources to implement my plan?

我在何处能得到实施计划所需的资源呢？

Your progress toward success begins with a fundamental question:

Where are you going?

迈向成功的一个基本的问题是：自己在往何处去？

以why开头并且有not的特殊疑问句常表示建议，不需要直接回答。

Why don't you take some time away from your regular routine?

你为什么不时抽出些时间来呢？（意为：You should take some time away from your regular routine.）

这种用法中，经常使用省略结构，即Why not+动词原形。

Why not choose to be excellent in whatever you do?

为什么不争取无论做什么都出色呢？

Why not start right now?

为什么不马上开始呢？

特殊疑问句也可以用作修辞手段，表达说话人的个人观点，而无需直接回答。

How can you gain dignity without honesty?

不诚实尊严何在？（意为：You can't gain dignity without honesty.）

How can you find a new chance if you don't try?

如果不尝试怎么会发现新的机会呢？（意为：You can't find a new chance if you don't try.）

What would life be if we had no courage to attempt anything?

倘若我们没有勇气去尝试任何事情，生活还有什么意义呢？（意为：Life would be nothing if we had no courage to attempt anything.）

As man increases his knowledge of the heavens, why should he fear the unknown on earth?

随着人类对宇宙认识的不断提高，为什么人们还会对地球上的未知事物恐慌呢？（意为：As man increases his knowledge of the heavens, he should not fear the unknown on earth.）

## 16.8 选择疑问句

选择疑问句是指提供两个或两个以上选择的问句，备选事物之间用or连接。

Are you a starter or a finisher?

你是新手还是老手？

Were your major events in your life shocks, opportunities or transitions?

你人生中的重大事件对你来说是震惊，机会还是过渡呢？

Are you working to make others rich or is it the reverse?

你在努力使别人富有吗？还是恰恰相反呢？

Who is going to give in, the problem or you?

谁将屈服，是困难还是你？

What do I really want, a future where I'm always struggling to make ends meet or a lifestyle of joy and fulfillment?

我真正需要的是什麼？是为维持生计而挣扎的未来还是充满快乐和成就的生活方式？

## 16.9 附加疑问句

附加疑问句是指对陈述句涉及的情况进一步提出疑问。附加疑问句由两部分构成，前者为陈述句，后者为问句，中间由逗号隔开。问句基本形式为系动词、助动词或情态动词+主语。当陈述句为肯定表达时，问句用否定形式；当陈述句为否定表达时，问句用肯定形式。正因为如此，附加疑问句也称为反意疑问句。

### 16.9.1 陈述句为肯定表达时，问句用否定形式

You deserve the reward of life after you try, don't you?

努力之后你就应该得到生活的奖赏，不是吗？

It is easy to change your negative attitude, isn't it?

改变消极态度很容易，不是吗？

A good attitude would cause you to really make things happen, wouldn't it?

好的态度能让你真正有所实现，不是吗？

We learned to settle for less, and most of us got just what we settled for, didn't we?

我们学会了不索求太多，因而我们大多数人仅仅得到我们想要的东西，不是吗？

Generally speaking, your purpose in life is to leave this world in better condition than it was when you got here. That sounds reasonable, doesn't it?

一般而言，人生的目标就是让世界比你刚到这里时更美好。这听起来言之有理，不是吗？

### 16.9.2 陈述句为否定表达时，问句用肯定形式

We don't feel safer if we hide from the truth, do we?

回避真理并不能让我们安全，不是吗？

It can't get any worse, can it?

情况糟糕透顶，不是吗？

在口语中，附加疑问句常用right等词代替。

People don't like to be forgotten, right?

人们不愿被人遗忘，是吧？

Time is enough for anybody to achieve success, right?

时间足以让任何人取得成功，是吧？

### 16.9.3 祈使句之后的附加疑问句

祈使句为肯定表达时，问句用will you 或 won't you。

Be a strong man, will you (或won't you)?

做一个强者，好吗？

Believe that you govern your own life, will you (或won't you)?

要相信你主宰自己的命运，好吗？

祈使句为否定表达时，问句用 will you。

Don't waste life in doubts and fears, will you?

不要在迟疑和恐慌中浪费生命，好吗？

Don't add insult to injury, will you?

不要在伤害之外再加以侮辱，行吗？

当前面是由Let's引出的祈使句时，用shall we 进行附加提问。

Let's find ourselves and be ourselves, shall we?

让我们找到自我，保持本色，好吗？

Let's fill our minds with thoughts of peace, courage, health, and hope, shall we?

让我们头脑里充满和平，勇敢，健康和希望，好吗？

当前面是由let's not 引出的祈使句时，常用 all right 进行附加提问。

Let's not desire vain glory, all right?

让我们不要贪图虚名，好吗？

## 实践演练

### I. 将下列陈述句转变为一般疑问句。

1. I praise my paper boy for getting the paper to me on time 365 days a year.
2. We should accept obstacles as challenges.
3. When things go sour, I instinctively label myself a loser.
4. There is a “success personality”—some winning combination of traits that leads almost inevitably to achievement.
5. The work I do leaves me feeling proud and pleased with myself.
6. I have noticed that the things that I dislike doing are the ones that seem to take forever to get done.

### II. 使用所提供的疑问词，将下列句子转变为特殊疑问句。

1. There are so many dull, incurious people in the world. (why)
2. One word of praise can bring such pleasure.(why)
3. We could ensure that our retired years would be happy, and maybe even productive. (how)
4. There are people who are playing minor roles all their lives, and never have the stage of life for their own. (how many)
5. You often question your thoughts, your actions, or your motives. (how often)

### III. 将下列陈述句转变为修辞疑问句。

1. If the world were perfect, we could not enjoy the pleasure and comfort of being successful.
2. It is no use running when you are on the wrong road.
3. I have only one life and it's short enough; I won't waste it on things I don't want most.
4. If you don't stand for something, you win nothing.
5. You get a thorn with every rose, but the roses are sweet.
6. If a man will not be his own friend, he cannot expect that others will.
7. It is really lamentable for human beings to follow suit blindly.
8. If there is no future for our country, we can't look for our individual love and happiness.

#### IV. 将下列陈述句转变为附加疑问句。

1. Most of us take life for granted.
2. You are the boss of your life.
3. All successful people are people of purpose.
4. Every living person has problems.
5. Treasure every moment that you have.
6. It sounds almost childishly simple. But it works!
7. In our life, we have rarely expressed our gratitude to the one who'd lived those years with us.
8. Don't let negative people drag you down.



9. A lot of times we get in our own way.
10. Time flies when you are having fun.
11. Everyone has heard that an idle mind is a devil's workshop.
12. One should be self-reliant and self-dignified.
13. I believe that the rendering of useful service is the common duty of mankind.
14. It is so easy to exist instead of to live.
15. There's no better time to be happy than right now.

V. 将下列英文疑问句翻译成汉语。

1. Will we look up in hope or down in despair?
2. Isn't your life extremely flat with nothing whatever to grumble at?
3. If we can't love ourselves, where will we draw our love for anyone else?
4. Can't it be said that life is actually a harmonious symphony of loss and gain?
5. Don't you know the Special Olympics are filled with people who have accepted their bodies despite obvious handicaps?
6. How come one man goes through life crossing one hurdle after another, accomplishing his goals while another struggles and gets nowhere?
7. Do you see the glass as half-full rather than half empty? Do you keep your eyes upon the doughnut, not upon the hole?

8. How can you say my life is not a success? Have I not for more than sixty years got enough to eat and escaped being eaten?

9. If I, under circumstances like these, could perform this task, can there be, in the whole world, a youth to find an excuse for non-performance?

## VI. 将下列疑问句翻译成英文。

1. 生命是什么？
2. 一个人如何确认未来的梦想呢？
3. 你热爱生命吗？
4. 你为什么不从我的错误中学习呢？
5. 一位教师身上的哪些个人素质是可取的？
6. 成功是现实还是幻想？
7. 难道我不该尽我的能力把我能做到的事情做得更仔细吗？
8. 在谋生中我们把生活丢到哪里去了？
9. 谁更成功一些呢？是不快乐的百万富翁还是过着简单、幸福生活的无名小卒呢？
10. 人的第一责任是什么？答案很简短：保持自我本色。

## VII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. Let us go forward together with our united strength, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. can we B. can't we C. shall we D. shan't we
2. Anyone can start from now and make a brand new start, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. can he B. can't one C. can they D. can't they
3. We need to make personal sacrifices for our family, and those we care about,

\_\_\_\_\_?

A. need we B. needn't we C. do we D. don't we

4. Don't undermine your worth by comparing yourself to others, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. do you B. don't you C. will you D. won't you

5. No human relationship can survive without the oxygen of forgiveness, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. can he B. can't he C. can it D. can't it

6. I believe that truth and justice are fundamental to an enduring social order, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. aren't they B. don't I C. do I believe D. isn't it

7. Each of us is powerful enough to share others' misfortunes, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. isn't he B. aren't they C. aren't we D. aren't you

8. I am what I think I am, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. am I B. am not I C. am I not D. aren't we

9. You seem to be dissatisfied with your present post. I don't think you judged your ability objectively when you applied for it, \_\_\_\_\_you?

A. do B. did C. don't D. didn't

10. Disappointments and tragedies in life will come and go, but happiness never leaves you, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. does it B. doesn't it C. do they D. don't they

11. The man who has respect for others is usually the man who has respect for himself. I think this is a good tip-off to his overall character, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. don't I B. doesn't he C. isn't it D. isn't this

12. I believe that every right implies a responsibility, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. do I B. don't I C. does it D. doesn't it

13. Nothing happens by chance or by means of good or bad luck, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. does it B. doesn't it C. is it D. isn't it

14. I'm very keen of hearing, \_\_\_\_\_I?

A. amn't B. ain't C. aren't D. isn't

15. Everyone should have the courage to say that he is ignorant, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. should everyone B. shouldn't everyone

C. should they D. shouldn't they

## 第17章 定语从句

定语从句是指修饰、限定名词的从句，通常位于被修饰名词之后。从性质上说，定语从句相当于形容词，因此也可称为形容词从句。被定语从句修饰的名词或代词，由于往往位于定语从句之前，称为先行词。用来引导定语从句的词，称为引导词，引导词可以是关系代词或关系副词。引导词有三种功能：其一，引导定语从句的功能；其二，对先行词有指代的功能；其三，在定语从句中作一定的成分。

根据定语从句和先行词的关系程度，定语从句可分为限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句。限制性定语从句与先行词关系紧密，直接决定先行词的性质，在先行词和限制性定语从句之间没有逗号。非限制性定语从句与先行词关系松散，是对先行词的补充说明，不决定先行词的性质；如果没有该从句，先行词仍性质明确，意义清晰；在先行词和非限制性定语从句之间须用逗号隔开。

### 17.1 限制性定语从句

限制性定语从句具有两个特点：在形式上，从句与修饰的名词之间没有标点符号；在意义上，从句不可或缺，否则，被修饰的名词将性质不明，意义不清。

*A soldier who does not want to be a marshal is not a good soldier.*

不想当元帅的士兵不是好士兵。

*A book that is shut is but a block.*

不去翻动的书本不过是一块砖头。

*The man who has no inner life is the slave of his surroundings.*

没有内心生活的人是周围环境的奴隶。

*Don't be afraid of the enemies who attack you. Be afraid of the friends who flatter you.*

攻击你的敌人不可怕，可怕的是奉承你的朋友。

### 17.2 非限制性定语从句

非限制性定语从句也具有两个特点：在形式上，从句与被修饰的名词之间必须用逗号隔开；在意义上，从句只是意义上的进一步补充和说明，并不影响被修饰名词性质的界定。

The youth need to have ambitions and dreams, *which are their privileges*.

青年人需要拥有抱负和梦想，这是他们的特权。

Difficulty is the nurse of greatness, *who roughly rocks her children into strength*.

困难是伟大的养育者，她粗暴地晃动摇篮，让子女长大成人。

If a person has a positive attitude and is a positive thinker, *who likes challenges and difficult situations*, then he has half his success achieved.

如果一个人拥有积极的态度，是一个积极的思考者，喜欢挑战和困境，那么他已经成功了一半。

当定语从句修饰专有名词时，必须用非限制性定语从句。

Trump, *whom many consider successful*, believes that happiness is success.

特鲁普，很多人认为他是成功人士，他认为幸福就是成功。

Unlike IQ, *which changes little after our teen years*, emotional quotient seems to be largely learned.

和智商不同，智商在我们成年后变化不大，情商似乎在很大程度上是后天习得的。

## 17.3 由关系代词引导的定语从句

关系代词包括that, which, who, whom和whose，在定语从句中作主语、宾语、表语或定语。

### 17.3.1 由that引导的定语从句

关系代词that引导修饰事物的定语从句，在从句中可以作主语、宾语或表语。

Passion is any emotion *that moves you*.

拥有愿望是开动成功这台发动机的关键。(that在定语从句中作主语)

If dreams die, life is a broken-winged bird *that cannot fly*.

假如梦想死亡，人生就是断翅的鸟儿不能飞翔。(that在定语从句中作主语)

Be all *that you can be*.

成就自己能力范围内的一切。(that在定语从句中作表语)

关系代词that也可以引导修饰人的定语从句。

The best coach with the strongest power is the coach *that lives within you*.

拥有最强大力量的、最优秀的教练是生活在自己内心深处的教练。  
Everyone needs someone *that he feels really listens to him*.  
每个人都需要真正倾听自己声音的人。

### 17.3.2 由which引导的定语从句

关系代词which只能引导修饰事物的定语从句，在从句中作主语、宾语或表语。

Love is the master key *which opens the gate of happiness*.  
爱是开启幸福之门的万能钥匙。（which 在定语从句中作主语）  
That is a good book *which is opened with expectation and closed with profit*.  
好书使人开卷有所求，闭卷有所获。（which 在定语从句中作主语）  
You must do the thing *which you think you cannot do*.  
你一定要去做自己认为做不到的事情。（which 在定语从句中作宾语）  
I hope the ideals *which you hold as young people*—truth, justice and equality—continue to inspire you in old age.  
我希望你们年轻人所抱有的理念——真理，正义和平等——在老年时继续激励你们。（which 在定语从句中作宾语）

### 17.3.3 由who引导的定语从句

关系代词who引导修饰人的定语从句，在从句中作主语、宾语或表语。

God helps those *who help themselves*.  
自助者，天助之。（who 在定语从句中作主语）  
The world makes way for the man *who knows where he is going*.  
世界让路于方向明确的人。（who 在定语从句中作主语）  
One *who keeps abreast of the times* remains young.  
与时代并驾齐驱者青春常在。（who 在定语从句中作主语）  
Ninety-nine percent of failures come from people *who have the habit of making excuses*.  
百分之九十九的失败者都是习惯于寻找借口的人。（who 在定语从句中作主语）  
It takes courage to grow up and turn out to be the person *who you really are*.  
成长为真正的自己需要勇气。（who 在定语从句中作表语）

### 17.3.4 由whom引导的定语从句

关系代词whom引导修饰人的定语从句，在定语从句中作动词或介词的宾语。在定语从句中，当介词不在引导词之前或引导词不作介词宾语时，whom也可以由who来代替。

He is happiest *of whom the world says least, good or bad.*

世人评论最少的人是最幸福的，不论是褒还是贬。

Do not refuse to help those *with whom you are not familiar.*

不要拒绝帮助你不太熟悉的人。

Do not make friends with those *whom (或who) you do not know well.*

不要和自己不了解的人交朋友。

He had disappointed his investors, *many of whom were his former friends.*

他令投资者大失所望，其中很多人是他以前的朋友。

### 17.3.5 由whose引导的定语从句

关系代词whose在定语从句中作定语，意为“……的”，既可以引导修饰人的定语从句，也可以引导修饰事物的定语从句。

a whose引导修饰人的定语从句

Be a man *whose word is as good as your bond.*

做一个说话可靠的人。

Fortune never helps the man *whose courage fails.*

幸运从不帮助没有勇气的人。

b whose引导修饰事物的定语从句

Success is a journey, *whose initial step is paved with an inner stirring.*

(相当于Success is a journey, *the initial step of which is paved with an inner stirring.*)

成功是一次旅程，第一步是由内心的热情铺就的。

Personality is an inner force, *whose existence functions directly, needing no help of any means.* (相当于Personality is an inner force, *the existence of which functions directly, needing no help of any means.*)

人格是一种内在的力量，其存在直接发挥作用，无需借助于任何手段。

## 17.4 由关系副词引导的定语从句

关系副词包括when, where和why, 在定语从句中分别作时间、地点和原因状语。

### 17.4.1 由when引导的定语从句

There will be moments in life *when you are presented with new options*.  
人生中总会有面对新选择的时刻。

As long as we live, we won't see a time *when everything we do is rewarded justly*.

一生中，我们遇不到我们所做的一切都得到公正报偿的时候。

The moments *when you have really lived* are the moments *when you have done things in a spirit of love*.

真正生活的时刻是以爱的精神做事的时刻。

### 17.4.2 由where引导的定语从句

We live in a world *where instant satisfaction is available*.

我们生活在一个能得到即刻满足的世界。

The dictionary is the only place *where success comes before work*.

只有在字典里，成功才先于工作。

Work is the place *where happiness lies*.

工作是幸福之所在。

### 17.4.3 由why引导的定语从句

关系副词why引导修饰名词reason的定语从句，在从句中作原因状语。

Unsuccessful people can always find reasons *why they're not doing well*.  
不成功的人总能找到自己表现不好的理由。

The reason *why rivers and seas receive the respect of a hundred mountain streams* is that they keep below them.

河流和海洋之所以受到百川的尊敬是因为他们处在百川之下。

Some men have thousands of reasons *why they cannot do what they want to* when all they need is one reason *why they can*.

当只需要一个做事情的理由时，有些人有成千个理由不能做自己想做的事情。

## 17.5 用特殊引导词引导的定语从句

有时，than, as, but也可以引导定语从句。

### 17.5.1 than引导定语从句



当先行词是比较级或先行词由形容词比较级修饰时，用than作关系代词，引导限制性定语从句。

By yielding you get more *than you expected*.

退让一步，你会获得比预想还要多的东西。

Wise people always make more opportunities *than they find*.

聪明的人创造的机会总是比自己发现的机会更多。

Many come through periods of stress with more physical and mental vigor *than they had before*.

经历过压力的人在身体和精神上都比以前更加坚强。

### 17.5.2 as引导定语从句

as可以作关系代词，既可以引导限制性定语从句，也可以引导非限制性定语从句。

#### a 引导限制性定语从句

当主句出现such, as, the same等词时，定语从句往往由as引导，从而构成固定结构。

Take *such measures as the situation calls for*.

按形势所需采取相应对策。

I am *the same person* when I'm in the spotlight *as I am when I'm alone*.

当我处在聚光灯下时和当自己独处时是同一个人。

There are *as good fish in the sea as ever came out of it*.

海里的好鱼取之不尽。

#### b 引导非限制性定语从句

as引导非限制性定语从句时，从句可以置于先行词之前，而且从句经常修饰整个主句的情况。

*As we have noted*, few people are total winners or losers.

正如我们已经指出的，很少有人大获全胜或彻底失败。

*As Eleanor Roosevelt observed*, "No one can hurt you without your consent."

正如埃莉诺·罗斯福所说：“不经你的同意，谁也伤害不了你。”

### 17.5.3 but 引导定语从句

but可以作关系代词，相当于“which...not”或“who...not”。

There is no path *but can be traveled*.

没有不能走的路。(相当于There is no path which cannot be traveled.)

There is no tree *but bears some fruit*.

没有不结果的树木。(相当于There is no tree which does not bear any fruit.)

There is no man *but has his fault*.

不存在没有过错的人。(相当于There is no man who does not have his fault.)

## 17.6 省略引导词的定语从句

有些情况下定语从句的引导词可以省略，这些情况主要有：当引导词在从句中作宾语，且引导词之前没有介词时；当定语从句修饰名词reason时，引导词why可以省略；当定语从句修饰名词way，表示做某事的方式时，引导词可以省略。

### 17.6.1 当引导词在从句中作宾语，且引导词之前没有介词时，引导词可以省略。

Service is the rent *we pay for the privilege of living on this earth*.

我们为他人服务以获得生活在这个世界上的权利。

Liberty is the only thing *you cannot have unless you give it to others*.

自由是唯一不给予别人自己也无法得到的东西。

The greatest thing *a father can do for his children* is to love their mother.

一位父亲能为子女所做的最好的事情就是爱他们的母亲。

### 17.6.2 当定语从句修饰名词reason时，引导词why可以省略。

A lack of planning is the most common reason *we fall short of our dreams and our goals*.

缺乏筹划是我们无法实现梦想和目标最为普遍的原因。

One reason *a person is so effective today* is that he spent some time yesterday planning.

一个人在今天做事得心应手得益于昨天他花时间做了计划。

The number one reason *leaders are unsuccessful* is their inability to lead themselves.

领导者不成功的首要原因是不能领导自己。

### 17.6.3 当定语从句修饰名词way，表示做某事的方式时，引导词可以省略。

Values are the way *people actually do things*.

价值观是人们实际做事情的方式。

Everything depends upon the way *we look at it*.

一切事物都取决于我们看待他们的方式。

A great man shows his greatness by the way *he treats little men*.

伟大人物通过对待小人物的方式表现其伟大之处。

## 17.7 引导词之前带介词的定语从句

引导词之前如果带介词，可能出于以下三种情况之一：一、由于先行词的要求；二、由于从句中某个词的要求；三、出于语义表达的需要。一般情况下，介词也可以置于从句末尾。

### 17.7.1 由于先行词的要求，引导词之前带介词。

Each of us has a purpose *for which we were created*.

我们每个人生于世上都有其意义。

We are aware of the extent *to which a positive attitude contributes to success*.

我们知道积极的态度在多大程度上促进成功。

Competition is the means *by which other basic values such as individual freedom, equality of opportunity, and hard work are protected*.

竞争是个性自由、机会平等和勤奋努力等其他基本价值观念得以保护的方式。

### 17.7.2 由于从句中某个词的要求，引导词之前带介词。

There are faults *from which none of us is free*.

有些错误是我们任何人也避免不了的。（from的使用由形容词free要求）

Experience is a school *from which you can never graduate*.

经验是一所你永远毕不了业的学校。（from的使用由动词graduate要求）

A man can succeed at almost anything *for which he has unlimited enthusiasm*.

一个人能够在自己具有无限热情的几乎任何事情上取得成功。（for的使用由名词enthusiasm要求）

A genius is a man who does unique things *of which nobody would expect him to be capable*.

天才是指这个人做的事情独一无二，而且没有人料到他有能力做到。（of的使用由形容词capable要求）

### 17.7.3 出于语义表达的需要，引导词之前带介词。

Knowledge is the wings *with which we fly to the heavens*.  
知识是我们借以飞上天堂的翅膀。

Kindness is the golden chain *by which society is bound together*.  
友好是社会得以紧密联系的金链。

Eventually he attained the goals *for which he had fought all his life*.  
最终他实现了自己为之奋斗了一生的目标。

Those who believe in our ability create for us an atmosphere *in which it becomes easier to succeed*.

信赖我们能力的人为我们创造了更容易成功的氛围。

Reflect on your present blessings, *of which every man has many*, not on your past misfortunes, *of which all men have some*.

回味当前的幸福，当前的幸福每个人都有许多，不要沉浸于往日的不幸，往日的不幸每个人都有一些。

## 17.8 常用that引导的定语从句

关系代词that和which在很多情况下用法相同，但有些时候，使用that的频率远高于which。

### 17.8.1 当先行词为something, everything, anything, nothing, all, much, many, some, any, few, little, none等不定代词时，定语从句引导词多为that。

To take responsibility for your character is something *that you need to do in order to become a person of influence*.

要成为有影响力的人物，就要为自己的品格负责。

There's no way we can know in advance anything *that's going to happen*.

我们无法事先知道即将发生的任何事情。

All *that glitters* is not gold.

闪闪发光物，未必尽黄金。

Any mountain *that would deter less determined people* did not stop the explorers crossing the unknown country.

任何令意志不坚者望而却步的大山也阻止不了探索者穿越未知领域。

Although one knows people around the world, there are few *that are close friends*.

相识满天下，知己无几人。

### 17.8.2 当先行词由only, first, last等词修饰时，定语从句引导词多为that。

To face fear is the only method *that really works*.

去面对恐惧是唯一真正行之有效的方法。

The only money *that my father left me* was a dollar, but he passed on his values to me.

父亲留给我的钱只有一美元，但他把自己的价值观传给了我。

The bee is not the only insect *that visits the rose* but it is the only one *that carries honey away*.

蜜蜂不是唯一访问过玫瑰的昆虫，但却是唯一带走花蜜的。

Attitude is the first quality *that marks the successful man*.

态度是成功人士的首要特征。

### 17.8.3 当先行词由形容词最高级修饰时或者是形容词最高级时，定语从句引导词多为that。

The present moment is the best gift *that you can give yourself*.

当前的时光是你能给自己的最好礼物。

The roots of true achievement lie in the will to become the best *that you can become*.

真正的成就其根源在于尽其所能的意志。

What is the worst *that could possibly happen*?

可能发生的最坏情况又将如何呢？

## 17.9 必须用which，而不能用that引导的定语从句

当定语从句修饰事物时，在有些情况下，引导词只能用which，而不能用that。

### 17.9.1 当引导词之前伴有介词时，引导词只能用which。

Behavior is a mirror *in which everyone shows his image*.

行为是反映每个人形象的一面镜子。

*A failure is something from which we intend to learn.*

我们希望从失败中学到东西。

*Knowledge is a city, to the building of which every human being brought a stone.*

知识是一座城市，每个人都曾添砖加瓦。

### 17.9.2 当定语从句为非限制性定语从句时，引导词只能用 which。

*You have to love what you do, which means you need to know yourself pretty well.*

你必须热爱自己所做的事情，这意味着你需要很好地了解自己。

*A man should never be ashamed to own he has been in the wrong, which is but saying, in other words, that he is wiser today than he was yesterday.*

一个人不应该耻于承认自己错了，这不过表明，换言之，他今天比昨天变得更明智了。

*One may go wrong in many different ways, but right only in one, which is why it is easy to fail and difficult to succeed.*

一个人犯错的方式或许有很多，但是做对的方式只有一种，这就是为什么失败容易成功难。

### 17.9.3 当先行词是that时，为避免重复，定语从句由which引导。

*Doing that which you excel at is a major ingredient for future success.*

从事自己的一技之长是将来成功的一个重要因素。（that which 的组合相当于what）

*That which is striking and beautiful is not always good, but that which is good is always beautiful.*

出众、美丽的事物并非都是好的，但好的事物总是美丽的。

*The real reading is that which makes readers who have no problems become doubtful and readers who have problems become clear.*

真正的阅读让读书无疑问者产生疑问，使读书有疑问者消除疑问。

## 17.10 定语从句与先行词的分隔

有时，定语从句并没有紧跟先行词之后，而是置于句尾，中间被其他词隔开，造成定语从句与先行词的分隔。这样做往往因为定语从句较长，而先行词为主语，且谓语部分较短，为了保持句式平衡，避免头重脚轻，形成主句在前，从句在后的情况。

They conquer *who believe they can*.

相信自己能胜利的人可以取得胜利。

No man fails *who does his best*.

竭尽所能的人不会失败。

He laughs best *who laughs last*.

谁笑在最后，谁笑得最好。

He has the right to criticize *who has the heart to help*.

有心相助者有权提出批评。

### 17.11 两个或多个定语从句同时修饰一个先行词

有时出于表达的需要，一个名词或代词由两个或多个定语从句修饰。两个定语从句之间用连词联接；如果第一个定语从句较短，也可不用连词；如果三个甚至更多定语从句修饰同一个词，要在最后一个定语从句之前用连词联接。

By definition, anything you do *that requires energy* is work.

从定义上讲，你所做的需要投入努力的任何事情都是工作。

To live remains an art *which everyone must learn, and which no one can teach*.

生活是每个人都必须学会，却没有人能教会的一门艺术。

People *who have a great deal of self-respect and who believe that they have significance* are usually respected by others.

自尊心很强并且相信自己重要的人通常受他人的尊重。

A leader is one *who sees more than others, who sees farther than others, and who sees before others do*.

领导者比别人看得多，比别人看得远，在别人行动之前先有所预见。

### 17.12 引导词which既带介词，又修饰名词的定语从句

这是一种特殊的定语从句。引导词which之前带介词，之后修饰名词，这一名词的加入完全是为了表达得更明确。常见的搭配包括：at which point (在这时)，at which time (在这时)，by which time (到这时为止)，during which time (在此期间)，for which reason (由于这个原因)，in which case (在这种情况下)等。

One often doesn't know how to seize opportunities until they are actually needed, *at which point it may be too late.*

一个人往往到了真正需要机会的时候才知道去抓住机会，在此时或许为时已晚。

Mozart was an exceptional musician. He gave his first performance at the age of five, *by which time he had already begun to compose music.*

莫扎特是一位杰出的音乐家。他在五岁时进行了第一次演出，那时他已经开始作曲。

Your leadership potential is evident but needs further development, *for which reason we have selected you for management training.*

你的领导潜质显而易见，但需要进一步的发展，因此我们已选中你参加管理培训。

Tough challenges may well present some difficulties, *in which case listen to what your colleagues can contribute to the solution.*

严峻的挑战很可能构成一些困难，在这种情况下要听取同事对解决问题的意见。

## 17.13 定语从句与同位语从句的差异

定语从句与同位语从句都是修饰名词的从句，其差别主要体现在两个方面：一，从句与被修饰名词的关系不同。定语从句相当于形容词，表明被修饰名词的性质状况；而同位语从句相当于名词，解释被修饰名词的内容。二，从句引导词和主句的关系不同。定语从句引导词与主句关系密切，引导词指代被修饰名词；而同位语从句引导词与主句不存在直接关系，引导词并不指代被修饰名词。试比较：

A stone *that is fit for a wall* is not left on the highway.

砌墙之石不会弃之于大路。（定语从句）

Failure is a sign *that you should explore other opportunities.*

失败是一个迹象，表明你应该去探寻其他机会。（同位语从句）

Business is a very complex machine, *all of whose components are people.*



事业是一台非常复杂的机器，其所有组成部件都是人。（定语从句）

Let me assert my firm belief *that the only thing we have to fear is fear itself.*

让我表明自己坚定的观点：我们唯一需要恐惧的就是恐惧本身。  
（同位语从句）

## 实践演练

I. 找出每句中的定语从句部分，用下划线标示，并注意体会其用法。

1. The courage we desire and prize is not the courage to die decently, but to live manfully.
2. Only that which is honestly got is gain.
3. The ideals which have lighted my way, and time after time have given me new courage to face life cheerfully have been kindness, beauty and truth.
4. There is no ill but may turn to one's good.
5. Young men who have reason to fear that they will be killed in battle may justifiably feel bitter in the thought that they have been cheated of the best things that life has to offer.
6. You need to remember that you will only be faced with lessons that you are capable of learning and are specific to your own growth.
7. Suddenly, words I'd heard my mother repeat hundreds of times as I was growing up held new meaning. "Stand up straight! Lift yourself by pretending strings are pulling you from the tops of your ears."
8. The young man who thinks there is nothing important to be done is pretty sure to do nothing important.
9. Anything that makes you forget what time it is can become the key to your life make-over.
10. The world is round and the place which may seem like the end may also be only the beginning.

II. 指出下列各句中的定语从句分别具体修饰什么。

1. Goods are theirs that enjoy them.
2. Never leave that till tomorrow which you can do today.

3. He was careful to take advantage of all opportunities for improvement which came in his way.
4. There is a space between man's imagination and man's attainment that may only be traversed by his longing.
5. The dogmatists call those weak who choose the harder, the more rigorous way.
6. The action is the best that secures the greatest happiness for the greatest number.
7. A philosopher once wanted to know whether he was alive or not, which is a good question for everyone to put to himself occasionally.
8. Reading is like pleasure of the mind, which means that your eagerness, knowledge and quickness make you a good reader.

### III. 判断下列句中定语从句的引导词是否可以省略。

1. Science is a little bit like the air which you breathe—it is everywhere.
2. Action is the food and drink which will nourish my success.
3. The best part of every man's education is that which he gives to himself.
4. A blossom full of promise is life's joy that never comes to fruit.
5. I like the teacher who does not just give me something to drink but makes me feel thirsty.
6. Negative motivation brings the desire to take the easier way which ends up being the tougher way.

### IV. 改正下列定语从句的引导词。

1. Agatha Christie's world is not quite a real world, that is one of the reasons why her books have not become dated.
2. Sir Winston Churchill was British Prime Minister from 1940 to 1945, during that time he played a decisive role in the conduct of the Second World War.
3. A complete poem is one that an emotion has found its thoughts and the thought has found the words.
4. The second kind of love is mutual love in that the one who loves not only desires the happiness of his beloved, but has an eye to his own happiness also.
5. The direction which education starts a man will determine his future life.
6. All ought to refrain from marriage which cannot avoid abject poverty for their children.

V. 将每组的两个或多个句子合并为一句话，其中一句作为主句，其余作为定语从句。

1. Encouragement and confidence are priceless gifts. Encouragement and confidence can help change a person's life.
2. Time is powerless against truth. The tooth of time gnaws away everything else.
3. Life is not a spelling bee. In the spelling bee no matter how many words you've gotten right, you're disqualified if you make one mistake.
4. There is something inside each of us. Something fuels our motivation, our passion, and our reason to succeed.
5. Happiness is a perfume. You cannot pour a perfume on others without getting a few drops on yourself.
6. True friendship is like health. The value of health is seldom known until it is lost.
7. To achieve a happier life, it's necessary to overcome some stumbling blocks. Three of the stumbling blocks are: comparison with others, images of perfection, and "Missing Tile" syndrome.

VI. 在定语从句前的空格处填入恰当的引导词。

1. Start in an area \_\_\_\_\_ you know you can succeed.
2. No man is born into the world \_\_\_\_\_ work is not born with him.
3. All is not gold \_\_\_\_\_ glitters.
4. Only he is free \_\_\_\_\_ cultivates his own thoughts.
5. There is a saying among farmers: "There is no better fertilizer than a farmer's footprints." To me this means that \_\_\_\_\_ is planted must be revisited often.
6. Our goal is to win more games \_\_\_\_\_ we lose.
7. What do successful people have \_\_\_\_\_ lifts them above the ordinary?

8. Writing is the only profession \_\_\_\_\_no one considers you ridiculous if you earn no money.
9. Among those \_\_\_\_\_I love, I can find a common denominator: all of them make me laugh.
10. \_\_\_\_\_the global expansion of Indian and Chinese restaurants suggests, xenophobia is directed against foreign people, not foreign cultural imports.

VII. 下列句中各定语从句的引导词which之前须有介词。根据句义，在每个空白处填入恰当的介词。

1. A book is an intellect \_\_\_\_\_which one still listens.
2. When one thinks of the speed \_\_\_\_\_which spiteful remarks are conveyed, it seems a pity that there isn't more effort to relay pleasing and flattering comments.
3. I give away the books \_\_\_\_\_which I have two copies and the ones I've never read. But the ones I've marked up cannot circulate.
4. Teaching is a job \_\_\_\_\_which one will never be perfect.
5. Remember things \_\_\_\_\_which you have been complimented.
6. Better keep yourself clean and bright; you are the window \_\_\_\_\_which you must see the world.
7. Most people fancy themselves innocent of those crimes \_\_\_\_\_which they cannot be convicted.
8. Fame is so sweet that we love anything \_\_\_\_\_which we connect it, even death.
9. Time is the means \_\_\_\_\_which we nurture friendship.
10. A work of art must contain the essential criticism of the morality \_\_\_\_\_which it adheres.

VIII. 将下列各句中划线部分转换成定语从句。

1. Before you marry, be sure of a house wherein to live.
2. Forgiveness is a way of declaring our integrity.
3. Impossible is a word only to be found in the dictionary of fools.

4. Happiness is largely under our control. It is a battle to be waged and not a feeling to be awaited.

5. The adversities coming along to bury us usually have within them the very real potential to benefit us.

#### IX. 将下列句子中的定语从句部分转换为形容词性短语。

1. Truth speaks in a language that is simple and direct.

2. Having a positive attitude made all the difference in the way I perceived the future.

3. Health is the thing that makes you feel that now is the best time of the year.

4. Discussion is the anvil upon which the spark of truth is struck.

5. If we habitually read books that are elevating in tone, pure in style, sound in reasoning, and keen in insight, our minds develop the same characteristics.

#### X. 将下列带有定语从句的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. Love is not a single act, but a climate in which we live.

2. Knowledge is the wing wherewith we fly to heaven.

3. The people who get on in this world are the people who get up and look for circumstances they want.

4. The world is a comedy to those who think and a tragedy to those who feel.

5. His best teachers were the boys with whom he played, the men amongst whom he worked, the friends and relatives with whom he lived.

6. The lover of nature is he whose inward and outward senses still adjust to each other, who has retained the spirit of infancy even into the era of manhood.

7. He is a wise man who does not grieve for the things which he has not, but rejoices for those which he has.

8. The difficulties which he encountered and successfully overcame in carrying out his project are thus described by him.

#### XI. 将下列汉语句子翻译成带有定语从句的英文。

1. 双手是理想高飞的翅膀。

2. 正义就像几乎总是晚点的火车。

3. 在有些情况中，语言可以给人造成打击。

4. 一个人的礼貌是一面镜子，照出他自己的形象。

5. 一本好书是我们最好的一位朋友，永远不会背弃我们。

6. 能够促成一个人成功的因素有很多。

7. 你需要一种自我欣赏的感觉，这会给你带来自信。

8. 对于惧怕危险的人来说，这个世界永远存在危险。

#### XII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. They were the Boy Scouts \_\_\_\_\_ to help elderly people cross the street.

A. whose was the task B. to whom it was the task

C. it was whose task D. whose task it was

2. Whenever I met him, \_\_\_\_\_ was fairly often, I like his sweet and hopeful smile.

A. what B. which C. that D. when

3. He won the first prize in the competition, \_\_\_\_\_made his parents very happy.

A. which B. as C. that D. it

4. It is labor in vain to dispute with a man unless somebody is in company \_  
\_\_\_\_\_judgment you will both submit.

A. whose B. who C. to whose D. to whom

5. There is no more miserable human being than one \_\_\_\_\_nothing is habitual but indecision.

A. who B. whose C. in whom D. on whom

6. \_\_\_\_\_is well-known to all, too much stress can cause disease.

A. Which B. It C. That D. As

7. He's the man \_\_\_\_\_I supposed was capable of doing the job.

A. who B. to whom C. of whom D. whose

8. Actually a marriage \_\_\_\_\_no quarreling at all takes place may well be one that is dead or dying from emotional undernourishment.

A. about which B. in which C. of which D. with which

9. The deals that work are the deals \_\_\_\_\_each party thinks that they won —“win-win contracts” they are sometimes called.

A. that B. which C. when D. where

10. The world is a great book, \_\_\_\_\_they who never stir from home read only a page.

A. which B. for which C. in which D. of which

11. Our friends are expected to assume the burden of their own defense, \_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_they are competent to do.

A. which we are certain B. of which we are sure

C. that we are certain of D. for which we are sure

12. With Miss Sullivan's patience and tenderness, little Helen, \_\_\_\_\_  
people all thought would not have lived for long, overcame her deafness and blindness, and became a great writer.

A. which B. whom C. who D. as

13. I have never taken anything \_\_\_\_\_didn't belong to me.

A. what B. who C. that D. it

## 第18章 状语从句

状语从句是行使状语功能的从句，因为其作用相当于副词，也可以称为副词从句。按照意义，状语从句可以分为九种类型，分别是：时间状语从句、条件状语从句、地点状语从句、原因状语从句、目的状语从句、结果状语从句、方式状语从句、让步状语从句和比较状语从句。

### 18.1 时间状语从句

该从句表示时间，作时间状语，引导词较多，包括when, whenever, while, as, before, after, since, once, till或until, as soon as, the moment (或the minute, the second, the instant), every time (或each time, each moment等), anytime, the first time, the next time, by the time等。

#### 18.1.1 由when引导的时间状语从句

when表示“当……的时候”。

All appears to change *when we change*.

当我们有了改变，一切似乎都会发生改变。

Your candle loses nothing *when it lights another*.

当点亮另一盏蜡烛时，你自己的蜡烛并没有失去什么。

*When pleasure is the business of life*, it ceases to be pleasure.

当享受成为生活的要务时，就不再是享受了。

*When an opportunity is neglected*, it never comes back to you.

机不可失，失不再来。

#### 18.1.2 由whenever引导的时间状语从句

whenever表示“每当”，“无论什么时候”。

*Whenever you have an aim*, you must sacrifice something of freedom to attain it.

每当有了目标，你必须牺牲一定的自由去达到目标。

*Whenever I shouted in anger*, angry voices would respond.

每当我愤怒地大喊大叫时，回应我的也是愤怒的声音。

*Whenever you are sincerely pleased* you are nourished.

每当真心愉悦的时候，你就获得了身心的营养。

Forgive others *whenever you can*.



得饶人处且饶人。

### 18.1.3 由while引导的时间状语从句

while表示“与……同时”，表明从句和主句的动作同时发生或进行。

Strike *while the iron is hot*.

趁热打铁。

Act *while others are dreaming*.

在别人做梦的时候就行动吧。

The tortoise wins the race *while the hare is sleeping*.

正当兔子熟睡之机，乌龟赢得了比赛。

No man can be fully free *while his neighbor is not*.

当邻居没有自由的时候，没有谁是完全自由的。

### 18.1.4 由as引导的时间状语从句

as表示“当……的时候”，“与……同时”，“随着”。

*As the wind blows*, you must set your sail.

挂帆须随风向。

What we do makes the difference *as we live each day*.

我们生活的每一天所做的事情都是重要的。

*As a young man's anger increases*, the quality of his work decreases.

年轻人怒气渐盛的同时，其工作质量则随之下降。

*As you proceed through life*, don't lose sight of your need to keep growing and improve yourself.

在生活的过程中，不要忽视自己的成长和提高。

### 18.1.5 由before引导的时间状语从句

before表示“在……之前”。

Do what you should do *before you do what you want to do*.

在你做希望做的事情之前首先要去做应该做的事情。

Don't count your chickens *before they're hatched*.

蛋被孵化前不要数小鸡。（意即不要指望太早）

*Before we drink much at a brook*, it is well to know its source.

溪畔畅饮前，最好知其源。

### 18.1.6 由after引导的时间状语从句

after表示“在……之后”。

*After they won the game*, they tried even harder to practise.

在他们赢得比赛之后，他们更加努力地训练。

*After you reach a certain point, money becomes unimportant. What matters is success.*

在你达到某个阶段之后，金钱就变得无足轻重。重要的是成功。

### 18.1.7 由since引导的时间状语从句

since表示“自从……以来”。

Man has to fight for a better life *since he comes to the world.*

人自从来到世上，就必须为了更好的生活而奋斗。

He has made much progress in his studies *since he set a goal.*

自从确立目标以来，他在学习上已经取得了很大进步。

### 18.1.8 由once引导的时间状语从句

once表示“一旦”，“从某事发生的那一刻起”。

*Once you have truly learned from the past, it is easier to enjoy the present.*

一旦真正地从过去学到了东西，就更容易享受现在的时刻。

*Once we have enough to pay for life's basics such as food and a roof over our heads, more money adds little to our happiness.*

一旦我们有足够的钱满足生活的基本需求，比如食物和住房，更多的钱几乎不会增加我们的幸福。

### 18.1.9 由till或until引导的时间状语从句

till和until意义相同，表示“直到……为止”。两个词的区别在于，till不能用于句首。

*I will persist until I succeed.*

我要坚持不懈，直到成功。

*We must work through the difficulties until we find an answer.*

我们必须克服各种困难，直到找出解决办法。

till和until经常用于否定句，表示“直到……时候才……”。

*A man is not old until regrets take the place of dreams.*

直到悔恨代替了梦想，一个人才衰老。

*Until all is over one's ambition never dies.*

雄心壮志，至死方休。

*We never know the love of our parents until we become parents ourselves.*

不养儿不知父母恩。

We are not grateful for what we have *until we lose it*; we are not conscious of health *until we are ill*.  
失去方知难得，病时倍思健康。

#### 18.1.10 由as soon as引导的时间状语从句

as soon as 表示“一……就”。

I will always raise my goals *as soon as they are attained*.

一旦目标达到，我总是会设定更高的目标。

*As soon as I saw I was going the wrong way*, I would turn around and change my direction.

一旦看到自己走错了路，我就会转身改变方向。

18.1.11 由the moment (或the minute, the second, the instant)引导的时间状语从句这四个词可以作连词，表示“一……就”，义同as soon as。

The achievement of your goal is assured *the moment you devote yourself to it*.

从你致力于自己的目标开始，实现目标就得到了保证。

People begin to become successful *the minute they decide to be*.

下定决心之时便是走向成功之日。

*The second Martin Luther King stopped speaking*, the crowd immediately roared its approval for his message of hope and freedom.

马丁·路德·金一讲完，人群立刻欢呼起来，对他关于希望和自由的演说表示赞同。

18.1.12 由every time (或each time, each moment等)引导的时间状语从句

every time, each time和each moment表示“每当”，“每次”。

*Every time you help somebody else*, you help yourself.

每次帮助别人，也是帮助自己。

*Every time I close the door on reality*, it comes in through the window.

每当我闭门不接纳现实，现实都从窗口进来。

*Every time you are honest*, a success force will drive you toward greater success.

每当你诚实的时候，一种成功的力量会推动你取得更大成功。

### 18.1.13 由anytime引导的时间状语从句

anytime表示“无论在何时”，“每当”。

*Anytime you compromise your honesty, you do yourself damage.*

无论什么时候放弃诚信，都有损于自身。

*Anytime you want to connect with another person, start where both of you agree.*

每当你希望与他人交往时，从两人一致之处开始。

*Anytime you are unhappy in the present, it is time to learn from the past or plan for the future.*

每当自己对现状不满意时，就应该借鉴过去或者筹划未来。

### 18.1.14 由the first time引导的时间状语从句

the first time表示“第一次”。

*The first time he tried to make a public speech, he was laughed off the stage, but he had a dream of being a notable speaker.*

当他第一次尝试发表公开演讲时，被笑声轰下了台，但他仍然怀有一个梦想，要成为一位著名演说家。

### 18.1.15 由the next time引导的时间状语从句

the next time表示“下一次”。

*The next time you are about to enter into a personal relationship with people you don't know very well, do your homework first.*

下次要与自己不熟悉的人建立私人关系时，首先做好准备。

### 18.1.16 由by the time引导的时间状语从句

by the time表示“到……时候为止”。

*By the time I graduated, I thought there were two keys to success in any job: hard work and technical skills.*

到我毕业的时候，我认为任何工作的成功都有两个关键：勤奋和专业技能。

*By the time he removed himself from the world of commerce, the inspiring story of Hafid's rise from a lowly camel boy to his mighty position of power and wealth had spread throughout the civilized world.*

到哈菲德离开商界的时候，他从一个卑贱的骆驼仔崛起而达到权力和财富的显赫地位，这个激励人心的故事已传遍整个文明世界。

## 18.2 条件状语从句

该从句表示条件，作条件状语，引导词包括if, unless, suppose(或supposing), assuming, provided(或providing), in case, as long as(或so long as)等。

### 18.2.1 由if引导的条件状语从句

if表示“如果”。

*If we can change our thoughts, we can change the world.*

假如我们能够改变自己的思维，我们就能改变世界。

*If you have the will to win, you have achieved half your success.*

如果拥有取胜的意志，你已经成功了一半。

*If we do not plant knowledge when young, it will give us no shade when we are old.*

学识可使老年时舒适地退隐和有所寄托；但如果年轻时不使它扎下根，老年时就得不到它的庇护。

*All our dreams can come true if we have the courage to pursue them.*

如果我们有勇气去追求，我们的一切梦想就都能实现。

if常和only一起使用，表示“只要”，only既可以出现在if之前，也可位于if之后。

*You win only if you aren't afraid to lose.*

只要不怕输就会胜出。

*The Almighty has given men arms long enough to reach the stars if only they would put them out.*

万能的造物主赋予人类足以够到星辰的长臂，只要人类愿意伸出臂膀。

### 18.2.2 由unless引导的条件状语从句

unless表示“除非”、“如果不”。

*No one becomes rich unless he enriches another.*

如果没有让他人变得富有，一个人就不会富有。

*All dreams are of no value unless they are followed by action.*

如果不付诸行动，一切梦想都毫无价值。

*Unless you give yourself to some great cause, you haven't even begun to live.*

除非投身于某项伟大事业，否则你还未真正开始生活。

We ought not to look back *unless it is to derive useful lessons from past errors and profit from experience.*

我们不应往后看，除非从以往的错误中汲取有用的教训，并从经验中受益。

### 18.2.3 由suppose(或supposing)引导的条件状语从句

suppose(或supposing)表示“假如”，和if同义。

*Suppose you make some mistakes, it's not the end of the world. "Whoever never made a mistake never made anything worthwhile."*

假如你犯了一些错误，这并不意味着世界末日。“从来没有犯过错误的人永远不会做出任何重要的事情。”

### 18.2.4 由assuming引导的条件状语从句

assuming表示“假如”，和if同义；assuming后面可以有that。

*You have brains, talent and a brilliant set of teachers so, assuming you are willing to work hard, I see a great future waiting for you all.*

你们有头脑、才华和一批优秀的教师，所以，假如你们愿意努力学习，光明的未来在等候着大家。

### 18.2.5 由provided(或providing)引导的条件状语从句

provided(或providing)表示“假如”，和if同义；其后可以有that。

*We can do whatever we wish to do provided (that) our wish is strong.*

如果我们的愿望很强，我们就能做任何自己希望做的事情。

*I can grow beyond any task assigned to me, providing (that) I never forget that I am born to victory.*

假如我没有忘记自己生而为赢，就能超越任何指派给我的任务。

### 18.2.6 由in case引导的条件状语从句

in case表示“假如”。

*In case you fail, don't be discouraged. Keep trying.*

假如你失败了，不要气馁。要继续努力。

*In case you're thinking you can count on luck, I'll tell you that you're very likely to fail.*

如果你认为可以靠运气，那么我要告诉你的是你很可能会失败。

### 18.2.7 由as long as (或so long as)引导的条件状语从句

as long as (或so long as)表示“只要”。

*As long as the world lasts, there will be mistakes.*

只要世界延续，就会有错误。

*So long as there is breath in me, I will persist.*

只要一息尚存，我就要坚持。

*A man is not old as long as he is seeking something.*

只要有所追求一个人就不会衰老。

*As long as you are on this earth, there will always be new adventures to take.*

只要生活在世上，总会有新的冒险。

*Spring belongs to everyone as long as he can bear the cold winter.*

只要耐得住寒冬，春天属于每个人。

*So long as we believe in ourselves, limits will be broken through, and life will become splendid.*

只要我们相信自己，极限将被突破，人生终将辉煌。

## 18.3 地点状语从句

该从句表示地点，作地点状语，引导词包括where, wherever(或no matter where), everywhere, anywhere等。

### 18.3.1 由where引导的地点状语从句

where表示“在……地方”、“到……地方”。

*Where there is a will, there is a way.*

有志者，事竟成。

*Pleasure is very seldom found where it is sought.*

快乐可遇不可求。

*Your liberty to swing your arms ends where my nose begins.*

你有挥舞手臂的自由，但这自由必须止于我的鼻端。

### 18.3.2 由wherever(或no matter where)引导的地点状语从句

wherever(或no matter where)表示“无论在哪里”、“无论到哪里”。

*Wherever you go, always bring your own sunshine.*

不论去哪里，总要带上自己的阳光。

*You can pursue your dream no matter where you are today.*

不论今天在哪里，你都可以追寻自己的梦想。

### 18.3.3 由everywhere引导的地点状语从句

everywhere表示“无论在哪里”、“无论去哪里”。

*Everywhere you go, you can find friends.*

无论你走到哪里，都能找到朋友。

### 18.3.4 由anywhere引导的地点状语从句

anywhere表示“无论在哪里”、“无论去哪里”。

*We must pick out what is good for us anywhere we can find it.*

只要是对我们有利的东西，无论在哪里，我们都要把它找出来。

## 18.4 原因状语从句

该从句表示原因，作原因状语，引导词包括because, as, since, for, now that, considering(that), in that等。

### 18.4.1 由because引导的原因状语从句

because表示“因为”，语气很强；回答以why开头的问题，只能用because。

*People with goals succeed because they know where they are going.*

有目标的人会取得成功，因为他们方向明确。

*People are lonely because they build walls instead of bridges.*

人们孤独是因为他们建造壁垒而不是桥梁。

*They finally won because they refused to become discouraged by their defeat.*

他们最终胜出是因为他们没有因失败而沮丧。

*Many people avoid looking at the past, because they do not want to be troubled by it.*

许多人避免回顾过去，因为他们不希望被过去困扰。

*Because I plan my life ahead, I can always get what I want.*

因为我事先对人生有所筹划，所以我总能如愿地达到目标。

*I am not disappointed, because every time I leave the vain attempt behind me, I make a step forward.*

我并不灰心，因为每次我将失败的尝试抛于脑后，我都向前迈出了一步。

### 18.4.2 由as引导的原因状语从句



as表示“因为”。

She was quiet for a few moments, *as she thought of what she had just heard.*

她沉默了一会儿，因为她在思考刚才听到的话。

He tried his best not to let his anger show *as it was not welcomed at work.*

他竭力不让怒火有所表露，因为在工作中发火是不受欢迎的。

### 18.4.3 由since引导的原因状语从句

since表示“因为”、“既然”。

I will seek to balance career and family *since both are important to me.*

由于事业和家庭对我都重要，我要努力在两者之间取得平衡。

*Since we are mortals*, friendships are best kept to a moderate level.

既然我们都是凡人，友谊最好保持在适度的水平。

### 18.4.4 由for引导的原因状语从句

for表示“因为”；较为正式，但语气最弱。

Our critics are our friends, *for they show us our faults.*

我们的批评者是我们的朋友，因为他们指出了我们的缺点。

Health is above wealth, *for the latter can't give so much happiness as the former.*

健康比财富重要，因为后者带来的幸福不及前者。

Where there are industrious persons, there is wealth, *for the hand of the diligent makes riches.*

哪里有勤奋的人，哪里就有财富，因为勤奋者之手创造财富。

for有时位于句首，提供对上文的因果解释。

Each day is a new life. Seize it. *For in today already walks tomorrow.*

每天都是一种新的生活。抓住它。因为明天始于今日。

### 18.4.5 由now that引导的原因状语从句

now that表示“既然”；不同于since之处在于now that引出的必须是一个新的情况，而since则没有这个要求。

When I was young, I admired clever people. *Now that I am old*, I admire kind people.

年少时我羡慕聪明之人。现在我老了，羡慕仁厚之人。

*Now that my heavy load of the past has been tossed aside*, I can see open doors welcoming me to a better life.

既然过去的沉重负担甩在了一旁，现在我能看到开放的大门正将我引入更美好的生活。

#### 18.4.6 由considering (that)引导的原因状语从句

considering (that)表示“考虑到”。

It is unfortunate, *considering that enthusiasm moves the world*, that so few enthusiasts can be trusted to speak the truth.

考虑到热情能感动世界，不幸的是，很少有满怀热情的人讲的真话得到信任。

#### 18.4.7 由in that 引导的原因状语从句

in that 表示“因为”，属正式表达。

I like the countryside better *in that it is closer to nature*.

我更喜欢乡村，因为乡村更接近自然。

Criticism and self-criticism is necessary *in that it helps us to correct our mistakes*.

批评和自我批评是必要的，因为它能帮助我们改正错误。

### 18.5 目的状语从句

该从句表示目的，作目的状语，引导词包括so that, in order that, that, lest, in case, for fear that等。

#### 18.5.1 由so that 引导的目的状语从句

so that 表示“为了”、“以便于”。

You need to continually revise your plan *so that it becomes more realistic*.

你需要不断地修改计划，以便于更趋实际。

You can involve your child in your work *so that he can understand what you do*.

你可以让孩子参与你的工作，以便于他能理解你做的事情。

We should greet each new day with a plan *so that the high road upon which we travel is marked well*.

我们每天都应该有计划，以便于我们所走过的大路都标注清楚。

#### 18.5.2 由in order that引导的目的状语从句

in order that表示“为了”，与so that用法相同。

*In order that people may be happy in their work, they must be fit for it and they must have a sense of success in it.*

为了工作愉快，人们必须适合自己的工作而且对工作要有成就感。

*Men are born with two eyes but with one tongue in order that they should see twice as much as they say.*

人生来有两只眼睛，但只有一个舌头，为的是看多于说。

### 18.5.3 由that 引导的目的状语从句

that作目的状语从句的引导词，可以看作so that 或in order that的省略表达。

*We eat that we may live.*

我们吃饭是为了活着。

*They have died that liberty might live.*

他们死了，为的是让自由能够存在。

*Let us fight on, that the light of justice and freedom may not die in our land.*

让我们继续战斗，以便正义和自由之光不会在我们的土地上消亡。

### 18.5.4 由lest, in case, for fear that引导的目的状语从句

三个连词意义相同，都表示“以防”、“以免”。

*I must lose myself in action, lest I wither in despair.*

我必须专注于行动，以免在绝望中消沉下去。

*I will work hard for fear that I should fail in the test.*

我要努力学习，以防考试不及格。

*Be helpful to young people on their way up, in case you should need them on your way down.*

在年轻人走上坡路的时候要帮助他们，以免在你走下坡路的时候需要他们的帮助。

## 18.6 结果状语从句

该从句表示结果，作结果状语，引导词包括so that, that, so...that, such...that等。

### 18.6.1 由so...that引导的结果状语从句

so that除了引导目的状语从句之外，还可以引导结果状语从句，表示“因此”、“以至于”。当so that引导目的状语从句时，从句位置灵活，

既可以位于主句前，也可以位于主句后，而当引导结果状语从句时，从句只能位于主句之后；so that引导的结果状语从句之前常有逗号，将从句和主句隔开，而目的状语从句位于主句之后时，则往往不用逗号将主句和从句分隔。

I like to see a man live, *so that his place will be proud of him.*

我希望看到一个人这样活着，让自己的家乡为他而骄傲。

Man has been endowed with reason, with the power to create, *so that he can add to what he's been given.*

人类被赋予理智和创造力，于是可以拥有的东西更多。

### 18.6.2 由that引导的结果状语从句

有时so that省略so，直接用that引导结果状语从句；如果主句末尾是enough，则用that引导结果状语从句，和enough呼应。

First, ask yourself if your desire for this thing is great enough *that you would work hard to get it.*

首先，试问自己对该事物的愿望是否大到情愿努力去得到的程度。

### 18.6.3 由so...that引导的结果状语从句

so...that表示“如此……以至于”，so修饰形容词或副词。

Youth is so wonderful *that it is a crime to waste it.*

青春如此美好，浪费青春是一种犯罪。

The secret is so simple *that every child understands it.*

秘诀很简单，以至于每个孩子都理解。

Opportunities, many times, are so small *that we do not glimpse them.*

许多次，机会很不起眼，以至于我们没有看到。

Others have put up with my weakness so tolerantly *that I have to learn to be forgiving.*

别人这样宽容地忍受我的缺点，我必须学会包容。

### 18.6.4 由such...that引导的结果状语从句

such...that表示“如此……以至于”，such修饰名词。

Live *such a life that if every life were like yours, this earth would be a God's Paradise.*

要这样生活：倘若每个人的生活都和你一样，这个世界将变成天堂。

Most men pursue pleasure with *such breathless haste that they hurry past it.*

大多数人追寻快乐匆匆忙忙，以至于和快乐擦肩而过。

## 18.7 方式状语从句

该从句表示方式，作方式状语，引导词包括as, as if (或 as though) , in the same way(或in the same manner)等。

### 18.7.1 由as引导的方式状语从句

as表示“以……方式”，“像……一样”。

If we can't do *as we would*, we must do *as we can*.

如不能如愿而行，则须尽力而为。

We should behave to our friends *as we should expect our friends to behave to us*.

期待朋友如何对待自己，就应该怎样对待朋友。

### 18.7.2 由as if或as though引导的方式状语从句

as if或as though表示“好像”，从句中常用虚拟表达。

A true friend celebrates your success *as if it were his own*.

真正的朋友庆祝你的成功就如同自己成功一样。

To achieve great things we must live *as though we were never going to die*.

要举大事我们须有永生的气概。

I will do whatever I am doing *as if there were nothing else in the world of any importance*.

我要投入地做自己正在从事的事情，就好像世界上不存在其他重要的事情一样。

### 18.7.3 由in the same way 或in the same manner 引导的方式状语从句

in the same way 或in the same manner 表示“像……一样”，与as同义。

We can influence others by treating them *in the same way(或in the same manner) we would like them to treat us*.

我们希望别人怎样对待我们就怎样对待他人，以此对他人产生影响。

## 18.8 让步状语从句

该从句表示让步关系，作让步状语，引导词包括although, though, while, as, that, whether, even if, even though, no matter(what, who, which, when, where, how)或whatever, whoever, whichever, whenever, wherever, however等。

### 18.8.1 由although或though引导的让步状语从句

although和though表示“尽管”、“虽然”；两者用法基本一致，差别在于：although比though在语气上稍强，再者，though可以构成倒装，而although却不能。

*Although the world is full of suffering, they can always be overcome.*

尽管世界充满苦难，但苦难总是能够克服的。

*Although people are born to win, they are also born helpless and totally dependent on their environment.*

虽然人们生而为赢，但他们也生来不能自立，且完全依赖于自己的环境。

*Though it is true that one must not live in the past, it is important to use the past to learn from your mistakes.*

尽管一个人不能生活在过去是对的，但利用过去以便从错误中汲取教训却是重要的。

### 18.8.2 由while引导的让步状语从句

while表示“尽管”、“虽然”，义同although或though。

*While you cannot turn back the clock, you can take control of your life.*

尽管你不能使时钟倒转，但却可以掌控自己的生活。

*While a winner can admire and respect other people, he is not totally bound by them.*

尽管胜者羡慕、尊重他人，但他并不完全受他人束缚。

*While we are free to choose our actions, we are not free to choose the consequences of these actions.*

尽管我们有选择行动的自由，但却没有选择行动结果的自由。

### 18.8.3 由as或that引导的让步状语从句

as或that可以表示“虽然”、“尽管”，引导让步状语从句，但必须构成倒装，规则为：从句结尾的名词(不带冠词)、动词原形、形容词或者副词提前至从句开头。（详见《倒装》一章）

*Long as the days are, let your hearts be strong, keep right on to the end.*

尽管日子漫长，但是要让心灵坚强，一直坚持到最后时刻。

*Poor that they were, they gave money to charity.*

尽管他们很穷，但仍出钱行善。

#### 18.8.4 由whether引导的让步状语从句

whether表示“不论”，常和or或or not一起使用，有时也写作no matter whether。

*Whether we realize it or not, each of us carries with us a self-image.*

不管是否意识得到，我们每个人都有自我意象。

*The strongest motive, whether we are conscious of it or not, rules our conduct.*

不论我们是否意识到这种最强大的动机，它都控制着我们的行为。

*Try your best to fight, whether you enjoy it or not, and whether you will gain or lose, fail or succeed.*

不管苦乐，不问得失，不计成败，要尽全力去奋斗。

#### 18.8.5 由even if或even though引导的让步状语从句

even if或even though表示“即使”。

*Even if you've had a negative effect on others in the past, you can turn that around.*

即使在以往给他人留下了负面影响，你也可以扭转这种影响。

*Even if you go after your dreams with your best effort, you will experience failure along the way.*

即使你全力以赴地追求梦想，一路上你也会经历失败。

*Let me act now even though my actions may not bring happiness or success.*

让我现在就行动吧，即使我的行为可能不会带来幸福或成功。

#### 18.8.6 由no matter...引导的让步状语从句

no matter可以和what, who, which, when, where, how连用，分别表示“无论什么”、“无论谁”、“无论哪个”、“无论何时”、“无论何地”、“无论怎样”，也可以写作whatever, whoever, whichever, whenever, wherever, however。需要注意，no matter when(或whenever)也可以看作时间状语从句的引导词，而no matter where(或wherever)也可以看作地点状语从句的引导词。

a 由no matter what(或whatever)引导的让步状语从句

*Whatever you do, do with your might.*

无论你做什么，都要尽力而为。

*No matter what your goals are in life, you can achieve them faster if you learn how to become a person of influence.*

不管生活中的目标是什么，如果学会如何成为一个有影响力的人，你就能更迅速地达到目标。

You can become a person of high influence, *no matter what you do for a living.*

不论以什么谋生，你都能成为一个具有高度影响力的人物。

b 由no matter who(或whoever)引导的让步状语从句

The future is something which everyone reaches at the rate of sixty minutes an hour, whatever he does, *whoever he is.*

未来是每个人都在以每小时六十分钟的速度所得到的东西，不论他干什么，不论他是谁。

c 由no matter which(或whichever)引导的让步状语从句

*No matter which people criticize you, don't let them take your focus off your dream.*

不论什么人批评你，都不要让他们把你的焦点从自己的梦想上移走。

In war, *whichever side may call itself the victor*, there are no winners, but all are losers.

在战争中，不管哪一方声称自己是胜利的一方，都没有胜利者，所有的人都失败了。

d 由no matter how(或however)引导的让步状语从句

Love can support us *no matter how dark the world around us becomes.*

不论我们周围的世界多么黑暗，爱总能给我们以支持。

*However mean your life is*, do not blame it.

不管自己的生活多么卑微，都不要责怪它。

*No matter how successful they become*, people will continue to face difficulties.

不论多么成功，人们都将继续面对困难。

The good man is the man who, *no matter how morally unworthy he has been*, is moving to become better.

善良的人是指不论在道德上曾经多么不值得称道，但正不断向善的人。

## 18.9 比较状语从句



该从句表示比较关系，引导词包括 *than*, *as...as*, *not as(so)...as*, *the more...the more*.

### 18.9.1 由*than*引导的比较状语从句

*than*表示“比.....”，用于形容词或副词的比较级之后，构成比较句型。

*To travel hopefully is a better thing than to arrive.*

怀着希望上路比到达目的地更加惬意。

*Wisdom is more precious than wealth.*

智慧比财富更宝贵。

*Nothing is more terrible than ignorance in action.*

最可怕的事情莫过于无知而行动。

*Having half-baked knowledge is worse than knowing nothing at all.*

一知半解比全然不知更糟糕。

### 18.9.2 由*as...as*引导的比较状语从句

*as...as*表示“和.....一样”，用于同级比较。

*A man can be as great as he wants to be.*

一个人希望自己有多伟大，就可以有多伟大。

*Deal with the faults of others as gently as with your own.*

对待他人的缺点要像对待自己的缺点一样和风细雨。

*Long-standing friendship is as sweet as long-preserved wine.*

长久的友谊和陈酿一样甘醇。

### 18.9.3 由*not as(so)...as*引导的比较状语从句

*not as(so)...as*表示“不如”，是同级比较的否定表达。

*What happens is not as important as how you react to what happens.*

发生的事情不如你为此做出的反应重要。

*Wealth can't give so much happiness as health.*

财富带来的幸福不如健康多。

### 18.9.4 由*the more...the more*引导的比较状语从句

*the more...the more*表示“越.....就越.....”，意思层层递进。这是基本模式，如果出于表达需要，可以用特定词的比较级，而不一定非用*more*不可。

*The more we study, the more we discover our ignorance.*

我们学的东西越多，就越是发现自己的无知。

*The more advanced the civilization, the less powerful the individual.*

文明的程度越高，个人的作用就越小。

*The harder I work, the luckier I become.*

我工作越是努力，就越幸运。

Learning is like climbing up a mountain. *The higher you climb, the broader your vision is.*

学习如登山。登得越高，视野越宽。

## 实践演练

I. 找出每句中的状语从句部分，用下划线标示，并注意体会其用法。

1. Laziness travels so slowly that poverty soon overtakes him.
2. In these days no one can achieve great distinction unless he concentrates on one thing.
3. When your will is ready, your feet are light.
4. When we accept that imperfection is part of being human, and when we can continue rolling through life and appreciate it, we will have achieved a wholeness that others can only aspire to.
5. When love beckons to you, follow him, though his ways are hard and deep.
6. None is so wise but the fool overtakes him.
7. The student, though he is in the house, is still at work in his field, and chopping in his woods, as the farmer is in his, and in turn seeks the same recreation and society that the latter does, though it may be a more condensed form of it.

II. 指出划线部分是何种类型的状语从句。

1. Good men eat and drink that they may live.
2. Once a woman has given you her heart you can never get rid of the rest of her.
3. Sometimes men come by the name of genius in the same way that certain insects come by the name of centipede.
4. Our hopes, though they often deceive us, lead us pleasantly along the path of life.

5. Most men pursue pleasure with such breathless haste that they hurry past it.
6. There are people who exaggerate so much that they can't tell the truth without lying.
7. No matter how ill we may be, or how low we may have fallen, we would not change identity with any other person.
8. Expect to be treated as you have treated others.
9. The monotony and the quiet of Rome were suited to his taste, and, provided he could earn a moderate living by his brush, he had no wish to leave it.
10. Whatever I have tried to do in life, I have tried with all my heart to do it well.
11. You will have to remind yourself incessantly to practice watching your thoughts, as your mind will probably make you forget.

### III. 根据汉语提示写出下列各句缺失的英文连词。

1. It's a great life \_\_\_\_\_(如果) you don't weaken.
2. \_\_\_\_\_(哪里) there is love, there are always wishes.
3. \_\_\_\_\_(一旦) Matson's students equate failure with innovation instead of defeat, they felt free to try anything.
4. You'll never move others, heart to heart, \_\_\_\_\_(除非) your speech comes from your heart.
5. Treasure the love you receive above all. It will survive long \_\_\_\_\_(在.....之后) your gold and good health have vanished.
6. \_\_\_\_\_(无论) you ultimately agree or disagree with what they say, great books are the primary teachers of mankind.
7. Treat people \_\_\_\_\_(好像) they were what they ought to be and help them to become what they are capable of being.
8. \_\_\_\_\_(既然) you now like yourself as you are, you are daily building your self-image even more solidly.
9. \_\_\_\_\_(正如) a small fire cannot give much heat, a weak desire cannot produce great results.
10. A man ought to read just \_\_\_\_\_(按照) inclination leads him.

### IV. 改正下列句子中状语从句的引导词。

1. Reputation serves to virtue **like** light does to a picture.

2. Something is learned **every when** a book is opened.
3. When men speak ill of you, live **so as** no one will believe them.
4. **There** the willingness is great, the difficulties cannot be great.
5. **However** burdens you are having now on your shoulders, let it down for a moment if you can.
6. **Now that** we cannot remove stress from our lives, we need to find ways to deal with it.
7. **Despite** people have equal degrees of health and wealth, some become happy, while others become miserable.
8. **With** time goes by, I have gradually comprehended the essence of win-win principle.
9. Just as money laid out at interest doubles and trebles itself in time, **as** the precious hours of childhood and youth, if properly used, will yield us incalculable advantages.

#### V. 将提供的连词填入空格。

1. \_\_\_\_\_I have no other qualities I can succeed with love alone. Without it, I will fail \_\_\_\_\_I possess all the knowledge and skills of the world. (if, though)
2. \_\_\_\_\_caught by the tempest, \_\_\_\_\_it be, \_\_\_\_\_it lightens and thunders, beware of a tree. (if, when, wherever)
3. \_\_\_\_\_the freedom is used aright, and the man still does actual work, \_\_\_\_\_  
of a different kind, \_\_\_\_\_in the field of politics or in the field of exploration and adventure, he shows he deserves his good fortune. (if, though, whether)
4. \_\_\_\_\_we blame outside sources, our miseries will continue and we will feel helpless. \_\_\_\_\_we accept responsibility for our feelings and behavior, we cannot change. (unless, so long as)
5. \_\_\_\_\_that which is first in hand is not instantly, steadily, and regularly dispatched, other things accumulate behind, \_\_\_\_\_affairs begin to press all at once, and no human brain can stand the confusion. (if, till)

#### VI. 根据语境要求在空格处填入恰当的连词。

1. Law cannot persuade \_\_\_\_\_it cannot punish.
2. You can spend time offering assistance to those who are less fortunate than you, \_\_\_\_\_you may gain perspective.

3. Sometimes people don't know what they have got \_\_\_\_\_ it is gone.
4. We should behave to our friends \_\_\_\_\_ we should expect our friends to behave to us.
5. He that comes first may sit \_\_\_\_\_ he will.
6. The pot goes so often to the well \_\_\_\_\_ it is broken at last.
7. Preachers can talk but never teach \_\_\_\_\_ they practice what they preach.
8. Many people fail \_\_\_\_\_ they even begin \_\_\_\_\_ they fail to ask for what they want.
9. The greatest saleswoman in the world today doesn't mind \_\_\_\_\_ you call her a girl. That's because Markita Andrews has generated more than eighty thousand dollars selling Girl Scout cookies \_\_\_\_\_ she was seven years old.
10. Laugh at yourself first \_\_\_\_\_ anyone else can.

VII. 将下列句子的划线部分改换成状语从句。

1. With the passage of time, human problems change and fade.
2. Traveling your life path, you will be presented with numerous lessons that you will need to learn.
3. Standing by the window lost in thought for a long time, I realized that no scenery in the world remains unchanged.
4. Feeling hopeless, people don't bother to acquire the skills they need to succeed.
5. To live with abandon, we must savor the little victories, and realize that life is an endless journey in self-discovery and personal fulfillment.

VIII. 用所提供的连词将每组句子合并在一起，其中一句作主句，其余作状语从句。

1. A man may be an artist. He lacks the necessary tools. (though)

2. You've got to practice again and again for years. You can harmonize every part of your body and mind. (until)
3. He lived in a quiet style. He might employ a larger share of his income in works of benevolence. (in order that)
4. You choose to trust yourself and take action. You can never quite be certain how the situation will turn out. (each time)
5. Wishes and desires are promptly embodied in act and deed. Mere wishes and desires but engender a sort of green sickness in young minds. (unless)
6. You don't exercise the ability to always test yourself. You may lose not only your confidence, but more importantly, you lose the ability to focus, to know yourself, your friends. (when)
7. One is really free from thoughts. Both are one and the same thing. He becomes free from the mind. (as, when)
8. He persevered. He was admitted. He was rejected on his first application for admission to the academy. (though, until)

IX. 将下列带有状语从句的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. Hold fast to life, but not so fast that you cannot let go.
2. If you do not exert yourself in youth, you will regret it in old age.
3. Knowledge helps you to reach the destination provided you know what the destination is.
4. Though the thorn in the flower picked me, O beauty, I am grateful.
5. No dreams come true until you wake up and go to work.

X. 将各句中的状语从句部分翻译成英文。

1. Life is long \_\_\_\_\_(如果你懂得如何利用它).
2. One cannot succeed \_\_\_\_\_(如果不努力尝试).
3. \_\_\_\_\_(无论你走到哪里), you will never find a place like home.
4. Grown people should never say or do anything wrong before children, \_\_\_\_\_(以免给他们树立不好的榜样).
5. \_\_\_\_\_(考虑到他没有得到帮助), his results are very good.
6. Hopes and dreams and aspirations must be revisited often \_\_\_\_\_(以防我们忽视了对我们而言真正重要的东西).
7. A pessimist is ready to get a sense of inferiority \_\_\_\_\_(一旦遇到挫折).
8. I never feel ready to teach \_\_\_\_\_(不管我熬夜备课到多晚).
9. We shall defend our island, \_\_\_\_\_(无论付出多大代价).
10. Do not tell people their ideas are bad \_\_\_\_\_(除非你有更好的).
11. \_\_\_\_\_(尽管在任何重大战役的历史上人们或许仅仅记住了将军的名字), it has been in a great measure through the individual valor and heroism of the privates that victories have been won.

#### XI. 将下列汉语翻译成英文，注意状语从句的使用。

1. 如果我们不集中注意力，就无法达到目标。
2. 如果我们能够应对逆境，逆境就会使我们更加坚强。
3. 只要你没有把奶牛弄丢，你洒了多少牛奶都没关系。
4. 随着生活节奏持续加快，我们正迅速地丧失休闲的艺术。
5. 许多人把过多的时间花在关注健康上，以至于他们没有时间享受健康。
6. 无论你是谁，在哪里，做什么，都应该有目标。

#### XII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. \_\_\_\_\_we look into our hearts and think, we will come to know that fear inside us is going to get us nowhere.  
A. Before B. If C. Till D. Unless
2. \_\_\_\_\_difficulties you meet, you have to go on.

- A. Whatever B. However C. Whenever D. Wherever
3. Fifty years of study and labor elapsed \_\_\_\_\_ Galileo completed the invention.  
A. after B. as C. before D. while
4. \_\_\_\_\_ every day, he had to spend a little time reading books.  
A. Although busy he was B. Because he was very busy  
C. However busy he was D. So busy was he
5. She is enjoying the job more \_\_\_\_\_ she has got more responsibility.  
A. until B. now that C. whereas D. unless
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you have all obtained employment and are fairly started, my advice to you is "aim high".  
A. Assume that B. Assuming that  
C. Assumed that D. To assume that
7. With confidence we can portray the finer points of our personality in \_\_\_\_\_ what we do lack is never highlighted.  
A. a such way that B. a way such that  
C. such a way that D. such that a way
8. I never met \_\_\_\_\_ I could not learn something from him.  
A. a man so ignorant that B. a so ignorant man that  
C. ignorant a man so that D. so a man ignorant that
9. \_\_\_\_\_ people may be happy in their work, these things are needed: They must be fit for it; they must not do much of it; and they must have a sense of success in it.  
A. Lest B. Unless  
C. For fear that D. In order that
10. Persist to the end, \_\_\_\_\_ you are the only one left.  
A. even if B. but C. however D. in spite of
11. \_\_\_\_\_ you keep your heart basking in the sun, every dawn will present a fine prospect for you to unfold.  
A. As little as B. As little C. As long as D. As much as
12. No matter \_\_\_\_\_ hard it may be, I must try.  
A. what B. how C. however D. whatever
13. We should \_\_\_\_\_ live and labor in our time that what comes to us as seed may go to the next generation as blossom, and what comes to us as blossom may go to them as fruit.  
A. so B. such C. in order D. so that



## 第19章 名词从句

名词从句是指在句中所行使的语法功能相当于名词的从句，包括主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句和补语从句。名词从句的引导词包括三类：连词that, whether和if；连接代词who, whom, whose, whoever, what, whatever和which等；连接副词when, why, where和how等。that本身没有意义；whether和if表示“是否”；who和whom表示“谁”，who在从句中作主语、表语和宾语，whom作表语和宾语；whose表示“谁的”；whoever表示“无论是谁”；what表示“事物”、“事情”等；whatever表示“无论什么”；which表示“哪一个”；when表示时间；why表示原因；where表示地点；how表示方式或程度。

### 19.1 主语从句

主语从句即在句中作主语的从句。由于主语从句往往较长，为了保持句子平衡，经常用it作形式主语，代替主语从句，位于句首，而将主语从句置于句尾。

#### 19.1.1 由连词引导的主语从句

当主语从句位于句首时，that不能省略；当主语从句位于句尾时，that可以省略。

*It's rare (that) anyone becomes successful without the assistance of others.*

没有他人的帮助而取得成功并不常见。

*It is necessary (that) we should act in the right spirit.*

我们有必要以正确的态度做事。

*It's important (that) you really think about the future consequences of your bad habits.*

重要的是，要真正思考自己的不良习惯在将来导致的后果。

whether和if的区别在于，if不能置于句首。

*Whether it rains or shines makes no difference to proactive people.*

情况的好与坏对积极进取者而言无关紧要。

*It depends upon hard work more than luck whether(或if) you can succeed in making your dream come true.*

是否能成功地实现梦想更多地取决于勤奋，而不是运气。

### 19.1.2 由连接代词引导的主语从句

*Whoever loves money never has money enough.*

爱财的人，他的钱财永远都不够。

*Whoever wants to reach a distant goal must take many small steps.*

目标远大的人必须一步步做起。

*Whoever neglects learning in his youth loses the past and is dead for the future.*

年轻时忽视学业的人失去了过去，更葬送了未来。

*What is worth doing at all is worth doing well.*

凡是值得一做的事都值得做好。

*What the earth does is revolving; what rivers do is running; what the youth do is advancing.*

地球所做的是旋转；河水所做的是奔流；青年所做的是进步。

*Whatever you love and trust in this world loves you in return.*

在这个世界上，你所爱和信任的事物也会相应地爱你。

### 19.1.3 由连接副词引导的主语从句

*Where we love is home.*

家是我们爱的所在。

*How you think affects your approach to the success journey.*

你的思维方式影响你对成功的态度。

*How a person masters his fate is more important than what his fate is.*

一个人如何掌握命运比他的命运本身更重要。

*It is the common wonder of all men how among so many millions of faces, there should be none alike.*

在成千上万张面孔之中，竟没有长相一样的，对于所有人来说这都是奇迹。

## 19.2 宾语从句

宾语从句即在句中作动词或介词宾语的从句。

### 19.2.1 由连词引导的宾语从句

that引导宾语从句时，可以省略。

*Most people say (that) their main fault is a lack of self-discipline.*

大多数人说，他们的主要错误是缺乏自我约束。

Sometimes we need to remind ourselves *(that) thankfulness is indeed a virtue.*

有时，我们需要提醒自己，感恩确实是一种美德。

I slept and dreamt *(that) life was beauty*; I woke and found *(that) life was duty.*

我入眠梦见生活的美好；我醒来发现生活的职责。

引导宾语从句时，whether和if的区别在于，if不能引导介词的宾语从句。

Attitude determines *whether (或if) people are successful and able to enjoy life.*

态度决定人们是否成功，能否享受生活。

When tempted to do anything in secret, ask yourself *whether (或if) you would do it in public.*

当受到诱惑想要暗中做某事的时候，请自问：能否公开做这件事。

They can't agree on *whether what they are doing will make any difference in the long run.*

他们对于所做的事情从长远来看是否有重要影响意见不一。（本句中不能用if引导宾语从句）

### 19.2.2 由连接代词引导的宾语从句

A straw shows *which way the wind blows.*

草动知风向。

Appreciation makes *what is excellent in others* belong to us as well.

欣赏使他人的优点也同样属于我们。

The secret of life is not to do *what one likes*, but to try to like *what one has to do.*

生活的秘诀并不在于做一个人喜欢的事情，而在于努力去喜欢必须做的事情。

You can choose to be excellent in *whatever you do.*

无论做什么，你都可以出类拔萃。

They plan ahead and they're willing to pay *whatever price is required.*

他们事先做出筹划，并且愿意付出任何必要的代价。

### 19.2.3 由连接副词引导的宾语从句

Our motives shape *how we see the world.*

我们的目标决定我们看待世界的方式。

Heroes compel us to examine *how we are conducting our own lives.*

英雄迫使我们反省自己如何对待人生。

Whenever I am struck down, I will always inquire of myself *how I can turn that adversity into good.*

每当我被击败，我总是问自己如何可以变逆境为顺境。

My past experiences brought me to *where I am today.*

过去的经历引导我走到今天。

## 19.3 表语从句

表语从句即在句中作表语的从句。

### 19.3.1 由连词引导的表语从句

连词that和whether可以引导表语从句。

在非正式语体中，当引导表语从句时，that可以省略。

The only certainty is *that nothing is certain.*

唯一确定无疑的是，没有什么是确定的。

The miracle is *that the more we share, the more we have.*

奇迹在于，我们分享的越多，我们拥有的就越多。

The fact is *that life is either hard and satisfying or easy and unsatisfying.*

事实是，生活要么艰苦而令人满足，要么轻松而令人不满。

If you are alive, chances are *that you will be tested by disappointments.*

只要活着，你就总会有机会受到失意的考验。

当whether引导表语从句时，不可以用if代替。

The test of our progress is not *whether we add more to the abundance of those who have much; it is whether we provide enough for those who have too little.*

对我们进步的检验不在于给富足者锦上添花，而在于让贫困者丰衣足食。

### 19.3.2 由连接代词引导的表语从句

The future isn't *what it used to be.*

未来不同于过去。

We are *what we believe we are.*

我们就是自己相信的那种人。

Purpose is *what gives life a meaning.*

目标是赋予生活意义的东西。

Need and struggle are *what excite and inspire us*.  
需求和奋斗令我们兴奋，并使我们受到激励。

### 19.3.3 由连接副词引导的表语从句

Your big opportunity may be right *where you are now*.  
巨大的机会或许就在眼前。

Work is *how we express our love*.  
工作是我们表达爱的方式。

Success is *how high you bounce when you hit bottom*.  
成功是当你跌入低谷时崛起的高度。

Yesterday is history. Tomorrow is a mystery. Today is a gift—that's *why it's called "the present"*.

昨天是历史。明天是谜团。今天是礼物——这就是为什么它被称为“the present”的原因。

All the mistakes I ever made in my life were *when I wanted to say "No", and said "Yes"*.

我一生犯过的一切错误都是在我想说“不”的时候却说了“是”。

### 19.3.4 由what引导的表语从句

该从句比较特殊，基本形式为A is to B *what C is to D*, 所表达的基本意义为“A之于B正如C之于D”。该句型的用法是：将从句中一个众所熟知的情况和主句要重点表达的道理进行类似比较，以突出意在表达的思想。

Personality is to man *what perfume is to a flower*.  
人格之于人正如花香之于花。

Intellect is to the mind *what sight is to the body*.  
智力之于头脑正如视力之于身体。

Books are to mankind *what memory is to the individual*.  
书籍对于人类正如记忆对于个人。

从句也可以置于主句之前，中间用逗号隔开。

*What sculpture is to a block of marble*, education is to the soul.  
教育对于心灵正如雕塑对于大理石。

*What hunger is in relation to food*, zest is in relation to life.  
热情对于生活正如食物对于饥饿。

## 19.4 同位语从句

同位语从句即在句中作同位语的从句，对前面被修饰的名词起到解释说明其内容的作用。引导同位语从句的词以that最为常见。

I have no idea *what is despair*.

我不知道何为绝望。

The supreme happiness of life is the conviction *that we are loved*.

生活中最大的幸福是坚信有人爱我们。

I have a dream *that one day the rough place will be made plain*.

我有一个梦想，终有一天崎岖的地方将变得平坦。

First of all, let me assert my firm belief *that the only thing we have to fear is fear itself*.

首先，让我阐明自己坚定的信念，那就是，我们唯一要恐惧的东西就是恐惧本身。

We should care for one another in the knowledge *that we are more alike than we are different*.

我们应互相关照，因为我们知道，我们的相似之处多于我们的差异。

The probability *that we may fail in the struggle* ought not to deter us from the support of a cause we believe to be just.

我们可能会在奋斗中失败，但这不该阻止我们支持我们认为正义的事业。

He had no idea *whether he could succeed in getting into college or not*. I told him application and determination were the key factors.

他不清楚能否考上大学。我告诉他入学申请和决心是关键的因素。

（当whether引导同位语从句时，不能用if代替）

后面接同位语从句的名词表示概括性意义，以抽象名词居多，常见的包括：

assumption 假定 belief 看法 conviction 深信

doubt 怀疑 evidence 证据 explanation 解释

fact 事实 feeling 感觉 guarantee 保证

idea 观点 knowledge 认识 likelihood 可能性

message 讯息 news 消息 notion 观念

opinion 观点 probability 可能性 problem 问题

proof 证据 proposal 建议 proverb 谚语

question 问题 saying 谚语 sign 迹象

suggestion 建议 thought 想法 truth 事实

## 19.5 补语从句

补语从句跟在形容词之后，对句义加以补充，行使补语功能。其后跟补语从句的形容词多表示人的情感态度或者思想状态等。

I am confident *that I can deal with any challenge.*

我自信能应对任何挑战。

We are pleased *that we have reaped another bumper harvest.*

令我们感到高兴的是，我们又获得了丰收。

I'm glad *that I'm dependent on my family for love and a sense of belonging.*

令我感到高兴的是，自己从家庭中找到爱和归属感。

We are sure *that we will be invincible as long as we are united as one.*

我们确信，只要我们团结如一人，我们将不可战胜。

## 实践演练

I. 找出每句中的名词从句部分，用下划线标出，并体会其用法。

### A 主语从句

1. Whoever is delighted in solitude is either a wild beast or a god.
2. It never troubles a wolf how many the sheep are.
3. It has long since been satisfactorily established that a high executive does not have a large vocabulary merely because of the opportunities of his position. Quite the reverse is true.
4. It is our misfortune that for most of us that true instinct for what is beautiful and awe-inspiring is dimmed and even lost before we reach adulthood.

### B 表语从句

1. A man's country is where he does well.
2. The reason for his success is that he works hard.
3. Reputation is what you are in the light; character is what you are in the dark.
4. Luck is what happens when preparation meets opportunity.
5. The fact is that in this modern world no country, not even the greatest, can live for itself alone.

6. The toughest thing about success is that you've got to keep on being a success.
7. The test of literature is, I suppose, whether we ourselves live more intensely for the reading of it.

### C 宾语从句

1. I have always found that it's more painful to do nothing than something.
2. History teaches us that every problem has a lifespan.
3. No one knows better where the shoe pinches than he who wears it.
4. Poverty shows us who our friends are and who our enemies are.
5. Achieving success in whatever endeavor you choose may be the goal of life.
6. Keep in mind that letting go is a state of mind and has nothing to do with your actions.

### D 同位语从句

1. The notion that we have to work at happiness comes as news to many people.
2. He that is of the opinion that money will do everything may well be suspected of doing everything for money.
3. Jealousy is the pain that a man feels from the apprehension that he is not equally beloved by the person that he entirely loves.
4. I should wish to die while still at work, knowing that others will carry on what I can no longer do, and content in the thought that what was possible has been done.
5. Sometimes when we visit a house we have not been in before, we have the feeling that somehow the place has no heart or soul, even though its occupants may be good kind people with well-furnished rooms.
6. When a true genius appears in the world, you know him by this sign that the dunces are all in confederacy against him.
7. The public buys its opinions as it buys its meat, or takes in its milk, on the principle that it is cheaper to do this than to keep a cow. So it is, but the milk is more likely to be watered.
8. We all know that books burn—yet we have the greater knowledge that books cannot be killed by fire.
9. “If I rest, I rust.” Even the most industrious person might adopt it with advantage to serve as a reminder that, if one allows his faculties to rest, like



the iron in the unused key, they will soon show signs of rust and, ultimately, cannot do the work required of them.

## II. 指出下列各句中划线部分各自是什么类型的名词从句。

1. To the vast majority of the population it doesn't matter much whether they want to be successful or not.
2. What I love so much about life is that it's a mystery.
3. There is a wrong view that holds that success is a myth, and ambition therefore a sham.
4. They agree that at least three important qualities have helped them to be very efficient in accomplishing tasks: organization ability, good work habits and diligence.
5. Be not angry that you cannot make others as you wish them to be, since you cannot make yourself as you wish to be.
6. What we must realize is that life is a combination of beauty and ugliness.
7. Whatever the mind of man can conceive and believe, the mind can achieve.

## III. 在句中空格处填入适当的连接词，使其引导名词从句。

1. \_\_\_\_\_ lives a true life will love true love.
2. Your business as a writer is to show \_\_\_\_\_ a fellow may move toward virtue or away from it.
3. Optimism and pessimism are both powerful forces, and each of us must choose \_\_\_\_\_ we want to shape our outlook and our expectations.
4. Never order a man to do \_\_\_\_\_ you're afraid to do yourself.
5. Scientists are beginning to understand \_\_\_\_\_ physical workouts also provide a mental and emotional boost.
6. I knew \_\_\_\_\_ I want to go in life.
7. Books are to mankind \_\_\_\_\_ memory is to the individual.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ character is power is truer in a much higher sense than \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge is power.

## IV. 将下列各句中的划线部分改成名词从句。

1. The mere fact of looking forward to your work will help make you more productive and effective.

2. It will be much better for one to change oneself before one makes an attempt to change the outer world.

3. It was a good thing for him to be both brave and wise, because the times in which he lived were wild and dangerous.

4. Our supreme happiness is the conviction of being loved.

5. Books contain the wisdom of the ages, but we must know how to avail ourselves of this treasure and how to get the most from it.

#### V. 将下列带有名词从句的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. Let us have faith that right makes might.

2. The saying that beauty is but skin-deep is but a skin-deep saying.

3. The tragedy of life is not what men suffer, but rather what they miss.

4. There is no doubt that Bach was born with a passion for music, which formed the mainspring of his industry, and was the true secret of his success.

5. Democracy is based upon the conviction that there are extraordinary possibilities in ordinary people.

6. When anything happens to us, we can take it as a sign that we should not expect anything good out of our lives.

7. The belief that something permanent transcends us and that our existence has some larger meaning can help us be happier.

#### VI. 将下列汉语句子翻译成英文，注意名词从句的运用。

1. 你选择对情况做出怎样的反应。

2. 我们的态度决定了我们如何看待挫折。

3. 我真高兴我的生命中有你。

4. 我相信爱是世间最伟大的东西。

5. 你可以去自己想去的地方，做自己想做的事情，拥有自己想拥有的一切，成为自己想成为的人。

VII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. The mark of the mature man is \_\_\_\_\_ he wants to live humbly for a cause.

A. that B. what C. when D. where

2. The reporter asked Schwarzenegger \_\_\_\_\_ he planned to make his dream come true.

A. how B. that C. what D. which

3. I leave it to your own judgment \_\_\_\_\_ you should do it.

A. that B. which C. whether D. what

4. The value of marriage is not that adults produce children, \_\_\_\_\_ children produce adults.

A. it is that B. but that C. but it is D. however

5. \_\_\_\_\_ is abandoned by hope has also been abandoned by fear; this is the meaning of the word "desperate."

A. Whoever B. No matter who C. Who D. Whom

6. Love is like wine, friendship a flower, and blood relations water. \_\_\_\_\_ we can own love and friendship is all predestined.

A. If B. Whether C. That D. What

7. Most parents work hard at either preventing failure or protecting their children from the knowledge \_\_\_\_\_ they have failed.

A. if B. that C. where D. which

8. Love is \_\_\_\_\_ you take away the feeling, the passion, and the romance in a relationship and find out you still care for that person.

A. what B. when C. where D. why

9. Do \_\_\_\_\_ you believe is right.

A. what B. that C. which D. it

10. \_\_\_\_\_ we derive our happiness is just as important as the happiness itself.

- A. How and where    B. What and how  
C. What and which    D. Where and which

11. \_\_\_\_\_tries for the highest results cannot fail to realize a point far in advance of that from which he started.

- A. Who    B. Whoever    C. Whom    D. No matter who

12. When her own studying was done, she tried to read \_\_\_\_\_of his books was not in use.

- A. whichever    B. which    C. that    D. what

13. Many times in life, \_\_\_\_\_a thing is worth doing or not really depends on \_\_\_\_\_you look at it.

- A. if; what    B. that; where    C. what; how    D. whether; how

14. I have not the smallest doubt \_\_\_\_\_he will overcome all his difficulties.

- A. that    B. whether    C. if    D. when

15. \_\_\_\_\_all behavior is learned behavior is a basic assumption of social scientists.

- A. Which    B. That    C. Why    D. How

## 第20章 虚拟语气

虚拟语气用于表达不可能发生或者实现的可能性不大的情况，表明说话人单纯的主观想法或意愿。此外，在英语中有些特定的词语、表达、句式要求使用对应的虚拟语气。由于不同于一般表达，虚拟语气有许多特殊的规则。

### 20.1 针对当前状态的虚拟

表示在现在情况下不可能发生或者实现的可能性不大。其基本表达规则为：在表示假设的条件从句中，谓语动词使用一般过去时；在表示结果的主句中，谓语动词形式为would(或could, might, should)接动词原形。

If we *did* all the things we are capable of doing, we *would* surprise ourselves.

如果我们完成所有力所能及的事情，自己也会惊讶不已。（句中的we are capable of doing是事实，所以不用虚拟表达）

Most of us *could* get along very well if we *used* the advice we give to others.

假如我们将提给他人的建议用于自己，多数人会有长进。（句中的we give to others是事实，所以不用虚拟表达）

The world is a play that *would* not be worth seeing if we *knew* the plot.

世界是一出戏，如果事先知道情节，就不值得看了。（The world is a play是比喻，所以不用虚拟表达）

Life *might* be too smooth if it *had* no difficulties in it.

倘若生活中没有困难，就过于平淡了。

Many painful things *would* cause pleasure if you *regarded* their advantages.

许多痛苦的事情如果你看到好的方面，就会快乐。

If children *grew* up according to early inclination, we *should* have nothing but geniuses.

如果孩子按照早期倾向成长，我们得到的就是天才。

在条件从句中，如果系动词be需要变为一般过去时，当主语为单数时既可以使用was，也可以使用were；主语为复数时，使用were的形式。

If I *were* the president of a university, I *should* establish a course in “How to Use Your Eyes”.

倘若我是一所大学的校长，我会开设一门《如何利用双眼》的课程。

If there *were* no clouds, we *should* not enjoy the sun.

如果没有阴云密布，我们就不会享受阳光。

If wishes *were* horses, beggars *might* ride.

如果愿望是马匹，乞丐也能骑。（意即愿望不等于现实）

If it were not for...是针对当前情况虚拟的一个固定句型，意为“如果没有”、“要不是因为”。

If it *were not for* hope, the heart would break.

如果没有希望，人心会愁坏。

If it *weren't for* the rocks in its bed, the stream would have no song.

如果溪床没有石块，小溪就不会潺潺歌唱。

If it *weren't for* the fact that every one of us is special, there wouldn't be any point in giving each person a separate name.

要不是因为我们每个人都与众不同，那么给每人取一个不同的名字就失去了意义。

## 20.2 针对过去事实的虚拟

表示出于主观愿望，违背过去已经发生的事实。其基本表达规则为：在条件从句中，谓语动词使用过去完成时；在主句中，谓语动词形式为would(或could, might, should)接现在完成时。

I *would have been* a failure if I *had let* those worries and fears control me.

假如当时让这些忧虑和担心控制了我，我就一败涂地了。

If I *had known* it would come to this, I *would have acted* differently.

如果当初我知道结果会这样，我就不会这么做了。

If we *hadn't made* what looked like a terrible error, we never *would have been forced* to rethink our master plan.

倘若当时我们没有犯看似严重的错误，我们就不可能被迫想出我们的总体规划。

Many persons in the world *would have scored* achievement if they *had not wasted* the valuable time.

假如没有浪费掉宝贵的时光，世界上会有许多人取得成就。

Capital is only the fruit of labor, and *could never have existed* if labor *had not first existed*.

金钱是劳动的结果，如果没有劳动在先，也就不存在金钱。

## 20.3 针对将来情况的虚拟

表明在将来事情没有实现的可能性，或者实现的可能性不大。其基本规则为：条件从句中谓语动词用should(或were to)接动词原形的形式；主句中谓语动词形式为would(或could, might, should)接动词原形。

If things *were to be* done twice, all *would be* wise.

如果将来事情能做两次，人人都会变得聪明。

If the highest aim of a captain *were to* preserve his ship, he *would* keep it in port forever.

假如船长的最高目标是保全船只，他就会永远不让船出港。

If you *should* put even a little on a little, and *should* do this often, soon this too *would* become big.

假如你经常做一点一滴的努力，不久就将取得伟大的成就。

## 20.4 省略条件从句的虚拟

有时在虚拟表达中，不出现条件从句，而用单词、词组替代，用不定式替代，或者由上下文表现。

用单词、词组替代

常见的单词有otherwise, or(否则)等，词组包括由without, but for(如果没有，要不是因为)等引导的词组。

A real person will pass away after using up his intelligence, specialty and energy. Otherwise he would feel regret for wasting his limited life.

一个真正的人会在用尽自己的才智、专长和精力之后辞世。否则，他会因为浪费了自己有限的生命而感到悔恨。（对将来情况的虚拟）

A lawyer without books would be like a workman without tools.

律师如果没有书籍就像工匠没有工具。（对现在情况的虚拟）

I would never have made it but for the habits of order and diligence.

假如没有按部就班，没有勤奋的习惯，我就不会成功了。（对过去情况的虚拟）

用不定式替代

Others have put up with my weakness so tolerantly that I would be less than fair not to make a reasonable discount for theirs.

别人那么宽容我的缺点，因此如果我对别人的缺点不加以适当容忍，那就不够公平。（对现在情况的虚拟）

It would be fatal for the nation to overlook the urgency of the moment.

忽视当前的紧迫性对这个国家来说将是致命的。（对现在情况的虚拟）

由上下文表现

I have wasted years of opportunity with my frowns when a smile would have opened many doors.

当一个微笑就可以开启许多扇门的时候，我却紧皱双眉，因而浪费了充满机遇的多年时间。（对过去情况的虚拟）

A rose by any other name would smell as sweet.

玫瑰取任何别的名称也会同样芬芳。（对现在情况的虚拟）

When things are bad, we take comfort in the thought that they could always be worse.

当事情不顺的时候，我们可以想一想：事情本来会更加糟糕的，并从中得到安慰。（对现在情况的虚拟）

## 20.5 错综时间虚拟

所谓错综时间虚拟，是指条件从句中的情况和主句中的情况在时间上不同步，常见的是：条件从句针对过去，而主句针对现在，表示“如果过去怎样，那么现在会如何。”基本规则为：条件从句中的谓语动词使用过去完成时，主句中的谓语动词使用would(或could, might, should)接动词原形的形式。

Where *would* we be today if we *had looked* at our past experience?

假如我们借鉴了过去的经验，我们现在的情形会怎样呢？

If we *hadn't had* such a magnificent optimism to carry us through all these things, we *wouldn't* be here.

如果不是伟大的乐观精神一路上支持着我们，我们就不是现在的样子了。

## 20.6 礼貌虚拟

有时出于礼貌，为了使语气婉转，避免强加于人而使用虚拟语气，用来表示请求。常见的句型如：



*I was wondering if you could....*

不知您能否.....。

*I would be most grateful if you could....*

如果您能.....，我将不胜感激。

*I would appreciate it if you did sth.*

如果您.....，我将不胜感激。

*I would be most honored if you did sth.*

如果您.....，我将不胜荣幸。

## 20.7 条件、让步状语从句中的虚拟

在非常正式的语体中，当条件或让步状语从句是系表结构时，系动词可以使用原形，构成特殊形式的虚拟表达，而主句并不虚拟。

条件状语从句中的虚拟：

If money *be* not your servant, it will be your master.

如果金钱不是你的奴仆，它就会成为你的主人。

Can you be free if your neighbor *be* a slave?

假如你的邻居是奴隶，你能自由吗？

Reading is not a virtue, unless the enjoyment *be* virtuous.

如果从读书中得到的乐趣是不道德的，读书就不是美德。

让步状语从句中的虚拟：

No idle person is ever safe, whether he *be* rich or poor.

无所事事的人不会高枕无忧，不管他富有还是贫穷。

Whether it *be* in sports or business, one's ability to get along is critical.

不管是体育还是经商，为人处事的能力都至关重要。

One should always live in the best company, whether it *be* of books or of men.

无论是书还是人，生活中都应该一直和益友为伴。

I will love all manners of men for each has qualities to be admired even though they *be* hidden.

我喜欢人们的所有风度，因为每个人都具备令人钦慕的品质，尽管藏而不露。

## 20.8 虚拟语气中的倒装

常见的有两种情况。

其一，在针对当前、过去、将来事实的虚拟表达中，当省略连词if，从句中的助动词、系动词或情态动词须提到从句主语之前，构成倒装，基本形态为were(或had, should)开头，后跟主语。

*Were* men angels, no government *would* be necessary.

如果人人都是天使，政府就没有必要了。（对当前情况的虚拟）

*Had* I to do things all over again, I *would* pray for more patience and more understanding.

假如我重新再做一遍，我会祈求更多的耐心和理解。（对当前情况的虚拟）

Many persons in the world *would have scored* achievement *had* they not wasted the valuable time.

假如没有浪费掉宝贵的时光，世界上有许多人会取得成就。（对过去情况的虚拟）

*Were* we to love none who has imperfections, this world *would* be a desert for our love. 或 *Should* we love none who has imperfections, this world *would* be a desert for our love.（对将来情况的虚拟）

如果我们不去爱有缺点的人，这个世界将是一片爱的荒漠。

其二，在连词whether或though引导的让步状语从句中，当省略whether或though时，系动词be提前至从句句首。

A sense of humor can help us handle difficult situations in our lives, *be* they saving face or saving jobs.

幽默感能够帮助我们处理生活中的困难局面，不论是保住面子还是保住工作。（相当于A sense of humor can help us handle difficult situations in our lives, whether they are saving face or saving jobs.）

*Be* a man ever so clever, if he doesn't learn he knows nothing.

即使一个人很聪明，如果不学习也一无所知。（相当于Though a man be/is ever so clever, if he doesn't learn, he knows nothing.）

## 20.9 句式What if... 的虚拟

句型What if... 有时使用虚拟语气。实际上，这是一种省略主句的结构，如有时可以看作是What would happen if... 的省略形式。

What if you shared your skills with others at work?

假如和同事分享你的技能会怎样？（对现在的虚拟）

What if you were to interview one successful person every month?

假如让你每月采访一位成功人士会怎样？（对将来的虚拟）

What if you and your family were to spend just ten minutes together?  
假如你和家人在一起只呆上十分钟，会怎样呢？（对将来的虚拟）

## 20.10 句式It is time... 的虚拟

在It is time之后的从句中，谓语动词永远用一般过去时的形式。有时，在time之前加副词about（差不多）或形容词high（正好）。此现象区别于It is time to do sth.或It is time for sb. to do sth.

It's time I started believing in myself.  
我该开始相信自己了。

It's about time you got started.  
是你开始行动的时候了。

It is high time I did all I can to help make a better life for people around me.  
我该竭尽所能，帮助周围人创造更美好的生活了。

## 20.11 wish的虚拟

动词wish要求在后边的宾语从句中使用虚拟语气。具体规则为：对现在的希望，从句中的谓语动词用一般过去时的形式；对过去的希望，从句中的谓语动词用过去完成时的形式；对将来的希望，从句中的谓语动词用would(或could, might, should)接动词原形的形式。

I wish I *could* stand on a busy street corner, hat in hand, and beg people to throw me all their wasted hours.  
我希望自己站在熙熙攘攘的街角，手里拿着帽子，乞求人们把浪费的时光扔给我。（对现在的希望）

There are good men everywhere. I only wish they *had* louder voices.  
好人到处都有。我只希望他们的声音再大一些。（对现在的希望）

I wish I *had kept* faithful to my childhood dreams. Things would be different now.

我希望当初信守儿时的梦想。现在情况将有所不同。（对过去的希望）

I wish you *would* keep on trying to improve your English. It's so important for your career.

我希望你继续坚持提高英语水平。英语对你的职业非常重要。（对将来的希望）

## 20.12 if only的虚拟

if only表达感叹性的愿望，理解为“要是……该多好啊！”或“要是……就好了”，其规则与wish完全相同。only可放于句中；位于句中时，可以用just替换。

If only I *had taken* care of my health.

要是我当初照顾好自己的身体就好了。（对过去的希望）

If only I *had spent* more time with my family.

要是当初有更多时间陪家人就好了。（对过去的希望）

If only my wife *were* more patient.

要是我妻子更有耐心该多好啊。（对现在的希望）（当系动词须使用一般过去时，主语为单数时，可使用was或were；主语为复数时，使用were）

## 20.13 as if, as though的虚拟

这两个连词后面的从句所描述的情况如果不现实，要使用虚拟语气。对现在情况的描述，从句中的谓语动词用一般过去时的形式；对过去情况的描述，从句中的谓语动词用过去完成时的形式；对将来情况的描述，从句中的谓语动词用would(或could, might, should)接动词原形的形式，也可以使用were to接动词原形的形式。

对现在情况的描述：

Act as though it *were* impossible to fail.

行动起来要像不可能失败一样。

Work as though your strength *were* limitless.

你工作起来就好像有无限的力量。

We act upon our self-image just as if it *were* true.

我们根据自我意象去行动，就好像它是真实的一样。（以上三句中，因为主语是单数，所以系动词也可以使用was）

对过去情况的描述：

Noise proves nothing. Often a hen who has merely laid an egg cackles as if she *had laid* an asteroid.

喧闹不能证明什么。母鸡产下一只蛋，往往咯咯地叫，就好像产下了小行星似的。

对将来的描述：

It would be an excellent rule to live each day as if we *should* die tomorrow.

如果把每一天都当作好像明天我们就要死去一般地度过，那将是个很好的生活准则。

Study as if you *were to* live forever, but live as if you *were to* die tomorrow.

学习起来要像生命没有尽头，但是生活起来要像生命行将终结。

## 20.14 would rather, would sooner的虚拟

这两个词组可以理解为“宁可”或“宁愿”。其后的从句要求虚拟。规则为：对现在的愿望，谓语动词使用一般过去时；对过去的愿望，谓语动词使用过去完成时；对将来的愿望，和对现在的愿望相同，谓语动词也使用一般过去时。要注意将这两个词组的虚拟用法与其后直接跟动词时的情况相区别。

I would rather (或 would sooner) my son had become a teacher, but he wanted to serve his country in the army, so he joined up after graduating.  
我宁愿儿子当时做一名教师，但是他希望参军以服务于国家，因此他毕业后就入伍了。（对过去的希望）

I would rather (或 would sooner) you had more health than wealth.  
我宁愿你有更多的健康而不是财富。（对现在的希望）

I would rather (或 would sooner) my father kept his mind and body active after he retires in three years.  
我宁愿再过三年父亲退休以后能够保持身心活跃。（对将来的希望）

## 20.15 lest, in case, for fear that的虚拟

这三个表达的意义相同，理解为“以防”；用法也一样，其后的从句可以使用虚拟语气，规则是：谓语动词形式为should接动词原形，should可以省略，动词保持原形。需注意的是，这三个词引导的从句也可以不使用虚拟语气而使用常规表达。

Weigh well your words lest they (should) be swords.  
慎重斟酌自己的言辞，以免它们成为利剑。

Take time when time comes, in case time (should) steal away.  
当时机来临时要抓住时机，以防它偷偷溜走。

We must not promise what we should not, for fear that we (should) be called on to perform what we cannot.

我们一定不要许诺不该做的事，以防别人要求我们去做我们做不了的事。

## 20.16 主观意愿动词的虚拟

英语中有些动词，共同特点是表达主观的意愿，共同用法为：在与之对应的宾语从句、主语从句或表语从句中，要求使用虚拟语气。基本规则为：从句中的谓语动词用should接动词原形的形式，should可以省略，动词保持为原形。

In life, your goals may require that you (should) try different approaches and persevere.

生活中，你的目标或许要求你尝试不同的方法，然后持之以恒。

（宾语从句）

It is suggested that to effectively listen, you (should) find meaning and understanding in what it is being said.

为了有效倾听，你应该在别人的话语中找到意义和理解。（主语从句）

What is demanded is that a man (should) make a personal commitment to excellence.

要求一个人做的就是去追求卓越。（表语从句）

I will that my friends (should) be happy.

我愿朋友们幸福。（宾语从句）

这类动词包括：

advise 建议 advocate 主张 agree 同意

arrange 达成协议 ask 要求 beg 恳求

command 命令 decide 决定 decree 注定

demand 要求 desire 希望 direct 指示

enjoin 责令 grant 准予 insist 坚决主张

intend 打算 maintain 主张 move 提议

order 命令 prefer 宁可 prescribe 规定

propose 建议 recommend 建议 request 请求

require 要求 resolve 正式决定 suggest 建议

urge 敦促 will 渴望；愿

## 20.17 主观意愿名词的虚拟

主观意愿名词有许多是由主观意愿动词转变而来的，要求在相应的主语从句、表语从句、同位语从句中使用虚拟语气，规则同动词。

It is generally thought to be of importance to a man that he(should)know himself.

人们普遍认为，一个人了解自己是重要的。（主语从句）

The first requirement of good conversation is that nobody (should) know what is coming next.

好的谈话的第一个要求就是没有人知道你接下去要讲什么。（表语从句）

It was my mother's determination that I (should) learn the importance of education at the earliest possible moment.

让我尽早懂得教育的重要，这是母亲的决心。（同位语从句）

这类名词包括：

advice 建议 agreement 协议 arrangement 协议

command 命令 decision 决定 demand 要求

desire 希望 determination 决心 direction 指示

importance 重要 insistence 坚决的主张 intention 打算

motion 动议 order 命令 preference 偏爱

prescription 规定 proposal 建议 recommendation 建议

request 请求 requirement 要求 resolution 决议

suggestion 建议 urge 迫切的要求

## 20.18 主观意愿形容词的虚拟

这类形容词要求在相对应的补语从句、主语从句和表语从句中使用虚拟语气，规则同上。

She was very anxious that her son(should)succeed.

她非常渴望儿子成功。（补语从句）

It is important that you (should) thank those who supported you through the disappointments.

重要的是，你应该感谢在失意时给予你支持的人。（主语从句）

It is necessary to the happiness of man that he (should) be faithful to himself.

忠实于自己，对于人类的幸福而言是必不可少的。（主语从句）

What is strange is that all great men (should) have some little grain of madness mingled with whatever genius they possess.

奇怪的是，所有伟大人物在他们拥有的天分中都混杂着少许疯狂的成分。（表语从句）

As soon as error is corrected, what is important is that the error (should) be forgotten and only the successful attempts (should) be remembered.

一旦错误得到纠正，重要的是忘记错误，只记住成功的尝试。（表语从句）

这类形容词包括：

absurd 荒唐的 advisable 可取的 amazing 惊人的  
anxious 渴望的 appropriate 恰当的 best 最适当的  
compulsory 强制的 crucial 至关重要的 desirable 可取的  
eager 渴望的 essential 必不可少的 expedient 适宜的  
fitting 恰当的 imperative 必要的 important 重要的  
impossible 不可能的 incredible 难以置信的 insistent 急切的  
mandatory 强制的 natural 自然的 necessary 必要的  
obligatory 强制的 odd 奇怪的 preferable 更可取的  
proper 恰当的 rational 合理的 reasonable 合理的  
right 正当的 shocking 令人震惊的 strange 奇怪的  
surprising 令人惊讶的 unthinkable 难以置信的 urgent 紧迫的  
vital 至关重要的 well 合适的

## 20.19 固定虚拟表达

英语中有些虚拟表达已经形成固定的模式，下面是一些常见的，其中很多表示祝愿。

**Long live... ! .....** 万岁！

Long live liberty! 自由万岁！

Long live friendship ! 友谊万岁！

Long live the raging fire of life! 生活的烈火万岁！

**God save (或bless)...** 愿上帝保佑.....

God bless you. 愿上帝保佑你。

**God grant that...** 但愿.....

God grant that men of principle shall be our principal men.

但愿正直之士成为我们的领导者。

**God (或Heaven) forbid that...** 但愿不发生.....



在从句中，谓语动词要求使用should接动词原形的形式，should可以省略。

God forbid that you (should) ever regret your marriage.

但愿你结婚后永不反悔。

**May... 愿.....**

在从句中，谓语动词要求使用原形。

May the best of your past be the worst of your future.

愿你未来最坏的事情也和过去最好的事情一样。

May you cherish life, and fill it with beauty and love.

愿你热爱生活，让生活充满美和爱。

May all the lovers in the world be couples in the end.

愿天下有情人终成眷属。

In sorrow, may my soul be uplifted by the thought that if there were no shadow, there would be no sunshine.

在悲伤中我想到，如果没有阴影，就不会有阳光，愿我的精神因此得到提升。

**Suffice it (to say) that... 只要（说）.....就够了。**

Suffice it that without leisure there is no liberty.

无闲暇哪有自由，说这一句就够了。

**Far be it from me to... 我决不会（或决不想、决不敢等）**

Far be it from me to spoil the fun.

我决不想破坏欢乐的气氛。

**if need(s) be 如果需要，有必要的**

Do the best you can if need be.

有必要的，你要尽力而为。

A democratic and free society is an ideal for which I am prepared to die if needs be.

如果必要的话，一个民主、自由的社会是我情愿为之付出生命的理想。

**so be it 那就算了**

If you do not wish my friendship, so be it.

如果你不想和我交朋友，那就算了。

**as it were 可以说，在某种程度上**

A friend is, as it were, a second self.

可以说，朋友是第二个自我。

## 实践演练

I. 找出每组句子中的一处错误并且改正。

1. The instructor suggested that we found ways to make mends, apologize to people, or take some action to right any wrongdoing.
2. There's always something to suggest that you should never be who you wanted to be. Your choice is to take it or keep on moving.
3. A pious man is one who would be an atheist if the king be.
4. It is curious that our own offenses can seem so much less heinous than the offenses of others.
5. Eldon copied the book twice over with his own hand, so that the book became, as it was, part of his own mind.
6. It is necessary that a general was great as a man of business as well as a warrior.
7. If I'd known I had lived this long, I'd have taken better care of myself.
8. Jack would be a gentleman if he can speak French.
9. If every man was not to be the architect of his own character, he would be a fatalist, and irresponsible creature of circumstances.
10. Most of you wish you are in someone else's shoes, and yet, when you get a chance to trade your problems for theirs, none of you will.

II. 每题有四处划线的地方，其中一处存在错误，请找出并加以改正。

1. How nice it was 【A】 if we all had 【B】 a genie who could help 【C】 us finish what we begin 【D】.
2. Loneliness is 【A】 all around me. I wish 【B】 I can pass 【C】 through this wall that I've made 【D】.
3. If all the good people were 【A】 clever, and all the clever people were 【B】 good, the world would be 【C】 nicer than what it was 【D】.
4. It is hard to tell if a man is telling 【A】 the truth when you knew 【B】 you would lie 【C】 if you were 【D】 in his place.
5. It seems as if a man's weak points might develop 【A】 from his strong points. If his strong points were exaggerated 【B】, or found 【C】 expression at a wrong time or in a wrong place, they may become 【D】 weak points.

### III. 使用所提供动词的正确形式填空。

1. I think it is time they \_\_\_\_\_(teach) a lesson.
2. If folly were grief, every house \_\_\_\_\_(weep).
3. He speaks as if he \_\_\_\_\_(creep) into one's mouth.
4. It is foolish to tear one's hair in grief as though sorrow \_\_\_\_\_(make) less with baldness.
5. He looks as big as if he \_\_\_\_\_(eat) bull beef.
6. If merely "feeling good" could decide, drunkenness \_\_\_\_\_(be) the supremely valid human experience.
7. That is part of the technique of teaching, which demands that every now and then a teacher \_\_\_\_\_(be) able to put on an act—to enliven a lesson, correct a fault, or award praise.
8. Watching TV requires that one \_\_\_\_\_(stay) home, but a book can go anywhere in the reader's pocket.
9. Bachelors know more about women than married men. If they didn't, they \_\_\_\_\_(marry), too.
10. We act as though it \_\_\_\_\_(be) our mission to bring about the triumph of truth, but our mission is only to fight for it.

### IV. 将下列虚拟表达翻译成汉语。

1. Reading is not a virtue, unless the enjoyment be virtuous.
2. I must lose myself in action lest I should wither in despair.
3. If life were predictable it would cease to be life and be without flavor.
4. It is well that young men should begin at the beginning and occupy the most subordinate positions.
5. Permissiveness is the principle of treating children as if they were adults.
6. Such information would have caused despair in a mind less courageous than that of the general.
7. The celebrated mathematician, Edmund Stone, would never have published a mathematical dictionary, never have found the key to science of

mathematics, if he had given his spare moments to idleness.

8. Deduct all that men of the humbler classes have done for England in the way of inventions only, and see where she would have been but for them.

#### V. 将各句中的汉语部分翻译成英文，要求使用虚拟语气。

1. Without the rain, \_\_\_\_\_(就不会有彩虹).
2. While standards of morality have undergone a change in recent years, \_\_\_\_\_(一个人拥有良好的道德仍很重要).
3. Most people \_\_\_\_\_(能够在小事上取得成功) if they were not troubled by great ambitions.
4. If all parents were happy, fulfilled, courageous human beings, \_\_\_\_\_(他们会把子女培养成同样的人).
5. We must laugh before we are happy, \_\_\_\_\_(以防我们还没来得及笑就死了).
6. Suppose in spring the farmer had left the soil unturned, the seed unsown, the trees untrimmed, and everything neglected, \_\_\_\_\_(现在的结果会如何)?

#### VI. 将下列汉语句子翻译成英文，要求使用虚拟语气。

1. 如果我是一片树叶，我就可以飞遍全世界。
2. 假如死者能复活，那战争就结束了。
3. 如果年轻人拿自己不当回事，那么他们就没有上进心可言。
4. 如果人世间没有死亡，也有必要创造出死亡。
5. 如果每个人都能努力透过孩子的眼睛看人生，每一天都会更美好。
6. 设想如果你失去了现在拥有的一切，你的生活将会怎样。
7. 如果人们都有同样的耐心保持沉默，这个世界会更加幸福。
8. 如果莎士比亚到处去推销《罗密欧与朱丽叶》，那他就不可能写出《麦克白》。

VII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. How I wish that somewhere there \_\_\_\_\_ an island for those who are wise and of good will.  
A. existed B. exists C. will exist D. had existed
2. If everything in life \_\_\_\_\_ right, we \_\_\_\_\_ fight.  
A. had been; should never have to B. was; would never have to  
C. was; should never have had to D. were to; would never have had to
3. May this book in a small way \_\_\_\_\_ to enhance the understanding and friendship between the two peoples.  
A. help B. helps C. will help D. should help
4. We wouldn't lose courage even if we \_\_\_\_\_ again.  
A. were to fail B. would fail C. fail D. have failed
5. What would you do if you \_\_\_\_\_ live your life over again?  
A. do B. can C. could D. are able to
6. If a beard \_\_\_\_\_ a sign of smartness, the goat would be a Socrates.  
A. is B. are C. be D. were
7. They should have insisted but that they \_\_\_\_\_ courage.  
A. lacked B. had lacked  
C. would lack D. would have lacked
8. Man \_\_\_\_\_ in a poor way if he \_\_\_\_\_ restrained by fear of punishment and hope of rewards after death.  
A. would be; had to be B. was; had to be  
C. had been; had to be D. had been; had had to
9. But for his cheerfulness, with so delicate a frame he \_\_\_\_\_ through so vast an amount of self-imposed work.  
A. never has got B. never had got  
C. could never get D. could never have got
10. If Hugh Miller, after toiling all day in a quarry, \_\_\_\_\_ his evenings to rest and recreation, he \_\_\_\_\_ a famous geologist.  
A. devoted; would never have become  
B. had devoted; would never become  
C. devoted; would never become  
D. had devoted; would never have become
11. Without books the development of civilization \_\_\_\_\_ impossible.  
A. be B. had been  
C. were D. would have been

12. Look at the terrible situation I am in! If only I \_\_\_\_\_your advice.

A. follow B. had followed C. would follow D. have followed

13. Few men would live if all \_\_\_\_\_justly.

A. are judged B. be judged C. would be judged D. were judged

## 第21章 直接引语和间接引语

直接引语是指直接叙述说话人所讲内容的表达方式，说话人的话语内容放在引号之间。如：

The pessimist says, “I’ll believe it when I see it.” The optimist says, “I’ll see it when I believe it.”

悲观主义者说：“我看见才会相信。”乐观主义者说：“我相信就会看见。”

Einstein said, “I never consider ease and joyfulness as the purpose of life itself.”

爱因斯坦说：“我从来不把舒适和欢乐看作人生本身的目的。”

Newton said, “If I have seen further than others, it is by standing on the shoulders of giants.”

牛顿说：“如果我比别人看得远些，那是因为站在巨人肩膀上的缘故。”

间接引语是指间接转述说话人所讲内容的表达方式，说话人的话语内容不用引号。和直接引语相比，间接引语发生一些必要的语法变化，包括人称代词、动词时态、时间状语和地点状语等。如：

My father often reminds me not to trust the overnight success.

父亲时常提醒我不要相信一夜之间的成功。

When I was around the age of five, my mother began drilling into me one passionate belief of her life that I must get an education, and only through education could I rise in this world.

当我大约五岁时，母亲开始向我灌输她人生的一个强烈信念：我必须受教育，只有通过教育我才能在上出人头地。

### 21.1 陈述句的间接引语

#### 21.1.1 人称代词的变化

通常，直接引语中的第一人称变为间接引语中的第三人称；直接引语中的第二人称变为间接引语中的第一人称。

直接引语

I 我（主格）

间接引语

he或she 他或她

me 我（宾格）	him或her 他或她
my 我的（主格）	his或her 他的或她的
mine 我的（宾格）	his或hers 他的或她的
we 我们（主格）	they 他们
us 我们（宾格）	them 他们
our 我们的（主格）	their 他们的
ours 我们的（宾格）	theirs 他们的
you 你或你们（主格）	I或we 我或我们
you 你或你们（宾格）	me或us 我或我们
your 你的或你们的（主格）	my或our 我的或我们的
yours 你的或你们的（宾格）	mine或ours 我的或我们的

直接引语中的第三人称转变为间接引语时没有变化。

Martin Luther King told the world, "I have a dream."

马丁·路德·金告诉世界：“我有一个梦想。”（直接引语）

Martin Luther King told the world that he had a dream.

马丁·路德·金告诉世界他有一个梦想。（间接引语）

She told a friend, "I'm not afraid to die, but what I regret is that there is so much work left to be done on earth."

她告诉一位朋友：“我不怕死，但我感到遗憾的是世上还有这么多工作有待完成。”（直接引语）

She told a friend that she's not afraid to die, but what she regretted was that there was so much work left to be done on earth.

她告诉一位朋友，她不怕死，但她感到遗憾的是世上还有这么多工作有待完成。（间接引语）

Byron said, "I love wisdom more than she loves me."

拜伦说：“我爱智慧胜过智慧爱我。”（直接引语）

Byron said that he loved wisdom more than she loved him.

拜伦说，他爱智慧胜过智慧爱他。（间接引语）

Confucius said, "If three of us are walking together, at least one of the other two is good enough to be my teacher."

孔子说：“三人行，必有我师。”（直接引语）

Confucius said that if three of them were walking together, at least one of the other two was good enough to be his teacher.

孔子说，如果他们三个人一起走路，另外两个人中至少有一位可以做他的老师。（间接引语）

有时，间接引语中人称代词的变化未必遵循以上规则。如：



You are able to say to yourself, “I lived through this horror. I can take the next thing that comes along.”

你能够对自己说：“我经历了这种恐惧。我可以承受接下来发生的事情。”（直接引语）

You are able to say to yourself that you lived through that horror and you can take the next thing that comes along.

你能够对自己说，你经历了那种恐惧，你可以承受接下来发生的事情。（间接引语）

Show respect for the other person's opinions. Never say, “You're wrong.”

对他人的观点要尊重。绝不要说：“你错了。”（直接引语）

Show respect for the other person's opinions. Never say that he or she is wrong.

对他人的观点要尊重。绝不要说他（或她）错了。（间接引语）

I told her, “Before I do anything for you, you must do something for yourself.”

我告诉她：“在我帮你之前，你必须为自己先做点什么。”（直接引语）

I told her that before I did anything for her, she must do something for herself.

我告诉她，在我帮她之前，她必须为自己先做点什么。（间接引语）

可见，间接引语中的人称代词的转变需灵活处理，视情况而定，应取决于受话人，即受话人是谁，间接引语就用什么人称代词。

### 21.1.2 时态的变化

如果直接引语之外的主句（或称为直接引语的导语）谓语动词（或称为引述动词）是现在时或将来时，直接引语变为间接引语时，动词的时态不变。如：

Poets say, “Everyone can be the architect of his own happiness.”

诗人们说：“每个人都可以成为自己幸福的建筑师。”（直接引语）

Poets say that everyone can be the architect of his own happiness.

诗人们说，每个人都可以成为自己幸福的建筑师。（间接引语）

He often says, “There is a statue inside every block of stone.”

他常说：“每块石头的心中都有一尊雕像。”（直接引语）

He often says that there is a statue inside every block of stone.

他常说，每块石头的心中都有一尊雕像。（间接引语）

如果直接引语的引述动词是过去时，直接引语变为间接引语时，动词时态的变化规则通常如下：

直接引语	间接引语
一般现在时	一般过去时
现在进行时	过去进行时
现在完成时	过去完成时
一般过去时	过去完成时
过去进行时	过去完成进行时
过去完成时	过去完成时
一般将来时	过去将来时
将来进行时	过去将来进行时
将来完成时	过去将来完成时

He said, "Life is worth living."

他说：“生活值得一过。”（直接引语）

He said that life was worth living.

他说生活值得一过。（间接引语）

Napoleon said, "I succeeded because I willed it; I never hesitated."

拿破仑说：“我成功了，因为我渴望成功，我从未犹豫过。”（直接引语）

Napoleon said that he had succeeded because he had willed it and he had never hesitated.

拿破仑说，他成功了，因为他渴望成功，他从未犹豫过。（间接引语）

Abraham Lincoln said, "I will get ready and then perhaps my chance will come."

亚伯拉罕·林肯说：“我要做好准备，或许我的机遇就会到来。”（直接引语）

Abraham Lincoln said that he would get ready and then perhaps his chance would come.

亚伯拉罕·林肯说他要做好准备，或许他的机遇就会到来。（间接引语）

如果直接引语表达的是一般规律或通常的道理，变为间接引语时动词时态仍然用一般现在时。如：

The ancient Chinese proverb said, "A journey of a thousand miles begins with one step."

中国的古谚说：“千里之行，始于足下。”（直接引语）

The ancient Chinese proverb said that a journey of a thousand miles begins with one step.

中国的古谚说，千里之行，始于足下。（间接引语）

Dewey said, "The deepest urge in human nature is the desire to be important."

杜威说：“人性中最迫切的要求是渴望有价值。”（直接引语）

Dewey said that the deepest urge in human nature is the desire to be important.

杜威说，人性中最迫切的要求是渴望有价值。（间接引语）

He said, "A good speaker is, first of all, a good actor."

他说：“一个好的演说家首先是一个好的演员。”（直接引语）

He said that a good speaker is, first of all, a good actor.

他说，一个好的演说家首先是一个好的演员。（间接引语）

### 21.1.3 时间状语的变化

基本规则如下：

直接引语

ago 以前

now 现在

today 今天

tonight 今晚

yesterday 昨天

tomorrow 明天

the day before yesterday 前天

the day after tomorrow 后天

last week 上周

the previous week 或the week before 一周前

next week 下周

间接引语

before 以前

then 当时

that day 那天

that night 那天晚上

the previous day 前一天

the next (或following) day 第二天

two days before 两天前

in two days' time 两天后

Lincoln started his address by saying, "Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth upon this continent a new nation."

林肯在演说的开始说道：“八十七年前，我们的先辈们在这片大陆上创建了一个新的国度。”（直接引语）

Lincoln started his address by saying that four score and seven years before their fathers had brought forth upon that continent a new nation.  
林肯在演说的开始说道，八十七年前，他们的先辈们在那片大陆上创建了一个新的国度。（间接引语）

He said to his audience, “Now is the time to open the doors of opportunity to all of God’s children.”  
他对听众们说：“现在到了向上帝的所有子女敞开机会之门的时候了。”（直接引语）

He said to his audience that then was the time to open the doors of opportunity to all of God’s children.  
他对听众们说，当时到了向上帝的所有子女敞开机会之门的时候了。（间接引语）

#### 21.1.4 指示代词和地点状语的变化

直接引语	间接引语
this	that
these	those
here	there

Martin Luther King claimed, “With this faith we will be able to hew out of the mountain of despair a stone of hope.”

马丁·路德·金宣称：“有了这一信念，我们将能够从绝望的大山上凿下一块希望之石。”（直接引语）

Martin Luther King claimed that with that faith they would be able to hew out of the mountain of despair a stone of hope.

马丁·路德·金宣称，有了那一信念，他们将能够从绝望的大山上凿下一块希望之石。（间接引语）

He asked us, “How do you prosper here in the best of times and worst of times?”

他问我们：“在最顺利和最艰难的时候，我们怎样在这里获得成功？”（直接引语）

He asked us how we prospered there in the best of times and worst of times.

他问我们，在最顺利和最艰难的时候，我们怎样在那里获得成功。（间接引语）

### 21.1.5 虚拟语气的间接引语

如果虚拟语气变为间接引语，其动词时态保持不变。如：

The captain said to his team, "If we all pulled on one side, the world would be overturned."

队长对队员们说：“假如我们都往一个方向使劲，地球也会被扭转过来。”（直接引语）

The captain said to his team that if they all pulled on one side, the world would be overturned.

队长对队员们说，假如他们都往一个方向使劲，地球也会被扭转过来。（间接引语）

He said, "If trouble had worried me, I had been dead long since."

他说：“假如困难让我忧心忡忡，我早就死了。”（直接引语）

He said that if trouble had worried him, he had been dead long since.

他说，假如困难让他忧心忡忡，他早就死了。（间接引语）

Hesiod said, "If you should put even a little on a little, and should do this often, soon this too would become big."

赫西奥德说：“假如你们一点一滴地做，并且坚持下去，不久也会积少成多。”（直接引语）

Hesiod said that if we should put even a little on a little, and should do that often, soon that too would become big.

赫西奥德说，假如我们一点一滴地做，并且坚持下去，不久也会积少成多。（间接引语）

## 21.2 疑问句的间接引语

如果疑问句转变为间接引语，除了在人称代词、动词时态、时间状语、地点状语等方面遵循上述规则之外，需用陈述句语序，句尾改问号为句号。

### 21.2.1 一般疑问句的间接引语

用whether或if引导。

Benjamin Franklin asked us, "Do you love life?"

本杰明·富兰克林问我们：“你们热爱生活吗？”（直接引语）

Benjamin Franklin asked us whether (或if) we loved life.

本杰明·富兰克林问我们是否热爱生活。（间接引语）

People often ask, "Is there any secret for success?"

人们经常问：“成功有秘诀吗？”（直接引语）

People often ask whether (或if) there is any secret for success.

人们经常问成功是否有秘诀。（间接引语）

### 21.2.2 特殊疑问句的间接引语

保留原有的疑问词，用于引导间接引语。

Ask yourself, “What are the most important things that I can do tomorrow?”

要问自己：“明天我能做的最重要事情是什么呢？”（直接引语）

Ask yourself what are the most important things that you can do tomorrow.

要问自己，明天你能做的最重要事情是什么。（间接引语）

The first question a leader should ask is, “How can I help make those around me more successful?”

领导者应该问的首要问题是：“我怎样帮助周围的人取得更大的成功呢？”（直接引语）

The first question a leader should ask is how he can help make those around him more successful.

领导者应该问的首要问题是他怎样帮助周围的人取得更大的成功。（间接引语）

### 21.2.3 选择疑问句的间接引语

用whether引导间接引语。

Ask yourself, “Do I feel calm or anxious?”

要问一问自己：“我感到头脑冷静，还是焦虑不安呢？”（直接引语）

Ask yourself whether you feel calm or anxious.

要问一问自己感到头脑冷静，还是焦虑不安。（间接引语）

I ask myself, “Am I making my decision with fear or enthusiasm?”

我问自己：“我做决定时是心有恐惧还是满腔热情呢？”（直接引语）

I ask myself whether I am making my decision with fear or enthusiasm.

我问自己做决定时是心有恐惧还是满腔热情。（间接引语）

### 21.2.4 附加疑问句的间接引语

用whether或if引导间接引语。

He asked me, "Work is a big part of your life, isn't it?"

他问我：“工作是你生活的一个重要部分，不是吗？”（直接引语）

He asked me whether (或if) work was a big part of my life.

他问我，工作是否是我生活的一个重要部分。（间接引语）

"Time is enough for anybody to achieve success, right?" I asked.

“时间足以让任何人取得成功，是吗？”我问道。（直接引语）

I asked whether (或if) time was enough for anybody to achieve success.

我问道，时间是否足以让任何人取得成功。（间接引语）

## 21.3 祈使句的间接引语

通常，间接引语的动词用不定式。

Benjamin Franklin told us, "Be slow in choosing a friend."

本杰明·富兰克林告诉我们：“择友宜慎。”（直接引语）

Benjamin Franklin told us to be slow in choosing a friend.

本杰明·富兰克林告诉我们择友宜慎。（间接引语）

A proverb tells us, "Never trouble trouble until trouble troubles you."

有句谚语告诉我们：“无事不惹事，有事不怕事。”（直接引语）

A proverb tells us never to trouble trouble until trouble troubles us.

有句谚语告诉我们，无事不惹事，有事不怕事。（间接引语）

如果是建议，间接引语可以使用suggest doing或者suggest +从句。

Gandhi said, "Let us learn to treasure only the good and reject the evil in everything."

甘地说：“让我们学会珍视一切事物中的善，而排斥一切事物中的恶。”（直接引语）

Gandhi suggested learning to treasure only the good and reject the evil in everything.

甘地建议，要学会珍视一切事物中的善，而排斥一切事物中的恶。（间接引语）

He said, "Love your neighbor, yet don't pull down your hedge."

他说：“爱邻居，但不要拆掉篱笆。”（直接引语）

He suggested that we should love our neighbor, yet should not pull down our hedge.

他建议说，爱邻居，但不要拆掉篱笆。（间接引语）

## 21.4 感叹句的间接引语

可以保留what或how，由what或how引导间接引语，也可以去掉what或how，改用that引导间接引语。感叹句句尾的感叹号要变为句号。

He exclaimed, "What a new face courage puts on everything!"

他喊道：“勇气使一切都改变了模样！”（直接引语）

He exclaimed what a new face courage put on everything. 或 He exclaimed that courage put a new face on everything.

他喊道，勇气使一切都改变了模样。（间接引语）

Socrates said, "How many things I can do without!"

苏格拉底说：“有多少东西我没有也行！”（直接引语）

Socrates said how many things he could do without. 或 Socrates said there were many things he could do without.

苏格拉底说，有许多东西他没有也行。（间接引语）

## 实践演练

### I. 在间接引语中填入正确的代词。

1. "I can't afford to get arrogant about success," he says.

→ He says that \_\_\_\_\_ can't afford to get arrogant about success.

2. She said, "I want to move beyond the hurt and make something of my life."

→ She said \_\_\_\_\_ wanted to move beyond the hurt and make something of \_\_\_\_\_ life.

3. The soldiers, when they heard of his arrival, cried, "We no longer fear dying of our wounds; our friend is among us."

→ The soldiers, when they heard of his arrival, cried that \_\_\_\_\_ no longer feared dying of \_\_\_\_\_ wounds; \_\_\_\_\_ friend was among \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Writing to one of his sons, Buxton said to him, "You are now at that period of life, in which you must now give proofs of principle, determination, and strength of mind, or you must sink into idleness."

→ Writing to one of his sons, Buxton said to him \_\_\_\_\_ was now at that period of life, in which \_\_\_\_\_ must then give proofs of principle, determination, and strength of mind, or \_\_\_\_\_ must sink into idleness.



5. Nelson once said, "I owe all my success in life to having been always a quarter of an hour before my time."

→ Nelson once said that \_\_\_\_\_ owed all \_\_\_\_\_ success in life to having been always a quarter of an hour before \_\_\_\_\_ time.

## II. 在间接引语中填入正确的时态。

1. The sieve says to the needle, "You have a hole in your tail."

→ The sieve says to the needle that he \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a hole in his tail.

2. "I will help in any way I can," she said.

→ She said she \_\_\_\_\_ (will) help in any way she \_\_\_\_\_ (can).

3. Albert Einstein said, "I think I used about 25% of my intellectual capacity during my life."

→ Albert Einstein said he \_\_\_\_\_ (think) he \_\_\_\_\_ (use) about 25% of his intellectual capacity during his life.

4. When Napoleon was told that the Alps stood in the way of his armies, he said, "There shall be no Alps."

→ When Napoleon was told that the Alps stood in the way of his armies, he said there \_\_\_\_\_ (shall) be no Alps.

5. Once when Domenichino was blamed for his slowness in finishing a picture, he answered, "I am continually painting it within myself."

→ Once when Domenichino was blamed for his slowness in finishing a picture, he answered that he \_\_\_\_\_ (continually paint) it within himself.

6. The nobleman said to the sculptor, "You charge me fifty sequins for a bust that cost you only ten days' labor." The artist said, "You forget that I have been learning for thirty years to make that bust in ten days."

→ The nobleman said to the sculptor that he \_\_\_\_\_ (charge) him fifty sequins for a bust that cost him only ten days' labor. The artist said that the nobleman \_\_\_\_\_ (forget) that he \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) for thirty years to make that bust in ten days.

## III. 将下列直接引语转换成间接引语。

1. Language teachers often offer advice to language learners: "Read as much as you can in the new language."

2. "I always dreamed of having a college education and now I'm getting one!" she told me.

3. I said to them, “ I would like you to read a lot of books this year, but I want you to read them only for pleasure.”

4. My friend asked me, “Why do you teach?”

5. The reporter asked Schwarzenegger: “Now that you have retired from bodybuilding, what do you plan to do next?” Schwarzenegger answered very calmly and confidently: “I am going to be the #1 movie star in Hollywood.”

6. As I lifted my body to its full height and held up my head, little signals went to my brain saying, “You’re confident. You are somebody of worth.”

7. When I tearfully told my boss my plans this incredible leader whom I respect so much replied, “Precede with reckless abandon and you will be successful.”

8. If a friend does evil to you, say to him, “ I forgive you for what you did to me, but how can I forgive you for what you did to yourself?”

#### IV. 将下列间接引语转换成直接引语。

1. Mozart said work was his chief pleasure.

2. The fly sat upon the axletree of a chariot-wheel and said that he raised a lot of dust.

3. A young father asked an elderly neighbor how strict parents should be with their children.

4. The pessimist says he’ll believe it when he sees it. The optimist says he’ll see it when he believes it.

5. Our teacher reminded every day that we could do anything we set our minds to, no matter how impossible it might seem or how strong the opposition was.

## V. 将下列带有直接引语的句子翻译成汉语。

1. If you spit in a timid man's eye, he says, "It is raining."
2. When he was asked, "What is a friend?" He said, "One soul inhabiting two bodies."
3. Many people's tombstones should read: "Died at 30, buried at 60."
4. I have learned to ask myself, "What's the worst that can happen?"
5. Instead of "Will it bring in lots of money or advance my career?", we need to ask ourselves, "Will I enjoy doing this?"
6. Immature love says: "I love you because I need you." Mature love says: "I need you because I love you."
7. A nobleman once contemptuously asked a sage, "What have you got by all your philosophy?" "At least I have got society in myself" was the wise man's reply.
8. "Nothing is so mild and gentle as courage; nothing so cruel and pitiless as cowardice." says a wise man.

## VI. 将下列带有间接引语的句子翻译成汉语。

1. As Stevenson has said, being happy is a duty.
2. You should have the courage to say to yourself that you are ignorant.
3. Bacon says that a man dies as often as he loses a friend.
4. When someone asks you a question you don't want to answer, smile and say why he wants to know.
5. People often ask me if I know the secret of success, and if I could tell others how to make their dreams come true. My answer is that they should

do it by working.

6. One woman said that she put love into her family as an investment in her future, and it was the best investment she could make.

## 第22章 强调

英语中达到强调效果的手段很多，既可以使用特定词汇，也可以运用特殊句型，还可以调整语序。

### 22.1 do表示强调

助动词do可以置于谓语动词之前，对该动词加以强调，可理解为“的确”、“确实”、“真的”、“一定”等。被强调动词使用原形，do有时态和人称变化，表现为do, does和did三种形式。

Adversity *does* best discover virtue.

逆境最易见美德。

While God *does* challenge us, he wants us to be victorious.

尽管上帝向我们提出挑战，但他希望我们胜利。

Failure doesn't mean you should give up. It *does* mean you must try harder.

失败并不意味着你应该放弃，而意味着你必须更加努力。

We got confidence and spirit, and we *did* win.

我们有信心和精神，我们的确赢了。

### 22.2 副词表示强调

许多副词可以用于加强语气。

Man can't live on bread *alone*.

人不能只靠面包活着。

*Only* virtue *never* dies.

只有美德万古长存。

*Never* hit a man when he is down.

绝不要落井下石。

Wasting others' time is *no* different from killing them.

浪费他人的时间无异于谋杀。（no作副词，修饰形容词，表示与该词意义相反。再如：no easy很难，no small很大。）

There is *really* no such thing as bad weather, only different kinds of good weather.

其实不存在坏天气，只有不同的好天气。

## 22.3 双重否定表示强调

在同一句话中，前后同时出现两个否定意义的词，构成双重否定，表达语气强烈的肯定含义。

What is natural is *never disgraceful*.

自然的东西绝不会不优美。

*Nobody* is *without* his faults.

人无完人。

The sky is *not less* blue because the blind man does not see it.

天空不会因为盲人看不见就不那么蓝了。

There is *nobody* who has *never* met with some good chance or other in life. Simply he has not seized one.

生活中每个人都曾遇到过好的机会。只是没有抓住。

*No way* is *impossible* to courage.

对勇者而言，没有什么不可能。

## 22.4 强调句型

基本结构为：It is (was) + 被强调部分 + that (who) + 句子的其余部分。  
被强调的部分一般是主语、宾语或状语。如果叙述的是现在和将来的事情，it之后用is；如果叙述的是过去的事情，it之后用was。当强调的是任何事物时，都可使用that引出句子的其余部分；当强调的是人时，除用that外，也可使用who。

### 22.4.1 强调主语

*It* is the first step *that* costs the most.

万事开头难。（原句：The first step costs the most.）

*It* is the small actions we take every day *that* create our destinies.

创造命运的是我们每天采取的次要行动。（原句：The small actions we take every day create our destinies.）

*It* is not only what you do, but also how you do it *that* makes the difference.

重要的不仅是你做什么，而且是你如何去做。（原句：Not only what you do, but also how you do it makes the difference.）

*It* is the weak *who* are cruel.

残酷的是弱者。（原句：The weak are cruel.）

#### 22.4.2 强调宾语

*It is yourself who you should first believe in.*

首先相信的应该是自己。（原句：You should first believe in yourself.）

*It is test that life offers.*

人生提供的是考验。（原句：Life offers test.）

*It is the meaning of courage that I learn from successful people.*

我从成功者身上学到的是勇气的意义。（原句：I learn the meaning of courage from successful people.）

#### 22.4.3 强调状语

*It is while we are young that the habit of industry is formed.*

勤奋习惯的养成是在年轻时。（原句：The habit of industry is formed while we are young.）

*It is in your moments of decision that your destiny is shaped.*

决定命运的是当你做出决定的时刻。（原句：Your destiny is shaped in your moments of decision.）

*It is often for want of will, rather than of means, that men fail to succeed.*

失败的原因往往是由于缺乏意志，而不是缺乏条件。（原句：Men fail to succeed often for want of will rather than of means.）

在not...until句型中，当强调until引导的时间状语时，not需置于until之前，构成It is (was) not until...that句式。

*It's not until we have tried that we recognize our inner strength.*

只有当我们尝试之后才会意识到内在的力量。（原句：We do not recognize our inner strength until we have tried.）

*It's not until you have lost health that you truly appreciate its value.*

直到失去了健康才真正懂得它的价值。（原句：You don't truly appreciate its value until you have lost health.）

#### 22.4.4 强调句型的否定表达

*It is not by the grey of the hair that you know the age of the heart.*

了解内心的年龄不是看白发。（原句：You don't know the age of the heart by the grey of the hair.）

*It is not what happens to me that matters but what happens in me.*

发生在我身上的事情并不重要，重要的是发生在我内心的事情。

（原句：What happens to me doesn't matter, but what happens in me matters.）

*It isn't what you have or who you are that makes you happy or unhappy.*  
使你幸福的并不是你的拥有或者你的地位。（原句：What you have or who you are doesn't make you happy or unhappy.）

*It is not violence that best conquers hate.*

最能战胜仇恨的不是暴力。（原句：Violence doesn't best conquer hate.）

#### 22.4.5 强调句型的问句表达

基本模式主要有：What is it that...? How is it that...? Why is it that...?等。

*What is it that gives you the feeling that you are fulfilling your potential?*

是什么让你感到正在发挥自己的潜力呢？（原句：What gives you the feeling that you are fulfilling your potential?）

*How is it that great people from humble beginnings manage to create lives that inspire us?*

伟大人物是怎样创造出激励我们的人生的呢？（原句：How do great people manage to create lives that inspire us?）

*Why is it that some people seem better able to cope with life's hardships than others?*

为什么有些人似乎比别人更有能力应对人生的困难呢？（原句：Why do some people seem better able to cope with life's hardships than others?）

*Why is it that so many of us see the golden moments in the stream of life rush past us and recognize nothing but sand?*

为什么我们有这么多人看着人生河流的黄金时光从身边急速流逝，却只看到黄沙呢？（原句：Why do so many of us see the golden moments in the stream of life rush past us and recognize nothing but sand?）

#### 22.5 what表示强调

what引导主语从句可以强调原句中的主语或宾语。

*What makes life dreary is the want of motive.*

令生活单调乏味的是缺乏目标。（强调the want of motive. 原句：The want of motive makes life dreary.）



What's important is that one strives to achieve a goal.

重要的是为达到目标而努力。（强调that one strives to achieve a goal. 原句：That one strives to achieve a goal is important.）

After you reach a certain point, money becomes unimportant. What matters is success.

当达到一定阶段后，金钱变得无足轻重。重要的是成功。（强调success. 原句：After you reach a certain point, money becomes unimportant. Success matters.）

## 22.6 倒装表示强调

Never was a good job done without great effort.

从来不出色工作就完不成巨大努力。

Never should a man stay in a closed-door room.

一个人绝不应呆在封闭的屋子中。

Long and steep is the path to virtue.

通往美德的道路漫长而陡峭。

## 22.7 前移表示强调

和倒装有所区别，前移并不提前动词，而只是把其他原本放在别处的成分置于句首，加以强调。

What we love to do we find time to do.

喜欢做的事情我们会找到时间去做。（正常语序：We find time to do what we love to do.）

Anything one man can imagine, other men can make real.

一个人能想到的，别人就能实现。（正常语序：Other men can make real anything one man can imagine.）

All I am, or can be I owe to my angel mother.

我之所有，我之所能，都归功于我天使般的母亲。（正常语序：I owe all I am, or can be to my angel mother.）

A slip of the foot you may soon recover, but a slip of the tongue you may never get over.

失足可以很快弥补，失言却可能永远无法补救。（正常语序：You may soon recover a slip of the foot, but you may never get over a slip of the tongue.）

## 22.8 比较句型表示强调

有多种比较句型可以达到强调的目的。

There is no greater riches than health.

最大的财富莫过于健康。

Nothing can be more hurtful to the service than the neglect of discipline.

对工作损害最大的莫过于忽视纪律。

There is none so blind as those who will not see.

拒而不见者最盲。

There is none so deaf as those who will not hear.

拒而不听者最聋。

Nothing gives one person so much advantage over another as to remain always cool under all circumstances.

在一切境遇中都安之若素最能使一个人获得强于他人的优势。

## 实践演练

### I. 根据汉语翻译写出各句所缺的否定词。

1. There is not a single thing in the world \_\_\_\_\_ a dual nature.

世上的一切事物无不具有两重性。

2. The nature of wolves will \_\_\_\_\_ change.

狼的本性绝不会改变。

3. There is no secret of success \_\_\_\_\_ hard work.

除勤奋之外，没有成功的秘诀。

4. Our labor will not be \_\_\_\_\_.

我们的努力不会白费。

5. To invent a lie about my mistake is the \_\_\_\_\_ thing I will do.

编造谎言掩盖自己的错误是我最不愿做的。

### II. 将下列英文句子译成汉语，注意否定意义的各种英文表达方式。

1. Pure gold does not dread fire.

2. There is no denying the truth.

3. He will die of hunger before he will steal.
4. All that praise you are not necessarily friends.
5. Those without moral standards are more dead than alive.
6. A home without love is no more a home than a body without a soul is a man.
7. Everyone is happy, but everyone does not know it.
8. Mozart was not an accomplished pianist at the age of eight as the result of spending his days in front of a television set.

### III. 将下列带有双重否定的英文句子译成汉语。

1. Idle folks lack no excuses.
2. There is no pain so great that time will not soften.
3. Men are never too old to learn.
4. We would never not thank a friend or co-worker for helping us out.
5. No one can say that a life with childhood, manhood and old age is not a beautiful arrangement.
6. No cry of human suffering which reached him was disregarded.
7. It is not uncommon for a great scholar to be ignorant in everyday affairs.
8. The failed experiments are no less valuable than the experiments that ultimately prove successful.
9. There is not a worm we tread upon, nor a leaf that dances merrily as it falls before the autumn winds, but calls for our study and admiration.

IV. 将下列英文句子译成汉语，注意这类形式否定，但意义肯定的表达。

1. That which is good can't be done too soon.
2. You can't be too much on your guard.
3. One can't be too careful with his work.
4. Good manners cannot be valued sufficiently.
5. It's impossible to exaggerate the necessity of serious reading.
6. One's world outlook cannot but come through in what one says and does.
7. It is a good horse that never stumbles.
8. My parents could not give me books enough.

V. 把下列强调句型还原为普通句式。

1. It's the farmer's care that makes the field bear.
2. It's the mind that ennobles a person, not the blood.
3. In a happy marriage it is the wife who provides the climate, and the husband the landscape.
4. It is this childish wonder that gives enthusiastic people such a youthful air, whatever their age.
5. It's often after we get involved in a task that we become highly motivated.
6. It was in the dull but unflinching drudgery of the early part of his career that he laid the foundation of his future success.

7. It is you, and only you, who determine who you will be and what you will do for the rest of your lives.

8. Don't stand in someone else's shadow when it's your sunlight that should lead the way.

## VI. 使用强调句型对划线部分加以强调。

1. My heart makes my song.

2. The bridle and spur makes a good horse.

3. The enemy keeps the sentinel watchful.

4. Long experience is really fruitful, and the wisdom born of experience can be used without becoming a burden in old age.

5. We begin to know only when we forget all our learning.

6. Great men win recognition in the darker areas of science.

## VII. 将下列强调句型译成汉语。

1. Usually, it is the anticipation of failure that paralyzes, not failure itself.

2. It is not helps, but obstacles, not facilities, but difficulties, that make men.

3. It is not the place, nor the condition, but the mind alone that can make anyone happy or miserable.

4. It is only when the mind and character slumber that the dream can be seen.

5. It is not your occupation that makes you succeed or fail. It is how you see yourself and your occupation.

6. It is only when the stress gets out of control that it can lead to poor performance and ill health.

7. It is not our external resources that determine our success or failure, but rather our own belief in ourselves and our willingness to create a life according to our highest aspirations.

### VIII. 使用强调句型翻译下列句子。

1. 充实身体的是思想。
2. 造就哲学家的并不是胡子。
3. 往往在痛苦中我们成长得最多。
4. 在巨大的危险中我们可以看到伟大的勇气。
5. 唯有希望使我们乐于活下去。
6. 鸟美不全在羽毛。
7. 行为的好坏取决于动机。
8. 教我们摆脱艺术规则的应该是艺术本身。
9. 带来快乐的既不是财富也不是名声，而是平静和工作。

### IX. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. He feels \_\_\_\_\_dismayed at his failure.  
A. not all B. not the least C. not the little D. not less
2. A good story is \_\_\_\_\_for being told twice.  
A. neither the better B. neither the worse  
C. none the better D. none the worse
3. The boy was going to answer his mother back, but he \_\_\_\_\_it.  
A. thought better of B. thought less of

- C. thought more of    D. thought worse of
4. It is only \_\_\_\_\_faceted that its brilliance and beauty are revealed to the eye.  
A. a rough diamond is    B. when a rough diamond is  
C. that a rough diamond is    D. a rough diamond
5. It is the intelligent eye of the careful observer \_\_\_\_\_gives the apparently trivial phenomena their value.  
A. he    B. it    C. which    D. who
6. She is \_\_\_\_\_matter-of-fact.  
A. nothing if    B. nothing if not  
C. nothing when    D. nothing when not
7. Men's natures are alike; \_\_\_\_\_their habits that separate them.  
A. it is    B. that is    C. there are    D. they are
8. It is not the world that has to adjust to us. It is \_\_\_\_\_that have to adjust to the world.  
A. our    B. ourselves    C. us    D. we
9. It is \_\_\_\_\_that we shall ultimately win the goal of true greatness.  
A. only hard and dangerous endeavor  
B. only for hard and dangerous endeavor  
C. only making hard and dangerous endeavor  
D. only through hard and dangerous endeavor
10. There is no man \_\_\_\_\_has his faults.  
A. but    B. that    C. who    D. yet
11. There is \_\_\_\_\_that everyone needs love.  
A. no denying    B. not to deny    C. not denied    D. not to be denied
12. \_\_\_\_\_is not the suffering but the cause which makes a martyr.  
A. It    B. This    C. That    D. There
13. It is \_\_\_\_\_that sweetness will come into the mouth.  
A. not saying "Honey, honey"    B. not because saying "Honey, honey"  
C. not we say "Honey, honey"    D. not with saying "Honey, honey"
14. It is \_\_\_\_\_that makes the gentleman.  
A. not the coat    B. not because of the coat  
C. not by wearing the coat    D. not depending on the coat
15. It is \_\_\_\_\_that our ideals can bear fruit; divorced from it, they remain barren.  
A. only marriage with the world    B. only in marriage with the world

C. only to be married with the world D. only getting married with the world



## 第23章 倒装

有时，出于强调的需要或者由于语法的规定，句子需构成倒装。倒装即把谓语动词置于主语之前。根据谓语动词位置变动的程度，倒装可分为部分倒装和完全倒装。部分倒装仅仅将系动词、助动词或情态动词提前，而完全倒装则将谓语动词全部提前。

### 23.1 部分倒装

#### 23.1.1 用于疑问句

If winter comes, can spring be far behind?

冬天来了，春天还会远吗？

Do I not destroy my enemies when I make them my friends?

当我化敌为友时，难道我没有消灭敌人吗？

What is a man's first duty?

一个人的首要职责是什么呢？

How are we to use the passions to understand our circumstances?

我们如何利用情感去理解我们的境况呢？

#### 23.1.2 用于以only+状语位于句首的句子

当句子以only + 状语开头时，应构成部分倒装。

a only + 单词或短语状语位于句首

Only by diligence and honesty can one succeed in life.

只有依靠勤奋和诚实一个人才能在人生中取得成功。

Only by working hard can we reap a bumper harvest.

只有通过辛勤劳动我们才能收获丰硕的成果。

Only through education can you rise in this world.

只有通过教育才能在这个世界上发展。

Only by showing your sincerity can you win the confidence of your friends.

只有通过表现诚意才能赢得朋友的信任。

b only + 状语从句位于句首

Only when one plunges into the powerful current of times will one's life shine brilliantly.

一个人只有投身于时代的伟大洪流，他的生命才会闪耀光彩。

Only if you develop good listening skills early will you be able to gather the information you need to succeed.

只有早些掌握良好的倾听技能才能收集到你成功所需要的信息。

Only if you have been in the deepest valley can you ever know how magnificent it is to be on the highest mountain.

只有走过最深的低谷才能体会到站在高山之巅的辉煌。

要特别注意，当only位于句首修饰主语时，句子并不倒装。

Only the selfless can be fearless.

无私者才能无畏。

Only the open and upright life is the real peaceful life.

只有光明磊落的生活才是真正的、心安理得的生活。

Only the person who has faith in himself is able to be faithful to others.

只有对自己有信心的人才能对别人守信用。

Only those who have the patience to do simple things perfectly ever acquire the skill to do difficult things easily.

只有那些有耐心把事情做得完善的人才能学会把复杂事情做得容易的技巧。

### 23.1.3 用于否定意义状语开头的句子

当句子以否定意义状语开头时，应构成部分倒装。常见的否定意义状语有：

not 不 never 决不

little 一点也不 seldom 不常

nor 不 nowhere 任何地方也不

rarely 不常 hardly 几乎不

scarcely 几乎不 hardly...(when) 一.....(就)

scarcely...(when) 一.....(就) in vain 徒劳

no more 不再 no longer 不再

not until 直到.....才 no sooner...(than) 一.....(就)

not only ...(but also) 不仅.....(而且) at no point 在任何时候都不

at no time 在任何时候都不 by no means 绝不

in no case 在任何情况下都不 in no sense 绝不

in no way 绝不 on no account 绝不

on no condition 绝不 on no consideration 绝不

under no circumstances 绝不 not a word 一句话也没有

never in the world 绝不

nowhere in the world 世界上任何地方都不

Never was a good job done without great effort.

没有卓绝的努力好工作是完不成的。

Never again will I pity or belittle myself.

我将再也不会怜悯自己或者贬低自己。

Nor are the insights of happiness limited to what is near around you.

幸福的视野并不局限于你周围的事物。

Not only have we forgotten how to laugh, but forgotten how important it is.

我们不仅忘记了如何笑，而且忘记了笑的重要性。

Not only does building a strong family lay the groundwork for future success, but it also gives life deeper meaning.

建立一个强有力的家庭不仅可以为未来的成功打下基础，而且还会赋予生活更深刻的意义。

Not until people can completely trust you will you be able to positively influence them.

直到人们完全信赖你的时候你才能对他们产生积极影响。(比较自然语序：You will not be able to positively influence people until they can completely trust you.)

No longer do I curse at the world for my lack of the good things in life.

我不再因为得不到生活中的美好事物而诅咒世界。

To no man will we refuse justice.

对所有人都应给予正义。

Under no circumstances will books desert you.

书籍绝不会背弃你。

Rarely does a person succeed when he does not believe in himself.

如果一个人不相信自己，很少能成功。

Too often we believe others' success is due to some special secret. But rarely is success so mysterious.

我们往往认为，别人的成功是由于某种秘诀。但成功极少是如此神秘的。

#### 23.1.4 用于以neither，nor开头的句子

neither与nor的意义和用法在此处完全相同。当前一句为否定表达，而后一句也表达否定意义时，后一句以neither或nor开头，表示“也不”，并构成部分倒装。

Their failure was not final, and neither is yours.

他们的失败并非决定终生的，你的失败也并非如此。

Where there are no goals, neither will there be significant accomplishments.

没有目标，就不会有重大成就。

It is not beauty, nor is it wealth that will give you friends.

使你得到朋友的，既不是美丽，也不是财富。

Success is not the magic ticket to the kingdom of happiness, nor is it the final resting place.

成功不是进入幸福王国的神奇证件，也不是最后的驻足地。

### 23.1.5 用于以so开头的句子

当前一句为肯定表达，而后一句表达的情况和前一句相同时，可以so开头，并构成倒装。

Challenges teach you something about yourself. So does change.

挑战使你认识自己，变化也可以。

Reading and writing are both forms of communication. So are speaking and listening.

阅读和写作都是交流的形式，说话和倾听也是。

As long as enthusiasm holds out, so will new opportunities.

只要热情不减，就会出现新的机会。

The man who believes he can do something is probably right, and so is the man who believes he can't.

相信自己能有所成就的人可能是对的，认为自己不行的人也是对的。

在表示前后两句的肯定表达情况相同时，也常用as...，so...句型，后一句常用倒装语序。

As a man sows, so shall he reap.

种豆得豆，种瓜得瓜。

As a man lives, so shall he die.

人有生必有死。

Just as first impressions are memorable, so are last impressions.

正如第一印象令人难忘一样，最后的印象也同样令人难忘。

As a well-spent day brings happy sleep, so does a well-used life bring happy death.

充实的一天带来甜美的睡眠，充实的一生带来甜美的死亡。

As land is improved by sowing it with various seeds, so is the mind by exercising it with different studies.

土地因播种不同的种子而改良，智力通过各科的学习来提高。

As today's dead flower carries the seed of tomorrow's bloom, so does today's sadness carry the seed of tomorrow's joy.

正如今天枯萎的花朵结出明日繁荣的种子，今天的悲伤结出明日欢乐的种子。

### 23.1.6 用于以某些副词或状语开头的句子

当有些副词或状语位于句首时，句子常构成部分倒装。这类副词或状语有so, always, often, particularly, many times或many a time等。

So determined is our action that what is a possibility today may be a reality tomorrow.

我们的行动如此坚决，以至于今天的可能性明天将变为现实。

Always will I bathe my days in the golden glow of enthusiasm.

我将永远让自己的时光沐浴在热情的金色光辉之中。

Always will I seek the seed of triumph in every adversity.

我将永远在每一个逆境中寻找胜利的种子。

Many times have I heard you say that anyone could sell goods if he applied himself to learning the principles of selling.

很多次我听您讲到，如果专心学习销售原则，任何人都能推销商品。

Only the deaf appreciate hearing, only the blind realize the manifold blessings that lie in sight. Particularly does this observation apply to those who have lost sight and hearing in adult life.

只有失聪者才会珍惜听觉，只有失明者才会意识到视觉所蕴涵的多种幸福。这一说法尤其适用于那些在成年丧失视觉和听觉的人。

### 23.1.7 用于让步状语从句

当让步状语从句使用连词though, as或that时，即可构成倒装。首先需要明确的是，这种倒装较为特殊，需将从句末尾的单词或词组提前至句首，包括名词（不加冠词）、动词原形、形容词或副词。再者，用连词though时，句子可倒装也可不倒装，而用连词as或that时，句子则必须倒装，所以用though时句子的倒装是自愿性的，而用as或that时，句子的倒装是强制性的。

Child that he is, he can tell right from wrong.

尽管他是个孩子，却能明辨是非。

Hard as they are, diamonds can be carved if you keep on.

尽管钻石很坚硬，但如果你坚持不懈也可以雕琢。

Old though he was, he was not ashamed to learn.

尽管他老了，但并不耻于学习。

Difficult though the task was, they managed to accomplish it in time.

虽然任务艰巨，但他们还是设法如期完成。(比较：Though the task was difficult, they managed to accomplish it in time.)

### 23.1.8 用于as引导的原因状语从句

当原因状语从句由as引导时，可以构成倒装，方式同让步状语从句。

Power, lodged as it must be in human hands, will ever be liable to abuse.

由于权力必须掌握在人的手里，所以总是容易被滥用。

### 23.1.9 用于虚拟语气

在虚拟语气中，可以构成部分倒装，主要有如下三种情况。

#### a 省略if的虚拟倒装

当省略if时，从句则构成部分倒装。

The soul would have no rainbow had the eyes no tears.

假若眼中没有泪水，心灵就没有彩虹。(相当于The soul would have no rainbow if the eyes had no tears. )

Could we see when and where we are to meet again, we would be more tender when we bid our friends goodbye.

假如我们能预知何时何地重逢，和朋友道别时就会更为情真意浓。

(相当于If we could see when and where we are to meet again we would be more tender when we bid our friends goodbye. )

#### b whether或though引导的状语从句中的虚拟倒装

在whether或though引导的状语从句中，如果是主系表结构，当省略whether或though时，系动词用原形be的形式，并且提前至句首。

Be it ever so humble, there is no place like home.

即使家中非常寒酸，任何地方也不如家好。

Be a man ever so successful, he should not be proud.

即使一个人很成功，他也不应该骄傲。

He is the happiest, be he king or peasant, who finds peace in his home.

不管国王还是农夫，只要家庭和睦，就最幸福。

#### c 另有一类表示让步的习惯表达也用倒装语序，如：come what may(不管发生什么)，say what you will(不论你说什么)，cost what it may(不惜任何代价)等。

Do what is right, come what may.

不管发生什么，都要做该做的事情。(相当于Do what is right, whatever may come.)

Say what you will, I shall trust to my own judgment.

不管你说什么，我都会依靠自己的判断力。(相当于Whatever you will say, I shall trust to my own judgment.)

### 23.1.10 用于谓语动词原形位于句首的句子

有时，为了强调谓语动词，将其原形置于句首，而助动词或情态动词不提前。

He was still able to play the game. And play he did.

他仍然能够参加比赛，而且他的确参加了比赛。

I have not learned to use kind words but improve I will, through practice.

我还没有学会使用礼貌语言，但我会通过实践进步。

Roam his intellect does, from the subatomic realm to the far reaches of the universe.

他的智力的确在漫游，从亚原子王国到宇宙的遥远区域。

## 23.2 完全倒装

### 23.2.1 用于存在句型

There is a remedy for all things but death.

除死亡之外，一切事情都有补救的方法。

There is no friend so faithful as a good book.

最忠实的朋友莫过于一本好书。

There is nothing that costs less than civility.

没有什么比谦恭成本更少。

### 23.2.2 用于here, now, then等开头的句子

动词多为be, come, go等，这类句子的功能多用作提醒他人。

Here is a basic rule for winning success.

这里有一个赢得成功的基本准则。

Now is the time to take action.

采取行动的时候到了。

### 23.2.3 用于方位状语开头的句子

如果表示地点或表示方向的状语位于句首，句子往往构成完全倒装。

In books are embalmed the greatest thoughts of all ages.

古今伟大的思想均永载于书籍之中。

Out of every crisis comes the chance to be reborn.  
重生的机会来自每一次危机。

#### 23.2.4 用于直接引语在前的句子

当直接引语在前，某人的话语动作在后，则描述某人话语动作的句子可以构成完全倒装。

“Say no more,” protested the salesman.

“不要再说了，”这位销售员抗议道。

“I did not know that,” exclaimed Tom.

“我不知道，”汤姆大声嚷道。

“I shall never forget this day,” sobbed Johnson.

“我永远也忘不了今天，”约翰逊啜泣道。

“I’m not certain that my message had any value to those people,” sighed Hafid.

“我不能肯定我的话对那些人有价值，”哈菲德叹气道。

#### 23.2.5 用于主系表结构的句子

在主系表结构的句子中，出于强调的目的，把表语提前，构成完全倒装。

Vital to every worthwhile operation is cooperation.

对任何有价值的行动而言，合作至关重要。

The most bankrupt is the person who has lost his enthusiasm.

最惨的破产是丧失自己的热情。

Happy is the man who learns from the misfortunes of others.

从他人的不幸中吸取教训的人会有福气。

#### 23.2.6 用于主语过长的句子

如果句子主语过长，为了保持句式平衡，以避免头重脚轻，可以构成完全倒装。有时，这样做达到既取得句子平衡，又构成强调的双重目的。

Happy are those who dream dreams and are willing to pay the price to make them come true.

心怀梦想并愿意为之付出代价的人是幸福的。

With success come changes to which you must adjust.

伴随成功而来的是必须加以适应的变化。

Rough is the road that leads to the heights of greatness.

通往伟大巅峰的道路是坎坷不平的。



Behind me is the bottomless abyss of the past. In front is the future that will swallow everything that befalls me today.

我的背后是过去的无底深渊。前面是未来，要吞噬今天所发生的一切。

## 实践演练

I. 在下列倒装句式的空白处填入恰当的系动词、助动词或情态动词。

1. As we decide and choose, so \_\_\_\_\_our lives formed.
2. As a moth gnaws at a garment, so \_\_\_\_\_envy consume a man.
3. We do not, most of us, choose to die; nor \_\_\_\_\_we choose the time or conditions of our death.
4. Only when a man is safely buried under six feet of earth \_\_\_\_\_he in a position to give advice with any certainty and then he is silent.
5. If one has no greed and arrogance about life, one will not worry about death while living, nor \_\_\_\_\_he yearn for life while dying.
6. Not a moment \_\_\_\_\_the fly stop humming, yet everyone means to keep it silent forever.
7. \_\_\_\_\_the little Scotch lad, Ferguson, allowed the busy brain to go to sleep while he tended sheep on the hillside, instead of calculating the position of the stars by a string of beads, he would never have become a famous astronomer.
8. No one ever heard of state freedom, much less \_\_\_\_\_anyone ever hear of state morals. Freedom and morals are the exclusive possession of individuals.
9. \_\_\_\_\_it true or false, what is said about men often has as much influence upon their lives, and especially upon their destinies, as what they do.
10. Others may forget you but never \_\_\_\_\_I.
11. A person with no experience of hardships cannot enjoy a truly easy life, nor \_\_\_\_\_a person who has never tasted loneliness know the true worth of love.
12. Just as a physical mirror serves as the vehicle to reflection, so \_\_\_\_\_all of the people in our lives.

13. So great \_\_\_\_\_ the influence daily exercised by parents over their children by living a life before their eyes that perhaps the best system of parental instruction might be summed up in these two words: "Improve yourself."

## II. 将下列倒装句式还原成正常语序。

1. Plato is dear to me, but dearer still is truth.
2. Cunning as a fox is, it is often sold for its skin.
3. Poor though he was, he contrived to live within his small means.
4. The greatest truths are the simplest, and so are the greatest men.
5. It is essential for a teacher to have a genuine capacity for sympathy. Closely related with this is the capacity to be tolerant.

## III. 将下列句子改为倒装语序。

1. The mill clacks in vain if the miller lacks hearing.
2. We can win freedom and happiness only through struggles.
3. Paradise or hell can be found neither above nor below the ground.
4. Though these worlds are different, each is consistent with itself.
5. Cathy makes not only her fellow Australians proud but many around the world.

## IV. 将下列倒装句翻译成汉语。

1. Were there no fools beneath the skies, what were the tricks of being wise?
2. As beauty is in the eyes of the beholder, so is success.

3. Parted though we are, friendship around us unites our hearts together.
4. An easy and luxurious existence does not train men to encounter with difficulty; nor does it awaken that consciousness of power which is so necessary for energetic and effective action in life.
5. So innocent and powerless as they are, standing in a dictionary, how potent words become in the hands of one who knows how to combine them!

V. 使用倒装语序将下列句子翻译成英文。

1. 假如能够回到童年，我就要培养勇气。
2. 随成功而至的是智慧的名声。
3. 尽管生活贫穷，也要热爱你的生活。
4. 只有辛勤劳动我们才能获得大丰收。
5. 尽管我很累，但仍继续工作。
6. 麻雀虽小，五脏俱全。
7. 只有通过表现真诚，你才能博得朋友们的信任。
8. 不论是在演讲中，还是在面试中，没有自信，我们就会表现不佳。

VI. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. Albert Einstein often stressed to interviewers that his accomplishments would certainly have been achieved by others \_\_\_\_\_ lived.  
A. had he never    B. he had never  
C. never had he    D. never he had
2. \_\_\_\_\_ I cease ever to be honest, an ill-gained elevation would only make me the more universally and the more notoriously contemptible.  
A. Could    B. Might    C. Should    D. Would

3. The proverb says that “an empty bag cannot stand upright”; \_\_\_\_\_a man who is in debt.

A. can neither    B. either can

C. neither can    D. or can

4. \_\_\_\_\_for your laziness, you could have finished the assignment by now.

A. Had it not been    B. It were not

C. Weren't it    D. Had not it been

5. West \_\_\_\_\_a greater painter, \_\_\_\_\_injured by too early success.

A. might be; was he not    B. might be; had he not been

C. might have been; was he not    D. might have been; had he not been

6. Nowadays, \_\_\_\_\_anywhere without hearing a principle called win-win.

A. do seldom you go    B. seldom do you go

C. seldom go you    D. you go seldom

7. Giants \_\_\_\_\_these men were in this cause, Granville Sharp was the first, and perhaps the greatest of them all in point of perseverance and energy.

A. although    B. though    C. whereas    D. while

8. Only by diligence and honesty \_\_\_\_\_.

A. can one succeed in life    B. one can succeed in life

C. one will be succeeded in life    D. can one be succeeded in life

9. no mathematician toiled for so long, and apparently so fruitlessly, over the abstract relations of lines and surfaces, it is probable that but few of our mechanical inventions would have seen the light.

A. Was    B. Were    C. Had    D. Should

10. No man is above the law and no man is below it; \_\_\_\_\_do we ask any man's permission when we require him to obey it.

A. no    B. none    C. nor    D. not

## 第24章 标点符号

标点符号对句子的表情达意起到必要的辅助作用，可以表示语调，用来标注文字的停顿，也能够表明上下文的关系。英语中常见的标点符号包括逗号(,), 冒号(:), 分号(;), 句号(.), 破折号(—), 引号(“ ”), 问号(?), 感叹号(!), 连字符(-), 撇号('), 省略号(...)等。从位置上来看，标点符号可以用于句中、句尾或单词的内部。英语中的大部分标点符号都和汉语相同，但两种语言之间也有一些差异，如：

英语的句号为“.”，而汉语的句号为“。”。

英语的省略号为“...”，而汉语的省略号为“……”。

英语有撇号，而汉语则没有。

汉语有书名号，而英语则没有(英语中，印刷体的书籍报刊等名称用斜体或引号；在手写体中，可以用引号或下划线表示)。

汉语有顿号，而英语则没有。

### 24.1 逗号

#### 24.1.1 用于并列词语或句子之间

Win-win is the foundation for warm, loving relationships.

双赢是充满温馨和友爱关系的基础。

Success is a journey, not a destination.

成功是旅途，而不是目的地。

Life looks like the ocean, and only the strong-willed person could reach the other shore.

生活犹如海洋，只有意志坚定者才能到达彼岸。

Regret cannot change the past, nor can it create the future.

悔恨既不能改变过去，也不能创造未来。

#### 24.1.2 用于状语与主句之间

To be successful, one must struggle.

要成功，就必须奋斗。

If you want to be effective, do first things first.

如果你希望把事情做好，要首先处理当务之急。

When one door of happiness closes, another opens.

一扇幸福之门关闭，另一扇就会打开。

### 24.1.3 用于非限制性定语从句与主句之间

True friendship is like health, the value of which is seldom known until it is lost.

真正的友谊就如同健康，直到失去才知道它的可贵。

As usually happens, the man who has tried a bad doctor is afraid to trust even a good one.

通常，看过庸医的人甚至不敢相信良医。

### 24.1.4 用于同位语

A happy marriage is a new beginning of life, a new starting point for happiness and usefulness.

幸福的婚姻是人生的崭新开端，是幸福和有益的起点。

### 24.1.5 用于插入语

Happiness lies, first of all, in health.

首先，幸福在于健康。

The greatest of faults, I should say, is to be conscious of none.

我要说，最大的错误莫过于意识不到错误。

### 24.1.6 用于称呼语

I say to you today, my friends, that in spite of the difficulties of the moment I still have a dream.

朋友们，今天我要对你们说，尽管目前有种种困难，我依然怀有一个梦想。

### 24.1.7 用于附加疑问句

Work is a big part of your life, isn't it?

工作是生活的一个重要部分，不是吗？

No one likes to be forgotten, right?

没有人愿意被遗忘，不是吗？

### 24.1.8 用于直接引语和导语之间

Martin Luther King said, "If you're going to sweep streets, sweep streets the way Michelangelo painted pictures."

马丁·路德·金说，“假如你要扫大街，就要像米开朗琪罗作画一样清扫大街。”

As Charles Schwab said, “The man who does not work for the love of work but only for money is not likely to make money nor find much fun in life.”

正如查尔斯·施瓦布所说：“不是为热爱工作而是为了钱而工作的人不太可能赚钱，也不太可能在生活中找到太多乐趣。”

### 24.1.9 表示省略

To err is human; to forgive, divine.

犯错人皆难免，宽恕则属圣贤。（省略is）

Mean men admire wealth; great men, glory.

庸人爱财富，伟人爱荣誉。（省略admire）

### 24.1.10 用于日期、数字、地点

January, 1998 （1998年1月）

2, 100

Milan, Italy （意大利米兰）

### 24.1.11 用于倒置姓名，分隔姓名与头衔

Emerson, Ralph Waldo 爱默生，拉尔夫·沃尔多

Winston Churchill, Prime Minister 温斯顿·丘吉尔，首相

### 24.1.12 用于信件抬头或信尾客套语之后

Dear mother, 亲爱的母亲

Affectionately yours, 你亲爱的

## 24.2 冒号

### 24.2.1 用于列举、解释

Work banishes those three great evils: boredom, vice, and poverty.

工作消除三大祸害：无聊、罪恶和贫穷。

There are three ingredients in the good life: learning, earning and yearning.

美好的生活有三个要素：学习、收益和向往。

There are basically three things in life that can ruin you: power, sex and greed.

生活中主要有三个东西能毁灭你：权、性和贪。

Life offers you two precious gifts: one is time and the other, freedom of choice.

生活赐予你两件珍贵的礼物：一件是时间，另一件是选择的自由。

#### 24.2.2 用于补充说明

Dictionaries are like watches: the worse is better than none; and the best cannot be expected to go quite true.

词典就像手表：最坏的也比没有强；最好的也不能指望准确无误。

The world is like a mirror: frown at it and it frowns at you; smile, and it smiles, too.

世界就像一面镜子：朝它皱眉，它就朝你皱眉；朝它微笑，它也朝你微笑。

#### 24.2.3 用于词汇释义

Charm: the quality in others that makes us more satisfied with ourselves.

魅力：他人身上使我们对自己感到满意的品质。

#### 24.2.4 用于引语之前

At the entrance to life, there stand two pillars innocently. One reads: "a road to goodness"; the other has a warning on it: "a road to sins." Then the passers are told: "make a choice."

在人生的入口处，天真地竖着两根柱子。一根柱子上写道：“通向善良之路”；另一根柱子上有一句警示：“通向罪恶之路。”然后，通过者被告知：“做出选择。”

#### 24.2.5 用于信件抬头或演说称呼语之后（美国英语用法）

Dear Dr. Stanley: 亲爱的斯坦利博士

Ladies and Gentlemen: 女士们，先生们

#### 24.2.6 用于时与分之间

8:10 八点十分      12:30 十二点三十分

#### 24.2.7 用于比率

5:4 五比四      7:9 七比九

### 24.3 分号



### 24.3.1 用于并列词语之间

I might say that success is won by three things: first, effort; second, more effort; third, still more effort.

我要说，获取成功依靠三个事物：其一，努力；其二，努力；其三，再努力。

### 24.3.2 用于并列分句之间

Destiny is not a matter of chance; it's a matter of choice.

命运并非机遇的问题；而是选择的问题。

The past belongs to death; only the future belongs to us.

过去属于死神；只有未来属于我们。

Adversity reveals genius; fortune conceals it.

逆境显才华；好运隐天资。

With materials, people can live; with ideals, life can be called life.

有了物质，人们可以生存；有了理想，生活才称得上生活。

## 24.4 句号

### 24.4.1 用于陈述句末尾（表明一句话的终止）

A light heart can bear everything.

轻松的心情能承受一切。

Beauty is in yourself.

美就在你自己身上。

One person can make a difference and every person should try.

一个人可以发挥作用，每个人都应该努力。

### 24.4.2 用于祈使句

Never give up and never give in.

永远不要放弃，永远不要屈服。

Whatever you are, be a great one.

不管你做什么，都要出类拔萃。

### 24.4.3 用于缩略语

Mr. (mister) 先生

Mrs. (mistress) 太太

Prof. (professor) 教授

Ph. D. (Doctor of Philosophy) 哲学博士

Dr. (doctor) 医生或博士

Thur. (Thursday) 周四

A. Lincoln (Abraham Lincoln) 亚伯拉罕·林肯

John F. Kennedy (John Fitzgerald Kennedy) 约翰·菲茨杰拉德·肯尼迪

Sept. (September) 九月

a.m. (ante meridiem) 午前 (午夜至中午)

p.m. (post meridiem) 午后 (中午至午夜)

e.g. (exempli gratia) 例如

The best physicians are Dr. Diet, Dr. Quiet and Dr. Merryman.

最好的医生是饮食得当，起居安宁，身心愉快。

W. Mitchell stared smiling at people when he decided he'd give something to the world.

当他决定要向世界有所奉献时，W·米切尔开始笑对他人。

Wm.(William) Wrigley, Jr.(Junior) amassed a tremendous fortune by concentrating all his efforts on the manufacture and distribution of the best chewing gum.

小威廉·里格利通过专注地生产和销售最好的口香糖而积累了巨富。

## 24.5 破折号

### 24.5.1 表示解释或补充说明

What is a weed? —A plant whose virtues have not been discovered.

什么是野草？——其价值尚未被发现的植物。

There are three classes of men—lovers of wisdom, lovers of honor, lovers of gain.

有三种人——爱智慧的人，爱荣誉的人，爱利益的人。

Friendship is like wine—the older the better.

友谊如美酒，越陈越醇厚。

There are essentially two things that will make you wiser—the books you read and the people you meet.

主要有两种事物让你更明智——读过的书和见过的人。

### 24.5.2 表示语义的递进

Happiness is a habit—cultivate it.

幸福是一种习惯——要养成这种习惯。

Don't curse the darkness—light a candle.  
不要诅咒黑暗——要点亮一只蜡烛。  
There's a way to do it better—find it.  
总有把事情做得更好的方法——去找到它。

### 24.5.3 表示总结或概括

Be confident and then try your best—if you have this concept, you will probably succeed in everything.  
自信，然后竭力而为——如果有了这个概念，你或许会无往而不胜。

### 24.5.4 表示插入语

If you occasionally fall—and we all do—just be sure to fall forward.  
假如偶尔摔倒——我们都会这样——一定要向前摔倒。

### 24.5.5 表示同位语

This one step—choosing a goal and sticking to it—changes everything.  
这一步——选择目标然后坚持下去——会改变一切。

### 24.5.6 表示因果解释

Wake up! Every minute is gold.  
醒来吧！——每一分钟都贵如黄金。  
Have no pursuit of perfection—you'll never reach it.  
不要追求十全十美——你永远也达不到。

### 24.5.7 表示引文的出处

The good is the beautiful.—Plato  
善即是美。——柏拉图  
A brave man risks his life, but not his conscience.—Friedrich Schiller  
勇者用生命冒险，而不用良心冒险。——弗里德里希·席勒  
The followers of the rich and powerful cannot be trusted in need. —  
George Gordon Byron  
趋炎附势者不可共患难。——乔治·戈登·拜伦

### 24.5.8 表示语义的转折

You can teach ability—you can't teach attitude.  
你能教会能力——你却教不会态度。  
In a crisis, beware of the danger—but recognize the opportunity.

在危机中，要意识到危险——但也要看到机会。

## 24.6 引号

### 24.6.1 表示直接引语

As Winston Churchill observed, “Success consists in going from failure to failure without loss of enthusiasm.”

正如温斯顿·丘吉尔所说：“成功在于从失败走向失败而热情不减。”

We should not spend our life in vain but should be able to say, “I have done what I can do.”

我们不应该枉活一世，而应该能够说：“我已尽力而为。”

“A great man shows his greatness,” said Carlyle, “by the way he treats little men.”

卡莱尔说：“伟大人物通过对待小人物的方式表现其伟大之处。”

### 24.6.2 表示书籍报刊、广播影视、文艺作品等的名称

“Emotional Intelligence” gives us an entirely new way of looking at the root causes of many ills of our families and our society.

《情商》提供给我们看待家庭和社会诸多弊病根源的一个全新方法。

### 24.6.3 用于句中个别单词或短语的强调

One kind of praise is helpful and it is the so-called “encouraging praise”.  
有一种赞美是有帮助的，这就是所谓的“鼓励性的赞美”。

If you want to succeed, you must bridge the gap between “talking” and “doing”.

如果你希望成功，就必须弥合“说”与“做”之间的差距。

“Yes” and “No” are the oldest and simplest words, but they require the most thought.

“是”和“不”是最古老、最简单的字眼，但它们需要最多的思考。

Seldom “can’t”; never “won’t”.

少说“不能”；莫说“不愿”。

There is no “easy science” in the world.

世界上没有“容易的科学”。

To accomplish something is the “supreme state of life”.

有所作为是“人生的至高境界”。

## 24.7 问号

用于疑问句末尾。

Is life an empty dream?

人生如梦一场空吗？

What is a man's first duty?

一个人的首要职责是什么？

How can you gain dignity if you are not honest?

没有诚实，何来尊严？

Has the last word been said? Is all hope to be lost? Is the defeat final?

No!

难道定论已下？一切希望都将成空？失败已成定局？不！

## 24.8 感叹号

### 24.8.1 用于感叹句末尾（表示强烈的情感）

How good life is!

生活是多么美好啊！

How deeply we love life!

我们多么热爱生活！

Life is real! Life is earnest! And the grave is not its goal.

生命是真实的！生命是诚挚的！坟墓并非生命的止境。

How many dangers and wrong roads there are in the research work!

研究工作中有多少危险和弯路啊！

### 24.8.2 用于语气强烈的祈使句末尾

Now for it!

现在就行动！

Love your life earnestly!

要真心真意地热爱生活！

Take a chance! All life is a chance.

去冒险吧！整个生命就是一次冒险。

The future is bright and beautiful, so please love it!

未来是光明和美好的，所以请热爱未来吧！

## 24.9 连字符

### 24.9.1 用于合成词

连接两个或两个以上的单词，使其成为一个合成词。

Books are the treasure-house of human thought.

书籍是人类思想的宝库。

Love is two-sided, and both should give and take.

爱是双面的，双方都应有所给予，有所索取。

Living your purpose requires single-mindedness.

实践目标需要一心一意。

Self-help is the best help.

自助是最好的帮助。

Wealth is more often the result of hard work, perseverance, and most of all self-discipline.

财富往往是勤奋工作、坚持不懈、最重要的是严于律己的结果。

By your daily, hourly, and minute-to-minute choices, your life can be either boring or outstanding.

通过你每天、每时、每分的选择，你的生命可以枯燥乏味，也可以卓尔不凡。

Ill-gotten wealth is like a palace built on the sand.

不义之财犹如建造在沙滩上的宫殿。

### 24.9.2 用于连接前缀与词根

Things will not go on smoothly if the co-workers are at variance with one another.

如果同事彼此不知，事情的进展就不会顺利。

### 24.9.3 用于单词的移行

当一个较长的单词在一行末尾需要接到下一行时，在上一行单词断开处加连字符，然后在下一行开头补全该单词其余部分，如上一例句中的another。

## 24.10 撇号

### 24.10.1 表示所有格

God's delays are not God's denials.

上帝的延迟并非上帝的拒绝。

Envy is a most terrible thing, and would spoil anybody's nature.

妒忌是非常可怕的东西，会破坏任何人的本性。

### 24.10.2 表示省略

撇号可以用于省略字母、数字等。

'cause (because) 因为

ne'er (never) 从不

'85(1985) 1985年

rock 'n 'roll (rock and roll) 摇滚

All the world's stage.

整个世界是一座舞台。

Whenever you are asked if you can do a job, tell'em, "Certainly I can!"

Then get busy and find out how to do it.

每当有人问你能否做一份工作时，告诉他们，“当然可以！”然后抓紧找出做工作的方法。

### 24.10.3 表示数字、字母等的复数

1700's 十八世纪 1990's 二十世纪九十年代

Mind your p's and q's.

要小心行事。

Dot your i's and cross your t's.

办事要一丝不苟。

## 24.11 省略号

表示内容的省略。

Nothing...is unchangeable but the inherent and unalienable rights of man.

只有与生俱来、不可剥夺的人的权利是不能改变的。

Determine never to be idle... It is wonderful how much may be done if we are always doing.

下定决心不要无所事事..... 如果我们勤奋不懈，就会取得神奇的成就。

# 参考答案

## 第2章 名词

I. 确定句中空格处的名词应该使用单数还是复数形式。

1. times 2. gallows 3. wishes 4. undertakings
5. work 6. hands 7. sports 8. halves
9. medicine 10. thanks 11. manners 12. food
13. friendship 14. studies 15. water

II. 写出每句括号中名词的复数形式。

1. aches 2. dice 3. halves 4. truths
5. energies 6. Studies 7. fish 8. wolves
9. Coaches 10. clothes 11. sheep 12. stomachs
13. species 14. Lookers-on 15. monarchs

III. 根据汉语，写出复数名词。

1. stars 2. thieves 3. arms 4. questions
5. twins 6. Women 7. footprints 8. servants
9. sleeves 10. excuses 11. feet 12. lenses
13. shadows 14. eggs 15. shoes

IV. 为下列句子中的特定名词添加所有格。

1. the miser's sum 2. Anger's final resting-place
3. a horse's heel; a dog's tooth 4. One hour's cold; seven years' warming
5. an ass's head 6. old men's places
7. heaven's hall; earth's prison 8. strangers' gardens
9. other people's misconceptions; other people's mistakes
10. moment's insight; life's experience 11. the devil's instigation
12. a weaver's shuttle 13. A friend's frown; a fool's smile
14. his neighbor's 15. a spider's web

V. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. C times 2. C people 3. C heart's desire
4. B dollars' 5. B respondents 6. C there is no room
7. A baggage 8. A wits' end 9. D thousands

VI. 使用名词的所有格，将下列句子翻译成英文。



1. Love is love's reward.
2. The mother's heart is the child's schoolroom.
3. Rudeness is the weak man's imitation of strength.
4. Do not let your yesterday hinder tomorrow's achievement.
5. A person's wisdom is the source of pleasure.
6. One hour's sleep before midnight is worth three after.
7. A brave man's look is sharper than a coward's sword.
8. The ignorant have an eagle's wings and an owl's eyes.
9. When life's path is steep, keep your mind even.
10. The difference between the impossible and the possible lies in a person's determination.

VII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. C    2. C    3. A    4. B    5. A    6. D    7. B    8. A    9. C  
 10. D    11. D    12. B    13. B    14. A    15. B

### 第3章 冠 词

I. 在下列各句的空白处填入适当的冠词。

1. A; an    2. the    3. The    4. a    5. an    6. the    7. a    8. the    9. the  
 10. The    11. the    12. a    13. a; the    14. a; the  
 15. It's a classic story with a twist: a traveling salesman gets a flat tire on a dark, lonely road and then discovers he has no jack. He sees a light in a farmhouse. As he walks toward it, his mind churns: "Suppose no one comes to the door." "Suppose they don't have a jack." "Suppose the guy won't lend me his jack even if he has one." The harder his mind works, the more agitated he becomes, and when the door opens, he punches the farmer and yells, "Keep your lousy jack!"

II. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. C a great aim    2. A A one-eyed man    3. C the  
 4. B the sun    5. A The only use    6. C the pupil  
 7. D in charge    8. C mankind    9. B drop by drop  
 10. C a citizen

III. 在句中适当的位置填入合适的冠词。

1. Love is the business of the idle but the idleness of the busy.
2. I never consider ease and joyfulness as the purpose of life.
3. Prejudice is an opinion without judgment.

4. Self-preservation is the first law of nature.
5. The great Wellington left behind him an enduring reputation.
6. Life is like an ocean: only the strong-willed can reach the other shore.
7. There is no such thing as a small or moderate amount of success.
8. Not many people experience life the way they want it to be.
9. The foolish and the dead alone never change their opinions.
10. The world always makes way for the (或a) dreamer.

IV. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. A

## 第4章 代词

I. 指出下列句中**黑体**代词所指代的成分。

1. **it**指代to bear misfortune lightly 2. **his**指代the man's
3. **they** 指代things 4. **it**指代time
5. **it**指代time 6. **them**指代friendships 7. **each one**指代each moment 8. **one**指代a book
9. **it**指代something 10. **they**指代some men

II. 改正下列各句中的**黑体**代词。

1. those 2. he 3. that 4. both
5. them 6. none 7. such 8. ourselves
9. its 10. himself

III. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. C those 2. B they 3. C what 4. A what
5. D all other 6. D one another 7. A yourself 8. D their
9. C that 10. D mine

IV. 在空格处填入所给汉语代词的英文形式。

1. I 2. He 3. she 4. You
5. It 6. They 7. We

V. 将括号中提供的代词变为反身代词，并填入空格。

1. itself 2. himself 3. ourselves
4. yourself/yourselves 5. themselves 6. herself

VI. 将括号中提供的代词变为恰当的形式填入每句空白处。

1. us 2. yours 3. themselves 4. it
5. them 6. us 7. yours 8. them

9. her 10. hers

VII. 在空格处填入所给汉语代词的正确英文形式。

1. it 2. its 3. their 4. its  
5. himself 6. ours 7. nobody/no one 8. them  
9. others 10. Ours

VIII. 在每句空白处填入恰当的代词。

1. something 2. anything 3. one 4. them  
5. ours 6. it 7. nothing/little 8. his  
9. nothing 10. something 11. something/much 12. it  
13. its 14. one 15. itself

IX. 将下列含有代词的英文译成汉语。

1. 艺术需要个性；科学需要群体。
2. 万物各有其用。
3. 只要勤奋有技能，任何事情都有可能。
4. 狂妄自大的人非常空虚。
5. 口说无凭；要眼见为实。
6. 大家都管就等于没有人管（三个和尚没水喝）。
7. 痛苦也会成为甜蜜的回忆。
8. 聪明的人如果能把握自己，就不会失去任何东西。
9. 如果你有天赋，勤奋将使你更加出色；如果你没有天赋，勤则能补拙。
10. 你的孩子不仅仅是你个人的孩子，也是生命渴望延续下去留下的后代。

X. 使用代词it翻译下列句子。

1. We should be prepared before it rains.
2. It will never rain roses.
3. It is happier to give than to receive.
4. It takes only a smile to make a dark day seem bright.
5. It is better to die in honor than to live with shame.
6. Most of the times we take it for granted that there is always plenty of time.
7. You will find it easier to solve a problem when you change your way of thinking.
8. It is important for everyone to relax from time to time and enjoy some form of recreation.

XI. 将下列汉语翻译成英文，注意代词的用法。

1. The only thing we have to fear is fear itself.
2. Love conquers all.
3. Virtue is its own reward.
4. You are the master of your fate; you are the captain of your soul.
5. Almost all married people fight, although many are ashamed to admit it.
6. Human life is everywhere a state in which much is to be endured, and little to be enjoyed.
7. We judge ourselves by what we feel capable of doing while others judge us by what we have already done.

XII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. C 8. C 9. B  
10. A 11. A 12. A 13. B 14. C 15. A 16. D 17. C 18. C  
19. C 20. A

## 第5章 形容词和副词

I. 根据汉语翻译写出各句中的形容词。

1. open 2. valuable 3. loyal 4. unique  
5. light 6. brave 7. available 8. alike  
9. temporary 10. effective 11. inseparable 12. helpless; dependent  
13. blind; absent 14. short; long 15. small; great

II. 根据汉语写出相对应的副词。

1. willingly/readily 2. patiently 3. temporarily  
4. seldom 5. hardly 6. appropriately/properly  
7. absolutely 8. mentally 9. gradually; increasingly  
10. excessively 11. Indeed/Actually 12. mutually  
13. occasionally 14. differently 15. hopefully

III. 写出句子中所提供的形容词或副词的比较级形式。

1. older 2. further 3. better 4. better  
5. sincerer 6. the less 7. the luckier 8. funnier  
9. less

IV. 写出下列形容词的最高级形式。

1. least 2. busiest 3. happiest 4. hardest  
5. highest 6. healthiest 7. toughest 8. most absurd  
9. best

V. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. A happiest    2. B wiser    3. D all the same
4. C upside down    5. C end up with    6. B in

VI. 在空格处填入恰当的副词。

1. however    2. often/normally/usually    3. Otherwise
4. seriously    5. off    6. out
7. away    8. about    9. up

VII. 将下列英文比较句式翻译成汉语。

1. 他成功与其说是因为他的才能，不如说是因为他的活力。
2. 书籍是目前人类努力创造的最为持久的成果。
3. 最大的错误就是试图过于随和。
4. 人们最坚信不移的是他们了解最少的事物。
5. 和他们贫困的出身相比，拥有大量财富有可能成为他们更大的障碍。
6. 永远正确本身就是最大的错误。
7. 有许多观点的人未必是智者，就如同有众多士兵的人未必就是一位优秀的将军。
8. 世界上最快而又最慢、最长而又最短、最平凡而又最珍贵、最容易被忽视而又最令人后悔的东西就是时间。
9. 你知道我们想给像你这样的优秀人才很高的薪水，可是却做不到；但是我们的确在乎人才，希望你知道你对我们十分重要。

VIII. 将下列带有比较句型的句子翻译成英文。

1. A wise man will make more opportunities than he finds.
2. Money is valuable, life is more valuable, and time is the most valuable.
3. The winner is not necessarily the one who runs the fastest, but the one who holds on to the last.
4. Most people have more to achieve than they realize.
5. Children and their self-esteem are much more important than any physical object they might break or destroy.
6. The less you open your heart to others, the more your heart suffers.
7. The faster you let go of an issue that upsets you, the healthier you will be.

IX. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. A    2. A    3. D    4. A    5. C    6. B    7. D    8. A    9. D
10. A    11. C    12. B    13. D    14. B    15. A

## 第7章 介词

I. 按照句义的需要，在句子空格处填入恰当的介词。

1. for
2. On
3. outside
4. in
5. with
6. like
7. for; for
8. for
9. worth
10. despite

II. 根据词语之间的搭配关系，在句子空格处填入恰当的介词。

A 介词+名词的搭配

1. under
2. in
3. in
4. for
5. in

B 名词+介词的搭配

1. over
2. against
3. for
4. from
5. over

C 动词+介词的搭配

1. from
2. on
3. on
4. with
5. to
6. on
7. in
8. from
9. to
10. after

D 动词+宾语+介词的搭配

1. for
2. to
3. to
4. to
5. as
6. for
7. of
8. from
9. with
10. to

E 形容词+介词的搭配

1. as
2. of
3. to
4. on
5. with
6. of
7. of
8. of
9. in
10. of

III. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. B of obvious importance
2. A to
3. A to
4. C owing to
5. A as
6. D in spite of
7. D for fear of
8. B in/to
9. D to
10. D lack of interest
11. B arises from
12. A On
13. A love for
14. D to
15. A for/about

IV. 将下列带有介词的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. 我相信世上有天堂和地狱。
2. 自信是踏上成功之路的第一步。
3. 不冒险我们就不能克服危险。
4. 智慧比金子更宝贵。

5. 病来急匆匆，去时却从容。
6. 你应该努力去寻找每一个机会，而不是静静地等待机会的到来。
7. 一旦触及自己的真实本性，你将无所不能。
8. 无论生活中的哪一行业，在成功之前都有失落的经历。
9. 成功者是团队的一部分，而失败者却远离团队。
10. 太阳无法同时照到篱笆的两面。

V. 将每句中汉语部分翻译成英文。

1. in pointing out others' mistakes
2. consists in working
3. makes up for her lack of experience
4. boast about/of her new job
5. his lazy attitude to work

VI. 使用所提供的介词或带介词的短语，将下列汉语句子翻译成英文。

1. Praise is like sunlight to the human spirit.
2. We can enjoy peace regardless of our outer circumstances.
3. Nothing happens by chance, so everything happens for a reason.
4. Happiness consists in appreciating what you have.
5. A teacher must be capable of infinite patience.
6. High achievers rarely refer to failure.
7. Nothing could make me turn against my country.
8. Great men will not live their lives in vain.
9. An intellectual improvement arises from leisure.
10. No great man ever complains of lack of opportunity.

VII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. D  
10. C 11. C 12. C 13. C 14. C 15. A

## 第10章 系动词和情态动词

I. 按照汉语提示写出对应的情态动词。

1. should 2. would rather 3. need not 4. had better  
5. may 6. will 7. might 8. could

II. 在各句空白处填入恰当的情态动词。

1. may; must 2. should 3. will 4. used to  
5. may 6. ought 7. must 8. have to  
9. should 10. should; could

III. 将下列带有情态动词的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. 口说或笔写的所有悲哀的语句中，最悲哀的是：“本来有可能是这样的!”
2. 即使一个人暂时没有成功，但他必须诚实。
3. 不会发怒是蠢人；不愿发怒是聪明人。
4. 对全世界来说，你或许只是一个人，但对于某个人来说你或许是整个世界。
5. 随着你在这个世界上慢慢成长、逐渐融入社会，你也许曾认为有种局限妨碍你，使你不能达到目标。
6. 玛丽本来可以屈服于她与生俱来的生活。然而，她为自己承担起了责任，并且创造出了值得自己为之骄傲的生活。

IV. 将下列汉语句子翻译成英文，注意情态动词的使用。

1. We would rather die on our feet than live on our knees.
2. Hamlet's experience simply could not have happened to a plumber.
3. If you want to change your life, you must change your vision of your life.
4. You will lose a few battles in life, but you must never lose the war.
5. Those who dare not take risks will never sail on the sea.
6. My disappointment must have shown. "Everything happens for the best," mother reminded me.
7. Don't lie in bed saying to yourself, "I did that wrong." "I should have done better."

V. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. A 9. D  
10. A

## 第11章 动词时态

I. 按照具体要求写出动词正确的时态形式。

1. fought 2. am dying 3. has ruined  
4. haven't lost 5. are lying 6. have never tried  
7. has made 8. has lost 9. wound  
10. has been

II. 写出所提供动词的正确时态。

1. happened 2. is seeking 3. created 4. will happen  
5. have won 6. ate 7. took 8. flies



9. will flow 10. have only just begun

III. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. A hear 2. A lay 3. D had 4. D did

5. C have won 6. D had put 7. D lived 8. C have found

9. B meant 10. C acquired

IV. 将下列英文翻译成汉语，并体会动词时态的用法。

1. 曾经有所成就要比一无所成强。

2. 孤独，现在而且一直以来都是每个人最为重要的、不可避免的经历。

3. 你要组建的家庭比你出生的家庭更重要。

4. 如果你正在从一本书中获得最大的收益，你就会觉得自己比任何时候都更具备做事情的能力。

5. 乍临人世，你在哭，周围的人在笑。要这样生活，临别人世，你在笑，周围的人在哭。

V. 将下列汉语翻译成英文，注意使用恰当的时态。

1. After your death, you will be what you were before your birth.

2. If you are a successful language learner, you have probably been learning actively.

3. My parents will always love, support, and teach me best as they can.

4. When I held fast to my dream, even during the tough times, the miracles really began to happen.

5. If we do not plant knowledge when young, it will give us no shade when we are old.

VI. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. C

## 第12章 被动语态

I. 按照具体要求，将所提供动词变为被动语态的形式。

1. is carried 2. are beaten 3. are wrapped

4. have been bitten 5. has been said and thought 6. is being reflected

7. haven't been taught 8. will be eaten 9. will be rewarded

10. will be shut 11. will be felt

II. 将所提供动词变为被动语态的形式。

1. are soon mended 2. will be done 3. are hatched

4. be committed 5. be heard 6. be kept
7. are performed 8. to be praised 9. is tried
10. am often reminded 11. be told 12. is thrown
13. must be made

III. 将下列带有被动表达的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. 她在澳大利亚获得非凡成就的故事广为流传。
2. 没有经受过痛苦的人很少能体会到别人的痛苦。
3. 独处最能培养人的才能；生活中的惊涛骇浪最能塑造人的品格。
4. 通过对智慧局限的理解，智慧得到了加强，而不是遭到了毁灭。
5. 只有当说话人和听话者双方都得到尊重时，交流才有价值。
6. 如果做一件事之前必须驳倒所有的反对意见，那就一件也做不成。
7. “爱情强盗”不过是拿走那些等人取走、盼人取走的东西。
8. 在热心人看来，对无功者的赞扬等于对用功者的掠夺。
9. 智慧之声被恐惧的咆哮所淹没。最糟糕的是，无知令它哑口无言。
10. 真正的知识就像一切珍贵的事物一样，不会轻易获得，而必须通过钻研、学习、思考，最重要的是必须有强烈的求知欲，才会获得。

IV. 将下列汉语句子翻译成英文，要求使用被动语态。

1. Love cannot be hidden.
2. Success is measured in many ways.
3. Little is needed to make life happy.
4. Not everything that is faced can be changed, but nothing can be changed if it is not faced.
5. The greatest results in life are usually attained by simple means, and the exercise of ordinary qualities.
6. A man's character can be seen in small matters.

V. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. A 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. D 8. D 9. A
10. C

## 第13章 动名词和不定式

I. 每题有四处划线部分，找出其中一处错误，并加以改正。

1. B need to do 2. C going 3. C learning
4. A to let 5. D let go 6. B to mold
7. C think 8. C to like

II. 使用动词的正确形式填空。

1. living 2. overcoming 3. Lying 4. dripping
5. becoming 6. to return 7. Letting 8. overcoming
9. growing 10. repairing/to be repaired 11. overcoming 12. paying
13. going 14. sighing 15. looking 16. sing
17. to change 18. work 19. to come 20. lying

### III. 英译汉

A 将下列带有动名词的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. 手是心灵的利刃。
2. 得财艰辛，守财费心，失财痛心。
3. 在那一刻，我才认识到有钱和真正富有之间的区别。
4. 骏马犹需训，灵童亦需教。
5. 学而不用如同耕而不种。

B 将下列带有不定式的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. 沉默是最难反驳的事情之一。
2. 要想多做事情，最简单的办法是一次只做一件事情。
3. 我选择超越自己的个性弱点来认识自我存在的精彩。
4. 遗憾的是，人无论多大岁数，有多少阅历，都不能避免以新的方式做蠢事。
5. 进步的艺术是在变革中保持秩序，在秩序中进行变革。

### IV. 汉译英

A 将下列各句中的汉语部分翻译成英文，要求使用动名词或不定式。

1. there being another opportunity
2. avoid learning
3. honest labor to be the best of teachers
4. the determination to attain it
5. not to take, but to give
6. him to lose his head
7. to live, but not to exist
8. so as not to lose it/in order not to lose it/not to lose it
9. To get a thorough understanding of oneself
10. to concentrate, and thus to obtain the maximum result with the minimum effort

B 将下列汉语翻译成英文，注意动名词的使用。

1. Work is worth doing well if it is worth doing.
2. A new year is another starting point on the journey of life.
3. At the end of your life you will regret not spending time with friends, parents and loved ones.
4. Keep encouraging yourself to take the necessary risks to refuel your confidence.
5. Perseverance is falling nineteen times and succeeding the twentieth.

C 将下列汉语句子翻译成英文，注意不定式的使用。

1. To succeed, we must accept challenges.
2. You have the right to express your perspective.
3. Great men have the faith to move mountains.
4. It takes courage, character and self-discipline to achieve success in any field.
5. You have the freedom to enjoy the profits of your own work.
6. The challenge is to create your own real life.
7. Language learners should take every chance to use the language.
8. The greatest misery is to have been happy.

V. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. A 8. A 9. D  
10. B 11. D 12. A 13. B

## 第14章 动词分词

I. 找出每题中的一处错误，并加以改正。

1. heartfeeling → heartfelt
2. flourished → flourishing
3. contains → containing
4. casted → cast
5. indicates → indicating

II. 使用所提供动词的正确形式填空。

1. living
2. Having arrived
3. forgetting
4. Rising; distinguished
5. going
6. Having made
7. struggling
8. discouraging
9. paying
10. Having simplified
11. seeing
12. studying; hoping
13. forgoing

III. 将下列句子中的划线部分转换成分词形式。

1. running into many brooks
2. Having planted their acorn
3. working out their own destinies for good or for ill
4. lacking genuine core value
5. Putting myself in his shoes
6. living in great simplicity and privacy
7. Though cut off from all communication with their friends for months, and not knowing whether the town was lost or held
8. if left unchecked

IV. 将下列句子中划线的分词部分转换成从句或分句。

1. that lie near it
2. while he is designing a common teapot or water jug
3. when he spoke of his art
4. but he still pursued his mission of love
5. which depends on how we handle them
6. Because he was upheld throughout by the victorious power of enthusiasm

V. 将下列带有动词分词的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. 生活是由哭泣、抽噎和微笑构成的，而其中又以抽噎为主。
2. 我们似乎确实沉溺于这样一种想法，认为花钱可以买到幸福。
3. 骄傲是一个人因自我感觉太过良好而产生的一种快乐。
4. 人生的后半部分完全是由其前半生养成的习惯组成的。
5. 最美好的未来总是扎根于对往事的忘却。

VI. 根据汉语在空白处写出动词的分词形式。

1. discouraging 2. fallen 3. fired/stimulated
4. stimulating 5. surprising 6. longing

VII. 按照具体要求，将下列汉语句子翻译成英文。

1. Life is a boat sailing on the sea.
2. Diligence is the road leading to happiness.
3. Let's exert ourselves a whole life, feeling no regrets at all.
4. Youth cares about nothing, as if owning all the treasure of the world.
5. We are at our best physically and mentally when we are disciplined.
6. The eye is blind if the mind is troubled.
7. Friendship shared can reduce the blow of failure.

VIII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. D

10. B

## 第15章 主谓一致

I. 判断每句空格处的系动词应为单数还是复数。

1. is 2. are 3. are 4. is
5. is 6. is 7. are 8. is
9. is 10. is

II. 使用括号中动词的单数或复数形式填空。

1. am 2. increases 3. has 4. leads
5. lies 6. has 7. knows 8. overcome
9. draws 10. make

III. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. D
10. A

## 第16章 祈使句和疑问句

I. 将下列陈述句转变为一般疑问句。

1. Do you ever praise your paper boy for getting the paper to you on time 365 days a year?
2. Should we accept obstacles as challenges?
3. When things go sour, do you instinctively label yourself a loser?
4. Is there a “success personality”—some winning combination of traits that leads almost inevitably to achievement?
5. Does the work you do leave you feeling proud and pleased with yourself?
6. Have you noticed that the things that you dislike doing are the ones that seem to take forever to get done?

II. 使用所提供的疑问词，将下列句子转变为特殊疑问句。

1. Why are there so many dull, incurious people in the world?
2. Why can one word of praise bring such pleasure?
3. How could we ensure that our retired years would be happy, and maybe even productive?
4. How many people are there who are playing minor roles all their lives, and never have the stage of life for their own?

5. How often do you question your thoughts, your actions, or your motives?

III. 将下列陈述句转变为修辞疑问句。

1. If the world were perfect, how could we enjoy the pleasure and comfort of being successful?
2. What's the use of running when you are on the wrong road?
3. I have only one life and it's short enough; why do I waste it on things I don't want most?
4. If you don't stand for something, what do you win?
5. You get a thorn with every rose, but aren't the roses sweet?
6. If a man will not be his own friend, how can he expect that others will?
7. Isn't it really lamentable for human beings to follow suit blindly?
8. If there is no future for our country, where can we look for our individual love and happiness?

IV. 将下列陈述句转变为附加疑问句。

1. Most of us take life for granted, don't we?
2. You are the boss of your life, aren't you?
3. All successful people are people of purpose, aren't they?
4. Every living person has problems, don't they?
5. Treasure every moment that you have, won't you?
6. It sounds almost childishly simple, doesn't it? But it works!
7. In our life, we have rarely expressed our gratitude to the one who'd lived those years with us, have we?
8. Don't let negative people drag you down, will you?
9. A lot of times we get in our own way, don't we?
10. Time flies when you are having fun, doesn't it?
11. Everyone has heard that an idle mind is a devil's workshop, haven't they?
12. One should be self-reliant and self-dignified, shouldn't one?
13. I believe that the rendering of useful service is the common duty of mankind, isn't it?
14. It is so easy to exist instead of to live, isn't it?
15. There's no better time to be happy than right now, is there?

V. 将下列英文疑问句翻译成汉语。

1. 我们是在希望中昂首还是在绝望中低头?
2. 如果没有什么可抱怨的, 你的生活会不会过于平淡了呢?

3. 如果我们连自己都不爱，我们从哪里拿爱给别人呢？
4. 生命难道说不是一曲得失共存的和谐交响乐吗？
5. 你知道残奥会吧？尽管那里的人们有着各种明显的身体残疾，但他们都能够接受自己的身体。
6. 为什么有的人跨越障碍，实现目标，而有的人却挣扎求存，一事无成？
7. 你看见杯子是半满的，而不是半空的吗？你的眼睛是盯着炸面包圈，而不是中间的圆孔吗？
8. 你怎么能说我一生的不成功呢？我六十多年来既养活了自己，也没丧失自我，不是吗？
9. 如果我在这样的处境下尚能完成任务，那么全世界还有哪个年轻人有理由无所作为呢？

VI. 将下列疑问句翻译成英文。

1. What is life?
2. How can anyone identify a dream of the future?
3. Do you love life?
4. Why can't you learn from my mistakes?
5. What personal qualities are desirable in a teacher?
6. Is success a fact or a fantasy?
7. Shouldn't I try my best to do the things in my power more carefully?
8. Where is the life we have lost in living?
9. Who is more successful? A millionaire who is unhappy, or an unnoticed person who has led a simple, happy life?
10. What is a man's first duty? The answer is brief: to be himself.

VII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. C 2. D 3. D 4. C 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. B
10. A 11. C 12. D 13. A 14. C 15. D

## 第17章 定语从句

I. 找出每句中的定语从句部分，用下划线标示，并注意体会其用法。

1. The courage we desire and prize is not the courage to die decently, but to live manfully.
2. Only that which is honestly got is gain.
3. The ideals which have lighted my way, and time after time have given me new courage to face life cheerfully have been kindness, beauty and



truth.

4. There is no ill but may turn to one's good.

5. Young men who have reason to fear that they will be killed in battle may justifiably feel bitter in the thought that they have been cheated of the best things that life has to offer.

6. You need to remember that you will only be faced with lessons that you are capable of learning and are specific to your own growth.

7. Suddenly, words I'd heard my mother repeat hundreds of times as I was growing up held new meaning. "Stand up straight! Lift yourself by pretending strings are pulling you from the tops of your ears."

8. The young man who thinks there is nothing important to be done is pretty sure to do nothing important.

9. Anything that makes you forget what time it is can become the key to your life make-over.

10. The world is round and the place which may seem like the end may also be only the beginning.

II. 指出下列各句中的定语从句分别具体修饰什么。

1. that enjoy them 修饰 theirs

2. which you can do today 修饰 that

3. which came in his way 修饰 all opportunities

4. that may only be traversed by his longing 修饰 space

5. who choose the harder, the more rigorous way 修饰 those

6. that secures the greatest happiness for the greatest number 修饰 the best

7. which is a good question for everyone to put to himself occasionally 修饰 whether he was alive or not

8. which means that your eagerness, knowledge and quickness make you a good reader 修饰 reading is like pleasure of the mind

III. 判断下列句中定语从句的引导词是否可以省略。

1. 可以省略 2. 不可省略 3. 不可省略 4. 不可省略

5. 不可省略 6. 不可省略

IV. 改正下列定语从句的引导词。

1. that → which 2. during that time → during which time

3. that → where 4. in that → in which

5. which → in which 6. which → who

V. 将每组的两个或多个句子合并为一句话，其中一句作为主句，其余作为定语从句。

1. Encouragement and confidence are priceless gifts that can help change a person's life.
2. Time, whose tooth gnaws away everything else, is powerless against truth.
3. Life is not a spelling bee, where (in which) no matter how many words you've gotten right, you're disqualified if you make one mistake.
4. There is something inside each of us that fuels our motivation, our passion, and our reason to succeed.
5. Happiness is a perfume you cannot pour on others without getting a few drops on yourself.
6. True friendship is like health, the value of which is seldom known until it is lost.
7. To achieve a happier life, it's necessary to overcome some stumbling blocks, three of which are: comparison with others, images of perfection, and "Missing Tile" syndrome.

VI. 在定语从句前的空格处填入恰当的引导词。

1. where
2. whose
3. that
4. who
5. which
6. than
7. that
8. where
9. whom/who
10. As

VII. 下列句中各定语从句的引导词which之前须有介词。根据句义，在每个空白处填入恰当的介词。

1. to
2. with
3. of
4. at
5. for
6. through
7. of
8. with
9. by
10. to

VIII. 将下列各句中划线部分转换成定语从句。

1. wherein you will live
2. we declare our integrity
3. that can only be found in the dictionary of fools
4. that should be waged; that can be awaited
5. that come along to bury us

IX. 将下列句子中的定语从句部分转换为形容词性短语。

1. Truth speaks in a simple and direct language.
2. Having a positive attitude made all the difference in the way for me to perceive the future.
3. Health is the thing making you feel that now is the best time of the year.
4. Discussion is the anvil upon which to strike the spark of truth.

5. If we habitually read books elevating in tone, pure in style, sound in reasoning, and keen in insight, our minds develop the same characteristics.

X. 将下列带有定语从句的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. 爱不是独立的行为举动，而是我们生活在其中的一种氛围。
2. 知识是我们借以飞往天堂的翅膀。
3. 在这个世界上出人头地的人是那些积极寻求自己想要的境遇的人。
4. 对于有头脑的人，世界是一部喜剧，而对于凭感觉行事的人，世界则是一部悲剧。
5. 他最好的老师是和他一起玩耍的伙伴，和他一起干活的工友，以及和他共同生活的亲戚朋友。
6. 热爱大自然的人是其内心与外界的感觉协调一致，即使到了成年仍然保持着童心的人。
7. 智者不为自己没有的东西伤心，而只为自己拥有的东西快乐。
8. 在开展项目的过程中，他遇到了很多困难并成功克服了它们，对这些困难，他有如此的描述。

XI. 将下列汉语句翻译成带有定语从句的英文。

1. Hands are the wings with which ideals soar.
2. Justice is like a train that's nearly always late.
3. There are circumstances in which words are blows.
4. A person's courtesy is a mirror, which reflects his image.
5. A good book is a best friend who never turns his back upon us.
6. There are many factors that can contribute to a person's success.
7. You need a sense of self-appreciation, which will bring you confidence.
8. In this world there is always danger for those who are afraid of it.

XII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. D  
10. D 11. A 12. C 13. C

## 第18章 状语从句

I. 找出每句中的状语从句部分，用下划线标示，并注意体会其用法。

1. Laziness travels so slowly that poverty soon overtakes him.
2. In these days no one can achieve great distinction unless he concentrates on one thing.
3. When your will is ready, your feet are light.

4. When we accept that imperfection is part of being human, and when we can continue rolling through life and appreciate it, we will have achieved a wholeness that others can only aspire to.

5. When love beckons to you, follow him, though his ways are hard and deep.

6. None is so wise but the fool overtakes him.

7. The student, though he is in the house, is still at work in his field, and chopping in his woods, as the farmer is in his, and in turn seeks the same recreation and society that the latter does, though it may be a more condensed form of it.

II. 指出划线部分是何种类型的状语从句。

1. 目的状语从句 2. 时间状语从句 3. 方式状语从句
4. 让步状语从句 5. 结果状语从句 6. 结果状语从句
7. 让步状语从句 8. 方式状语从句 9. 条件状语从句
10. 让步状语从句 11. 原因状语从句

III. 根据汉语提示写出下列各句缺失的英文连词。

1. if 2. Where 3. Once 4. unless
5. after 6. Whether 7. as if/as though 8. Since
9. Just as 10. as

IV. 改正下列句子中状语从句的引导词。

1. like → as 2. every when → every time
3. so as → so that 4. There → Where
5. However → Whatever 6. Now that → Since
7. Despite → Although 8. With → As
9. as → so

V. 将提供的连词填入空格。

1. If; though 2. When; wherever; if 3. If; though; whether
4. So long as; Unless 5. If; till

VI. 根据语境要求在空格处填入恰当的连词。

1. where 2. so that 3. until 4. as
5. where 6. that 7. unless 8. before; because
9. if ; since 10. before

VII. 将下列句子的划线部分改换成状语从句。

1. As time passes
2. As you travel your life path

3. While I was standing by the window lost in thought for a long time
4. If they feel hopeless
5. In order that we may live with abandon

VIII. 用所提供的连词将每组句子合并在一起，其中一句作主句，其余作状语从句。

1. A man may be an artist though he lacks the necessary tools.
2. You've got to practice again and again for years until you can harmonize every part of your body and mind.
3. He lived in a quiet style in order that he might employ a larger share of his income in works of benevolence.
4. Each time you choose to trust yourself and take action, you can never quite be certain how the situation will turn out.
5. Mere wishes and desires but engender a sort of green sickness in young minds unless they are promptly embodied in act and deed.
6. When you don't exercise the ability to always test yourself, you may lose not only your confidence, but more importantly, you lose the ability to focus, to know yourself, your friends.
7. When one is really free from thoughts he becomes free from the mind as both are one and the same thing.
8. Though he was rejected on his first application for admission to the academy, he persevered until he was admitted.

IX. 将下列带有状语从句的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. 要牢牢地抓住生命，但也要放得开。
2. 少壮不努力，老大徒伤悲。
3. 只要你清楚目的地在哪里，知识就能够帮你抵达那里。
4. 虽然花中的芒刺扎了我，啊，美啊，我仍然满怀感激。
5. 只有当你从睡梦中醒来，投入工作，梦想才会成真。

X. 将各句中的状语从句部分翻译成英文。

1. if you know how to use it
2. unless he tries hard
3. No matter where you go/Wherever you go
4. lest they should set them a bad example
5. Considering he received no help
6. lest we lose sight of the things that are really important to us
7. once he hits a setback
8. no matter how late I stay up preparing

9. whatever cost it may be
10. unless you have a better one
11. Though only the generals' names may be remembered in the history of any great campaign

XI. 将下列汉语翻译成英文，注意状语从句的使用。

1. Unless we focus, we cannot achieve our goal.
2. If we can handle adversity, it will strengthen us.
3. It doesn't matter how much milk you spill as long as you don't lose the cow.
4. As the pace of life continues increasing, we are fast losing the art of relaxation.
5. A lot of people spend so much time watching their health that they haven't time to enjoy it.
6. Whoever you are, wherever you are and whatever you do, you should have goals.

XII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. D
10. A 11. C 12. B 13. A

## 第19章 名词从句

I. 找出每句中的名词从句部分，用下划线标出，并体会其用法。

A 主语从句

1. Whoever is delighted in solitude is either a wild beast or a god.
2. It never troubles a wolf how many the sheep are.
3. It has long since been satisfactorily established that a high executive does not have a large vocabulary merely because of the opportunities of his position. Quite the reverse is true.
4. It is our misfortune that for most of us that true instinct for what is beautiful and awe-inspiring is dimmed and even lost before we reach adulthood.

B 表语从句

1. A man's country is where he does well.
2. The reason for his success is that he works hard.
3. Reputation is what you are in the light; character is what you are in the dark.

4. Luck is what happens when preparation meets opportunity.
5. The fact is that in this modern world no country, not even the greatest, can live for itself alone.
6. The toughest thing about success is that you've got to keep on being a success.
7. The test of literature is, I suppose, whether we ourselves live more intensely for the reading of it.

#### C 宾语从句

1. I have always found that it's more painful to do nothing than something.
2. History teaches us that every problem has a lifespan.
3. No one knows better where the shoe pinches than he who wears it.
4. Poverty shows us who our friends are and who our enemies are.
5. Achieving success in whatever endeavor you choose may be the goal of life.
6. Keep in mind that letting go is a state of mind and has nothing to do with your actions.

#### D 同位语从句

1. The notion that we have to work at happiness comes as news to many people.
2. He that is of the opinion that money will do everything may well be suspected of doing everything for money.
3. Jealousy is the pain that a man feels from the apprehension that he is not equally beloved by the person that he entirely loves.
4. I should wish to die while still at work, knowing that others will carry on what I can no longer do, and content in the thought that what was possible has been done.
5. Sometimes when we visit a house we have not been in before, we have the feeling that somehow the place has no heart or soul, even though its occupants may be good kind people with well-furnished rooms.
6. When a true genius appears in the world, you know him by the sign that the dunces are all in confederacy against him.
7. The public buys its opinions as it buys its meat, or takes in its milk, on the principle that it is cheaper to do this than to keep a cow. So it is, but the milk is more likely to be watered.
8. We all know that books burn—yet we have the greater knowledge that books cannot be killed by fire.

9. "If I rest, I rust." Even the most industrious person might adopt it with advantage to serve as a reminder that, if one allows his faculties to rest, like the iron in the unused key, they will soon show signs of rust and, ultimately, cannot do the work required of them.

II. 指出下列各句中划线部分各自是什么类型的名词从句。

1. whether they want to be successful or not是主语从句
2. What I love so much about life是主语从句； that it's a mystery是表语从句
3. that success is a myth, and ambition therefore a sham是宾语从句
4. that at least three important qualities have helped them to be very efficient in accomplishing tasks: organization ability, good work habits and diligence是宾语从句
5. that you cannot make others as you wish them to be是补语从句
6. What we must realize是主语从句； that life is a combination of beauty and ugliness是表语从句
7. Whatever the mind of man can conceive and believe是宾语从句

III. 在句中空格处填入适当的连接词，使其引导名词从句。

1. Whoever
2. how
3. which
4. what
5. why/that
6. where
7. what
8. That; that

IV. 将下列各句中的划线部分改成名词从句。

1. that you are looking forward to your work
2. that one should change oneself before one makes an attempt to change the outer world
3. that he was both brave and wise
4. that we are loved
5. how we can avail ourselves of this treasure and how we can get the most from it

V. 将下列带有名词从句的英文句子翻译成汉语。

1. 让我们坚信，公正产生力量。
2. “美不过是肤浅之物”这句话本身就是肤浅的。
3. 生活的悲剧不在于人们所经受的苦难，而在于他们所错过的一切。
4. 毫无疑问，巴赫生来就对音乐痴迷，这是他勤奋的动力，也是他成功的秘诀。
5. 民主建立在这样的信念基础上，即普通人中蕴涵着极大的可能性。
6. 不管发生什么事情，我们都可以把它看作生活中不会有什么好事发生的标志。



7. 相信某种永恒的东西超越我们，相信我们的存在具有某种更伟大的意义，这会帮助我们感到更快乐。

VI. 将下列汉语句子翻译成英文，注意名词从句的运用。

1. You choose how you react to situations.
2. Our attitude determines how we look at a setback.
3. I am so glad that you are in my life.
4. I believe that love is the greatest thing in the world.
5. You can go where you want to go, do what you want to do, have what you want to have, and be what you want to be.

VII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. A 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. B 9. A  
10. A 11. B 12. A 13. D 14. A 15. B

## 第20章 虚拟语气

I. 找出每组句子中的一处错误并且改正。

1. found → should find 2. should → will  
3. the king be → were/was 4. can → should  
5. as it was → as it were 6. was → (should) be  
7. had lived → was going to live 8. can → could  
9. was not to be → were not to be 10. are → were

II. 每题有四处划线的地方，其中一处存在错误，请找出并加以改正。

1. A would be 2. C could pass 3. D is  
4. B know 5. D might become

III. 使用所提供动词的正确形式填空。

1. were taught 2. would weep 3. would creep  
4. would be made 5. had eaten 6. would be  
7. (should) be 8. (should) stay 9. would be married  
10. was/were

IV. 将下列虚拟表达翻译成汉语。

1. 读书并非美德，除非从书中得到的乐趣是道德的。
2. 为了不在绝望中变得萎靡不振，我必须全力以赴地行动起来。
3. 如果人生可以预测，它就不再是人生，也就更加失去了滋味。
4. 年轻人创业之初，应该从最底层做起，这是件好事。
5. 所谓放任就是在原则上把孩子当作成年人对待。

6. 如果一个人不具备这位将军那种英勇顽强的精神，听到这种情况以后可能会感到绝望。

7. 著名数学家爱德蒙·斯通闲暇时如果无所事事，就不可能会有数学词典的出版，也就不会发现开启数学之门的钥匙。

8. 假如出身卑贱者为英国发明所做出的贡献都被忽略不计，那么可以想象，没有他们，英国将会是何等光景。

V. 将各句中的汉语部分翻译成英文，要求使用虚拟语气。

1. there would be no rainbow
2. it is still important that one should have good morals
3. would succeed in small things
4. they would bring up their children to be the same
5. for fear that we (should ) die before we laugh at all
6. what would now be the result

VI. 将下列汉语句子翻译成英文，要求使用虚拟语气。

1. If I was a leaf, I would fly across the world.
2. War would end if the dead could return.
3. If young people did not care about themselves, they would never have the heart to go on.
4. If death did not exist, it would be necessary to invent it.
5. If everyone tried to see life through the eyes of a child, every day could be better.
6. Imagine what your life would be like if you lost all that you have now.
7. If people had the same patience to be silent, the world would be happier.
8. If Shakespeare had traveled everywhere to promote *Romeo and Juliet*, he would never have written *Macbeth*.

VII. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. A 9. D  
10. D 11. D 12. C 13. C

## 第21章 直接引语和间接引语

I. 在间接引语中填入正确的代词。

1. he 2. she; her 3. they; their; their; them  
4. he; he; he 5. he; his; his

II. 在间接引语中填入正确的时态。

1. has 2. would; could 3. thought; had used

4. should 5. was continually painting 6. charged; forgot; had been learning  
III. 将下列直接引语转换成间接引语。

1. Language teachers often offer advice to language learners that they should read as much as they can in the new language. / Language teachers often advise language learners to read as much as they can in the new language.
2. She told me that she had always dreamed of having a college education and then she was getting one.
3. I said to them that I would like them to read a lot of books that year, but I wanted them to read them only for pleasure.
4. My friend asked me why I taught.
5. The reporter asked Schwarzenegger now that he had retired from bodybuilding, what he planned to do next. Schwarzenegger answered very calmly and confidently that he was going to be the #1 movie star in Hollywood.
6. As I lifted my body to its full height and held up my head, little signals went to my brain saying that I was confident and I was somebody of worth.
7. When I tearfully told my boss my plans this incredible leader whom I respect so much replied that if I preceded with reckless abandon, I would be successful.
8. If a friend does evil to you, say to him that you forgive him for what he did to you, but you can't forgive him for what he did to himself.

IV. 将下列间接引语转换成直接引语。

1. Mozart said, "Work is my chief pleasure."
2. The fly sat upon the axle-tree of a chariot-wheel and said, "I raise a lot of dust."
3. A young father asked an elderly neighbor, "How strict should parents be with their children?"
4. The pessimist says: "I'll believe it when I see it." The optimist says: "I'll see it when I believe it."
5. Our teacher reminded every day, "You can do anything you set your minds to, no matter how impossible it may seem or how strong the opposition is."

V. 将下列带有直接引语的句子翻译成汉语。

1. 如果你朝懦夫吐唾沫，他会说：“下雨了。”
2. 有人问他，“朋友是什么？”他说：“两个躯体共一个灵魂。”

3. 许多人的墓碑上应该这样写：“死于三十岁，葬于六十岁。”
4. 我已经学会了问自己：“可能发生的最坏的事情是什么？”
5. 我们需要自问的不是“这件事情会赚大钱或让事业更上一层楼吗”，而是“我会感兴趣吗？”
6. 不成熟的爱说：“我爱你因为我需要你。”成熟的爱说：“我需要你因为我爱你。”
7. 有一个贵族曾轻蔑地问一位智者：“你从你的全部哲学中得到了什么？”智者的回答是：“至少我获得了丰富的思想。”
8. “世上当数勇气最温文尔雅；怯懦最残酷无情。”一位智者说。

VI. 将下列带有间接引语的句子翻译成汉语。

1. 正如史蒂文森所说，快乐是一种责任。
2. 你应该有勇气对自己说你很无知。
3. 培根说，每当人失去一位朋友时，他便死去一次。
4. 当有人问你不想回答的问题时，要笑着问他为什么想知道。
5. 人们时常问我是否知道成功的秘诀，能否告诉别人怎样使他们梦想成真。我的回答是他们应该通过工作去取得成功。
6. 一位女士说，她为家庭倾注的爱就像是一项对自己未来的投资，这是她能做到的最好的投资。

## 第22章 强调

I. 根据汉语翻译写出各句所缺的否定词。

1. without 2. never 3. but/except 4. lost/wasted
5. last

II. 将下列英文句子译成汉语，注意否定意义的各种英文表达方式。

1. 真金不怕火炼。
2. 真理无法否认。
3. 他宁愿饿死也不偷盗。
4. 称赞你的人并不一定都是朋友。
5. 没有道德标准的人与其说是活着，还不如说是死了。
6. 没有灵魂的身体不能成为一个人，同样，没有爱的家庭也不能成为家庭。
7. 每个人其实都是幸福的，但并非人人都知道这一点。
8. 莫扎特八岁就成为造诣深厚的钢琴家，这并不是他终日在电视机前消磨时光的结果。

III. 将下列带有双重否定的英文句子译成汉语。

1. 懒汉处处有借口。
2. 痛苦再巨大，时过必减轻。
3. 活到老，学到老。
4. 我们一定会对朋友或同事的帮助表示感谢。
5. 人生有童年、成年和老年，谁也不能否认这是一种美好的安排。
6. 人们的每一声痛苦的哭喊都让他的心情无比沉重。
7. 一位伟大的学者对日常事务一无所知，这不足为奇。
8. 失败的尝试和最终成功的尝试都一样有价值。
9. 我们脚下的小虫、在秋风拂掠之际飞舞的树叶无一不值得我们探究与赞赏。

IV. 将下列英文句子译成汉语，注意这类形式否定，但意义肯定的表达。

1. 好事做得越早越好。
2. 你要慎之又慎。
3. 一个人做工作越仔细越好。
4. 怎样重视文明举止都不过分。
5. 要特别强调认真读书的重要性。
6. 一个人的世界观必然会通过其言行表现出来。
7. 好马也有失蹄时。
8. 我的父母送给我再多的书，我都嫌不够。

V. 把下列强调句型还原为普通句式。

1. The farmer's care makes the field bear.
2. The mind, not the blood, ennobles a person.
3. In a happy marriage the wife provides the climate, and the husband the landscape.
4. This childish wonder gives enthusiastic people such a youthful air, whatever their age.
5. We become highly motivated often after we get involved in a task.
6. He laid the foundation of his future success in the dull but unflinching drudgery of the early part of his career.
7. You, and only you, determine who you will be and what you will do for the rest of your lives.
8. Don't stand in someone else's shadow when your sunlight should lead the way.

VI. 使用强调句型对划线部分加以强调。

1. It is my heart that makes my song.

2. It is the bridle and spur that makes a good horse.
3. It is the enemy who/that keeps the sentinel watchful.
4. It is in old age that long experience is really fruitful, and that the wisdom born of experience can be used without becoming a burden.
5. It is only when we forget all our learning that we begin to know.
6. It is in the darker areas of science that great men win recognition.

VII. 将下列强调句型译成汉语。

1. 通常，使人丧失斗志的并非失败本身，而是事先对失败的预期。
2. 造就人的不是帮助，而是磨难，不是方便，而是困难。
3. 人之苦乐不在于处境，而在于思想。
4. 当一个人的思想和个性沉睡时，服饰才会引人注目。
5. 成功或失败并不在于你的职业，而在于你怎样看待自己和自己的职业。
6. 只有当压力失控时，才会导致表现不佳，身体生病。
7. 决定我们成功与失败的不是外在条件，而是我们对自己有没有信心，是否愿意根据自己的最高志向创造生活。

VIII. 使用强调句型翻译下列句子。

1. It is the mind that makes the body rich.
2. It is not the beard that makes the philosopher.
3. It is often in our suffering that we grow the most.
4. It is in great dangers that we see great courage.
5. It is hope alone that makes us willing to live.
6. It is not only the feathers that make the bird.
7. It is the intention that makes an action good or bad.
8. It is art itself that should teach us to free ourselves from the rules of art.
9. It is neither wealth nor reputation but peace and work that bring happiness.

IX. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. B 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. D 9. D
10. A 11. A 12. A 13. D 14. A 15. B

## 第23章 倒装

I. 在下列倒装句式的空白处填入恰当的系动词、助动词或情态动词。

1. are 2. does 3. do 4. is
5. will 6. does/will 7. Had 8. did

9. Be 10. will 11. can 12. do  
13. is

II. 将下列倒装句式还原成正常语序。

1. Plato is dear to me, but truth is dearer still.
2. Though a fox is cunning, it is often sold for its skin.
3. Though he was poor, he contrived to live within his small means.
4. The greatest truths are the simplest, and the greatest men are, too.
5. It is essential for a teacher to have a genuine capacity for sympathy. The capacity to be tolerant is closely related with this.

III. 将下列句子改为倒装语序。

1. In vain does the mill clack if the miller lacks hearing.
2. Only through struggles can we win freedom and happiness.
3. Neither above nor below the ground can paradise or hell be found.
4. Different though/as these worlds are, each is consistent with itself.
5. Not only does Cathy make her fellow Australians proud but many around the world.

IV. 将下列倒装句翻译成汉语。

1. 如果天下没有愚夫，智者还能使什么计谋？
2. 成功因人而异，正如每个人眼中的美丽也不一样。
3. 虽然我们分别了，但友谊还在身边，将我们的心相连。
4. 奢华安逸的生活无法教会人们直面困难，也无法唤起人们内在的动力，这种动力对于生活中积极有效的行动极其必要。
5. 词汇在词典中虽然那么单纯无力，可在懂得遣词造句的人手中，它们的能力却又何其强大！

V. 使用倒装语序将下列句子翻译成英文。

1. Were I a child again, I would cultivate courage.
2. Along with success comes a reputation for wisdom.
3. Love your life, poor as it is.
4. Only by working hard can we reap a bumper harvest.
5. Tired as/though I was, I went on working.
6. Small as a sparrow is, it has all the internals.
7. Only by showing your sincerity can you win the confidence of your friends.
8. Without confidence, we will perform poorly, be it in a speech or in an interview.

VI. 从每题的四个选项中选择一个最佳答案。

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. C  
10. C